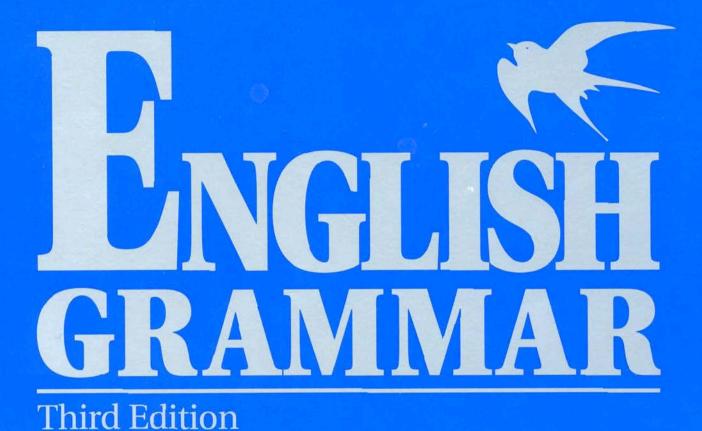
UNDERSTANDING AND USING



WORKBOOK



Betty Schrampfer Azar

www.ez-english.narod.ru



Third Edition

Workbook

Betty Schrampfer Azar

Chief contributor: Rachel Spack Koch Contributors: Susan Jamieson Barbara Andrews Jeanie Francis Donald A. Azar



Editorial director: Allen Ascher Executive editor: Louisa Hellegers Development editor: Janet Johnston Director of design and production: Rhea Banker Associate director of electronic publishing: Aliza Greenblatt Managing editor: Shelley Hartle Electronic production editor: Rachel Baumann Associate art director: Carey Davies Senior manufacturing manager: Patrice Fraccio Production manager: Ray Keating Manufacturing buyer: Dave Dickey Production assistant: Donna Stevenson Illustrator: Don Martinetti

© 2000 by Betty Schrampfer Azar Addison Wesley Longman, Inc. A Pearson Education Company

All rights reserved.

No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher.

Published by Pearson Education 10 Bank Street, White Plains, N.Y. 10606

Printed in the United States of America 10 9 8

ISBN 0-13-958687-3





EFACE	. xi
KNOWLEDGMENTS	xiii

Chapter 1 OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES

PRACTICE																	ł	PA	G	Е
1. Verb tenses .			 •	 		• •			• •	•	• •	522	 •	•	 	 •	 •		•	1
2. Verb tenses .			 • •	 	•••	• •		• •		•			 	•	 •	•	 •		•	2
3. Spelling of -in	ig and -ed	forms	 	 a e			• •								 		 •			4

Chapter 2 PRESENT AND PAST, SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE

1.	The simple present and the present progressive	5
2.	Stative vs. progressive verbs	j
3.	The simple present and the present progressive	ľ
4.	Pronunciation of -ed	3
5.	Irregular verbs)
6.	Simple past of irregular verbs 11	ľ
7.	Simple past of irregular verbs 12	2
8.	Simple past of irregular verbs 13	3
9.	Simple past of irregular verbs 14	ł
10.	Troublesome verbs: raise/rise, set/sit, lay/lie 14	ł
11.	The simple past and the past progressive 15	5
12.	The simple past and the past progressive	5
13.	The simple past and the past progressive	1

Chapter 3 PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

1.	The present perfect	\$
	Using since and for	
	The simple past and the present perfect 20	
	The present perfect and the present perfect progressive	
5.	The present perfect and the present perfect progressive	
6.	The simple past and the past perfect	
7.	The simple past and the past perfect	,
	The present perfect progressive and the past perfect progressive	

Chapter 4 FUTURE TIME

1.	Will vs. be going to	26
	Expressing the future in time clauses	
3.	Using the present progressive to express future time	29
4.	Future progressive	29
5.	The future perfect and the future perfect progressive	30

Chapter 5 ADVERB CLAUSES OF TIME AND SUMMARY OF VERB TENSES

PRACTICE	PAGE
1. Adverb clauses of time	
2. Adverb clauses of time	32
3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time	
4. Verb tense review	33
5. Verb tense review	
6. Verb tense review	
7. Verb tense review	
8. Test A: Verb tenses	38
9. Test B: Verb tenses	40

Chapter 6 SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

1.	Preview: subject-verb agreement	2
2.	Pronunciation and spelling of final -s/-es	2
	Basic subject-verb agreement 4	
4.	Subject-verb agreement: using expressions of quantity 4	3
5.	Subject-verb agreement: using there + be and some irregularities 4	4
б.	Subject-verb agreement	4

Chapter 7 NOUNS

1.	Final <i>-s/-es</i>
2.	Plural nouns
3.	Irregular foreign plurals
4.	Possessive nouns
5.	Using apostrophes
	Using nouns as modifiers
	Using nouns as modifiers
	Count and noncount nouns
	Using articles
10.	Expressions of quantity
11.	Using a few/few; a little/little
12.	Using of in expressions of quantity
13.	Using one, each, every

Chapter 8 PRONOUNS

1.	Personal pronouns)
2.	Pronoun agreement)
3.	Reflexive pronouns)
4.	Pronoun agreement	2
5.	Forms of <i>other</i>	2
	Nouns and pronouns	
7. '	Test A: Nouns and pronouns	,
3. '	Test B: Nouns and pronouns	7

Chapter 9 MODALS, PART 1

1.	Verb forms with modal auxiliaries	. 6	59
2.	Making polite requests	. 7	10
3.	Using would you mind	. 7	0
4.	Must (not) and (do not) have to	. 7	/1
5.	Verb form review: have to	7	12

PRACTICE	PAGE
6. Should, ought to, had better	73
7. Be supposed to	74
8. Be supposed to	74
9. Let's, why don't, shall I/we	75
10. Using <i>could</i> and <i>should</i> to make suggestions	76

Chapter 10 MODALS, PART 2

3. Making conclusions: must and must not 80 4. Ability: can and could 81 5. Repeated action: would 82 6. Would rather 83 7. Test A: Modals and phrasal modals 84		Degrees of certainty: <i>must</i> and <i>may/might/could</i>	
5. Repeated action: would826. Would rather837. Test A: Modals and phrasal modals84	3.	Making conclusions: <i>must</i> and <i>must not</i>	80
6. Would rather837. Test A: Modals and phrasal modals84			
8 Test B: Models and phrasal models 86		Test A: Modals and phrasal modals	

Chapter 11 THE PASSIVE

	1. Forming the passive	
	2. Forming the passive: questions, negative, and affirmative	89
	3. Forming the passive	
	4. Using the passive: transitive vs. intransitive verbs	91
1	5. Forming the passive	91
(6. Active vs. passive	92
,	7. Using the <i>by</i> -phrase	93
ł	8. Indirect objects as passive subjects	94
	9. Active and passive	
1	0. The present participle vs. the past participle	96
	1. The present participle vs. the past participle	
	2. Passive modals	
	3. Passive modals	
	4. Passive modals	
	5. Stative passive	
	6. Stative passive	
	7. Stative passive + prepositions	
	8. Present vs. past participles	
	9. The passive with <i>get</i>	
	0. The passive with get	
	1. Participial adjectives	
	2. Participial adjectives	
	3. Verb form review: active and passive	
	4. Test A: The passive	
2	5. Test B: The passive	. 114

Chapter 12 NOUN CLAUSES

1.	Questions	and	noun	clauses	that	begin	with	а	question	word	 	 		 	 	116
2.	Questions	and	noun	clauses	that	begin	with	a	question	word	 	 		 	 	116
3.	Questions	and	noun	clauses	that	begin	with	а	question	word	 	 		 	 	117
4.	Questions	and	noun	clauses	that	begin	with	а	question	word	 	 			 	118
5.	Questions	and	noun	clauses	that	begin	with	а	question	word	 	 			 	119

www.ez-english.narod.ru

PRACTICE	age
6. Changing yes/no and information questions to noun clauses	120
7. Question words and <i>whether</i> followed by infinitives	122
8. <i>That</i> -clauses	. 123
9. Using the fact that	123
10. Quoted speech	124
11. Reported speech	126
12. Reported speech	. 126
13. Reported speech	. 127
14. Using the subjunctive	. 129
15. Using <i>-ever</i> words	130
16. Test A: Noun clauses	131
17. Test B: Noun clauses	. 133

Chapter 13 ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

1.	Basic patterns of adjective clauses 1	35
2.	Basic patterns of adjective clauses 1	36
3.	Basic patterns of adjective clauses 1	37
4.	Adjective clause patterns	38
5.	Adjective clauses: using whose 1	38
6.	Adjective clauses: using where and when 1	39
7.	Adjective clauses 1	39
8.	Adjective clauses: subject-verb agreement	40
9.	Punctuating adjective clauses1	40
10.	Punctuating adjective clauses 1	41
11.	Punctuating adjective clauses	42
	Punctuating adjective clauses 1	
13.	Expressions of quantity in adjective clauses 1	43
14.	Adjective phrases	43
	Punctuating adjective phrases 1	
16.	Adjective phrases	44
17.	Adjective phrases	45
18.	Error analysis: adjective clauses and phrases1	46
19.	Test A: Adjective clauses	47
20.	Test B: Adjective clauses	49

Chapter 14 GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 1

1.	Gerunds as objects of prepositions	51
2.	Gerunds as objects of prepositions	52
3.	Verbs followed by gerunds	52
4.	Special expressions followed by -ing 15	53
5.	Gerund vs. infinitive	53
6.	Verbs followed by infinitives	54
7.	Verbs followed by infinitives	55
	Gerund vs. infinitive	
	Gerund vs. infinitive	
10.	Gerund vs. infinitive	58
	Gerund vs. infinitive	
	Gerund vs. infinitive	
13.	Gerund vs. infinitive	52
14.	Using <i>it</i> + infinitive	53

Chapter 15 GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2

PRACTICE PAGE
1. In order to
2. Adjectives followed by infinitives
3. Too vs. very
4. Using too and enough
5. Passive infinitives
6. Passive gerunds
7. Passive infinitives and gerunds
8. Past and past-passive infinitives and gerunds
9. Past and past-passive infinitives and gerunds
10. Using a possessive to modify a gerund
11. Gerunds and infinitives
12. Using verbs of perception
13. Let, help, and causative verbs
14. Verb form review
15. Verb form review
16. Verb form review
17. Test A: Gerunds and infinitives
18. Test B: Gerunds and infinitives 183

Chapter 16 COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

1.	Parallel structure	185
2.	Parallel structure: use of commas	185
3.	Parallel structure	186
4.	Parallel structure	187
5.	Paired conjunctions: subject-verb agreement	187
6.	Paired conjunctions	188
7.	Combining independent clauses: periods and commas	189
8.	Combining independent clauses: periods and commas	189
9.	Combining independent clauses: periods and commas	190

Chapter 17 ADVERB CLAUSES

1.	Adverb clauses										191
2.	Periods and commas			• •					• •		191
3.	Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time			•							192
4.	Using adverb clauses to show cause-and-effect relationships			•							193
5.	Using even though vs. because	•						•	• •		193
6.	Direct contrast: while and whereas	•				 •			• •	•	194
7.	If-clauses										194
8.	Using whether or not and even if										194
9.	Using <i>in case</i> and <i>in the event that</i>					 •					195
10.	Using unless vs. if and only if					 •			• •		196
11.	Adverb clauses of condition					 •		, .			196
12.	Using only if vs. if: subject-verb inversion	•	, .			 •					197
13.	Summary: adverb clauses					 			• •		197

Chapter 18 REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

1. Reduction of adverb clauses to modifying phrases
1. Reduction of adverb clauses to modifying pinases.
2. Modifying phrases
3. Verb forms in adverb clauses and modifying phrases
4. Modifying phrases
5. Modifying phrases
6. Modifying phrases with <i>upon</i>
7. Modifying phrases
8. Test A: Connecting ideas
9. Test B: Connecting ideas

Chapter 19 CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST, AND CONDITION

1.	Because vs. because of	208
2.	Because vs. therefore	208
3.	Showing cause and effect	209
4.	Periods and commas.	209
5.	Such that and so that	210
6.	Such that and so that	210
7.	So that	211
8.	Cause and effect.	212
9.	Showing contrast: punctuation	213
10.	Despite/in spite of vs. even though/although	213
11.	Using in spite of/despite and even though/though/although	215
12.	Direct contrast	216
	Cause and effect; showing contrast	
14.	Using otherwise	217
15.	Expressing conditions	218
	Test A: Connecting ideas.	
17.	Test B: Connecting ideas	221

Chapter 20 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES

1.	Conditional sentences: present/future	223
2.	Conditional sentences: past time	223
3.	Conditional sentences: present/future and past time	224
4.	Conditional sentences	225
5.	Using progressive forms and "mixed time" in conditional sentences	225
6.	Using progressive forms and "mixed time" in conditional sentences	226
7.	Omitting <i>if</i>	227
8.	Omitting <i>if</i>	227
9.	Implied conditions	227
	Review: conditional sentences	
11.	Review: conditional sentences	229
	As if/as though	
	Using <i>wish</i>	
14.	Using <i>wish</i>	232
15.	Conditionals	233
16.	Test A: Conditional sentences	235
17.	Test B: Conditional sentences	237

Appendix SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR UNITS

PRACTICE PAGE
1. Subjects, verbs, and objects A
2. Transitive vs. intransitive verbs A
3. Identifying prepositions
4. Sentence elements
5. Adjectives and adverbs
6. Adjectives and adverbs
7. Midsentence adverbs
8. Linking verbs
9. Linking verbs; adjectives and adverbs A
10. Review: basic question forms
11. Yes/no and information questions A
12. Yes/no and information questions A
13. Information questions
14. Information questions
15. Negative questions
16. Tag questions
17. Contractions
18. Using <i>not</i> and <i>no</i>
19. Avoiding "double negatives" Al
20. Beginning a sentence with a negative word
21. Preposition combinations
22. Preposition combinations
23. Preposition combinations
24. Preposition combinations
25. Preposition combinations
26. Preposition combinations Al

Sp	ecia	I
Wc	rkb	ook
<i>m</i> –		-

Decial PHRASAL VERBS

ANSWER KEY	Y						•••		 •••					 	•••		 			•••		. .	A	NSV	VER	key I
INDEX		<i></i>						. . .	 	•••				 			 • ,								11	IDEX 1
	8.	Phrasal	verbs	• •	• •	••	•••	• •	 •••	•••	••	•••	•••	 	• •	•	 • •	• •	•••		• •	• •			•••	. a29
		Phrasal																								
		Phrasal																								
		Phrasal																								
		Phrasal																								
		Phrasal																								
JECHIVII		Phrasal																								
Section		Phrasal																								



This ELT *Workbook* is a place for students to explore and practice English grammar on their own. It is a place where they can test and fine-tune their understandings of English structures and improve their abilities to use English meaningfully and correctly.

It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts found in *Understanding and Using English* Grammar, Third Edition, a classroom teaching text for students of English as a second or foreign language, as well as in the accompanying *Chartbook*, a reference grammar with no exercises.

The *Workbook* is designed not only for students who desire the opportunity for independent study of English grammar, but also as a resource for teachers who need exercise material for additional classwork, homework, testing, or individualized instruction.

The answers to ALL of the practices arc given in the back of the book in an Answer Key. The Answer Key is on perforated pages so that it can be detached to construct a separate booklet. If teachers desire to use the Workbook as a classroom teaching text, the Answer Key can be removed at the beginning of the term.

A note on changes from the previous edition: The Workbook that accompanied the previous edition of Understanding und Using English Grammar had both self-study (answers given) and guided study (no answers given) practices. This Workbook has only self-study practices. The guided study practices that involved communicative, interactive, and/or task-based activities are now in the main teaching text, and other guided study practices from the previous edition have been adapted to a self-study format in this edition. Another change is that the presentation of phrasal verbs was deleted from the main text and is now found in a special supplementary section in this Workbook.

Acknowledgments

The multi-talented Shelley Hartle, my associate in all work matters, and the masterful Janet Johnston, my longtime editor, are indispensable to the production of the Azar texts. I owe them great gratitude — and also thoroughly enjoy their friendship. In particular, they have expertly handled all the many editorial and production tasks demanded by this *Workbook* and its accompanying *Chartbook*.

Longtime users of my textbooks may have noted the change in publisher. My textbooks had a Prentice Hall imprint for nineteen years; that imprint is now changing to Longman due to a recent corporate acquisition. Both imprints represent quality academic publication.

I am pleased to have my work join Longman's long history of publishing excellence in the area of teaching English to speakers of other languages. My own commitment to quality publication matches well with the Longman tradition.

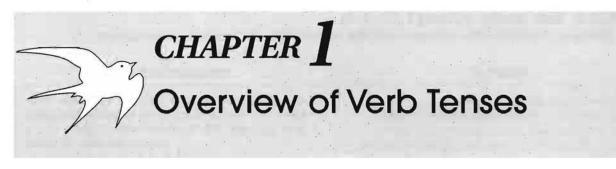
I wish to thank those at Prentice Hall Regents who helped make my association with that publisher one of mutual respect and enjoyment in recent years, in particular Robin Baliszewski and Mary Jane Peluso.

I also wish at this time to thank those at Pearson Education, the owners of the Longman imprint, who have eased my transition to a new publishing company. In particular I wish to thank Joanne Dresner, Allen Ascher, and Louisa Hellegers for their open, professional, and friendly management styles. I look forward to a long and rewarding relationship.

Others at Pearson Education I wish to thank are Rachel Baumann, Carey Davies, Aliza Greenblatt, and Ray Keating. Thanks are also due to Donna Stevenson, who input the entire *Workbook* on disk from a giant cut-and-paste puzzle.

Last, I wish to thank Larry Harris, my husband, for teaching me how to play. Hard work has always come easily to me, but not how to play. Now there's balance.





\bigcirc PRACTICE 1. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 \rightarrow 1-5)

Directions: Following are some dialogues between Speaker A and Speaker B. Complete the dialogues by using the correct form of the words in parentheses.

- 1. A: I'm going to ask you some questions so that we can practice verb tenses. What (you, do)
 - <u>do you do</u> every day before you come to class? Name one thing.
 - B: I (eat) _____ breakfast.
- 2. A: What (you, do) _____ last night? Name three separate activities.
 - B: Last night I (eat) _____ dinner. Then I (visit) _____
 - some friends, and later I (write) ______ a couple of letters.
- 3. A: What (you, do) ______ right now? What activity is in progress right now, at this exact moment?
 - B: Right now I (talk) _____ to you. I (answer) _____ your questions.

4. A: Where were you at this exact time yesterday? And what activity was in progress then?

- B: Let me think. At this time yesterday, I was at the bookstore. I (look) ______ for the books I needed to buy for this class.
- 5. A: How many questions (I, ask) ______ since we began this exercise?
 - B: I think you (ask) _____ me five or six questions since we began this exercise.
- 6. A: What (you, do) ______ for the past five minutes? In other words, what activity began five minutes ago and has been in progress from then until now?
 - B: I (talk) ______ to you for the past five minutes. I started talking to you five minutes ago, and I am still talking to you.
- 7. A: Where (you, be) ______ tomorrow morning?
- B: I (be) _____ in class tomorrow morning.
- 8. A: What (you, do) ______ at this exact time tomorrow? In other words, what activity will be in progress at this exact same time tomorrow?
 - B: Right now I am sitting in the classroom. And at this exact time tomorrow, I (sit)
 - _____ in the classroom.
- 9. A: What (you, do) ______ by the time you got to class today? In other words, what is one activity that you had completed before you arrived in class today?
 - B: Well, for one thing, I (eat) ______ breakfast by the time I got to class today.
- 10. A: What (you, do) ______ by the time you go to bed tonight? Name one activity that you will have completed before you go to bed tonight.
 - B: I (eat) _____ dinner by the time I go to bed tonight.

\diamond PRACTICE 2. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 \rightarrow 1-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in parentheses.

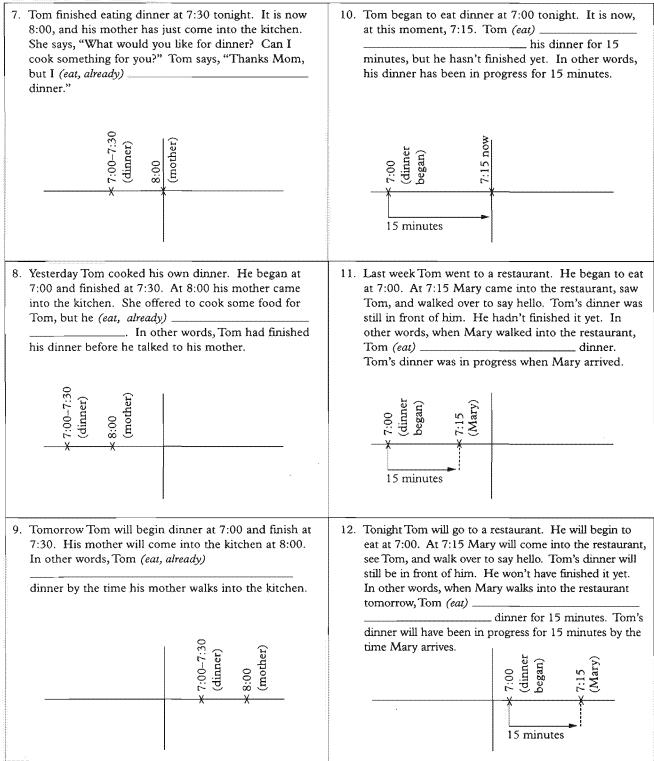
SIMPLE

PROGRESSIVE

PRESENT	 1. Tom has regular habits. He (eat)	4. At 7:00 this evening, Tom started to eat dinner. It is now 7:15. Tom is on the phone because Mary called him. He says, "Can I call you back? I (eat) dinner right now. I'll finish soon and will call you back. I don't want my dinner to get cold." Tom's dinner is in progress when Mary calls.
PAST	2. Tom eats dinner every day. Usually he eats at home, but yesterday, he <i>(eat)</i> dinner at a restaurant.	 5. Last week Tom went to a restaurant. He began to eat at 7:00. At 7:15 Mary came into the restaurant, saw Tom, and walked over to say hello. Tom's dinner was still in front of him. He hadn't finished it yet. In other words, when Mary walked into the restaurant, Tom (eat) dinner. Tom's dinner was in progress when Mary arrived.
FUTURE	3. Tom ate dinner yesterday. He eats dinner every day. In all probability, he <i>(eat)</i> dinner tomorrow.	6. Tom will begin his dinner at 7:00 tonight. Mary will arrive at 7:15. It takes Tom 30 minutes to eat his dinner. In other words, when Mary arrives tonight, Tom (eat) his dinner. Tom's dinner will be in progress when Mary arrives.

PERFECT PROGRESSIVE





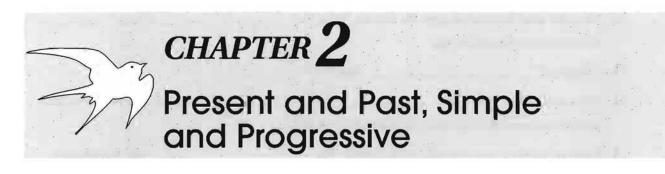
www.ez-english.narod.ru

\Diamond PRACTICE 3. Spelling of *-ing* and *-ed* forms. (Chart 1-6)

PART A. Write the correct -ing and -ed form for each verb.

1. shout		6.	refér		
2. slope	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7,	return		
3. stop	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8.	enjoy	51	
4. stoop		9.	сору		
5. ánswer		10.	die		
PART B. Write	the correct <i>-ing</i> form for each v	verb.			
11. point	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	16.	regrét		
12. beat		17.	attempt		
13. bet		18.	shout		
14. excite		19.	flit		
15. éxit		20.	interest		
PART C. Write	e the correct -ed form for each	verb.			
21. bóther		26.	star		
22. blur	<u> </u>	27.	stare	<u>2 2 </u>	
23. scare		28.	órder		
24. scar		29.	súffer		
25. fear		30.	occúr	·····	
PART D. Write	e the correct - <i>in</i> g form for each	ı verb.	2		
31. dream		36.	deny		
32. file		37.	scrub		
33. fill		38.	drain		
34. fail		39.	fan		
35. annoy		40.	interrupt		
PART E. Write	e the correct -ed form for each	verb.			
41. comb	k (3) (2 (2	47.	whip		
42. wrap	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	48.	accept		o.narod.ru
43. groan		49.	permít		-0 ⁰ -
44. occupy	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	50.	mérit		13
45. spray	<u> </u>	51.	whísper		(D.).
46. wipe	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	52.	infér	alla a	
				WH.BI-BIID	
RI				. Or	
				10.00 B	
				ALTON .	

4 CHAPTER 1



◇ PRACTICE 1. The simple present and the present progressive. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in the list. Include any words given in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

belong	fail	scream	tape
bite	fight	✓ shine	try
bleed	mean	shrink	whisper
blow	rown	sleep	100

- 1. It's a gray day today. The sun (not) ______ isn't shining _____.
- 2. The bank lent us money for a down payment, so now we (own) <u>own</u> the house we used to rent.
- 3. Shhh! I ______ to concentrate. I can't hear myself think with all that noise going on.

4. This book is mine. That one ______ to Pierre.

5. Shhh! The baby _____. We don't want to wake him up.

6. A: Juan! What's the matter with your hand? It ______.

- B: I just cut it when I was using a knife. It's not serious. I'll wash it and put a bandage on it.
- A: My marks in school are terrible this term. I ______ three of my courses.

B: Maybe you can improve your grades before the end of the term if you start studying harder.

- That sweater won't fit you if you wash it in hot water. Wool ______ in hot water.
- 9. Look at Joan. She _____ her fingernails. She must be nervous.
- The children can't get their kite high up in the air because the wind (not) ______
 ______ hard enough today.

12.	You can hear Tommy all over the house. Why (he)?
	I'd better see what's wrong.
13.	"Singular" "one."
14.	Alice and John! Why (you) to each other? If you have something important to say, say it aloud to all of us.
15.	Kareem has his tape recorder on his desk. He the professor's lecture today.
	E 2. Stative vs. progressive verbs. (Charts 2-3 and 2-4) rections: Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.
1.	Tim (have) has a car.
2.	Tim (have) <u>is having</u> trouble with his car, so he has to take the bus to work these days.
3.	This box (weigh) a lot. It's too heavy for me to lift.
4.	I just handed the box to the postal worker. Right now she (weigh)
	it to see how much postage it (need)
5.	I (do) this practice at the moment. It (consist) of both nonprogressive and progressive verbs.
6.	I (think) about the verbs in this grammar practice right now. I (think) all of my answers are correct, but I'll use the answer key to check them when I finish, just to make sure.
7	Mrs. Edwards is at the market. Right now she (look) at the
7.	apples. They (look) fresh.
8.	My cousin is an actor. She <i>(appear, currently)</i> in the
	popular TV series called "Doctors of Mystery." Have you seen that show?
9.	Jack (appear) happy this morning. He's smiling.
10.	A: This tooth is killing me!
	B: It's a good thing you (see) a dentist today.
11.	Susan is looking at some people across the street, but she (see, not)
	anyone she knows.
12.	 A: What are you thinking about? You have such a pleasant expression on your face. B: I (<i>imagine</i>) what it would be like to be on a tropical beach right now.
13.	A: Why isn't Richard here?

B: I (imagine) ______ he'll be here soon. Don't worry about him.

- 14. A: Bye, Alex.
 - B: Wait! (you, forget, not) _____ something?
 - A: What do you mean?
 - B: Isn't this your backpack?
 - A: Gosh. Yes. How could I forget that? Thanks.
- 15. A: When is Jessica's birthday?
 - B: I (forget) ______ when her birthday is. Sometime in November, isn't it?
- 16. A: Are you happy with the school you decided to send your daughter to?
 - B: Yes, indeed. But it's pretty expensive. It (cost) ______ us an arm and a leg to send her there, but we think it's worth it. And it won't last forever.
- 17. A: What's the price on that lamp? I really like it.
 - B: Let me see. Well, no wonder. It (cost) ______ three times as much as the other one. You certainly have expensive tastes.
- 18. A: What are you doing?
 - B: I (smell) _____ the scent of this candle. It (smell) _____ good.
- - B: It's okay. I won't hurt myself.
- 20. A: Do you let Tommy use scissors? He's very young.
 - B: It's not a problem. He (be) ______ very careful when he cuts something with scissors. He knows how to use scissors carefully.
- 21. A: That's a big stack of bills on your desk, Sam. Haven't you paid your bills this month?
 - B: No. Nor last month. I know I (be) ______ irresponsible about paying my bills right now, but I've been really busy. I'll take care of them soon. Generally, I (be, not) ______ an irresponsible person.

\diamond PRACTICE 3. The simple present and the present progressive. (Charts 2-1 \rightarrow 2-4)

Directions: Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. Dennis (drink, usually) usually drinks coffee with his breakfast, but this morning he (drink) is drinking tea instead.
- 2. Janet (take) ______ the bus to work every day. She (wait, usually)

_____ for the bus at the corner of 5th and Pine.

3. This morning it (rain) ______. I can see Janet from my window. She (stand) ______ at the corner of 5th and Pine. She (hold) ______

_____ her umbrella over her head. She (wait) _____ for the bus.

		e) three classes this semester. Every morning he for two hours before he goes to school. He (have)
(3		French class at 9 o'clock. He (take, also)
 1		chemistry and accounting. He <i>(like)</i> chemistry
		, but he <i>(have)</i> better grades in accounting and French.
5. N		Susie! Get your fingers out of the dessert! What (you, do)?
		I (taste) the cake. It (taste) good.
б.	JANICE:	What (you, write) in your notebook?
	DIANE:	I (make) notes about the questions I want to ask the
		teacher.
	JANICE:	(you, prepare, always) so thoroughly
		for every class?
	DIANE:	I (try, always) to.
7.	LARRY:	Why (the children, be) so good today? They
		(clean) their rooms and (pick)
		up all their toys and clothes from the rest of the house.
	CAROL:	I promised to take them to the water slide this afternoon if they did all their
		chores first.
8. AI	LFONSO:	What's that?
	NURSE:	A needle. I (prepare)
		to give you a shot.
AI	LFONSO:	I (need, not) a shot!
		Just relax and breath deeply. Everything will
		be fine.
AI	LFONSO:	Ouch!

♦ PRACTICE 4. Pronunciation of -ed. (Chart 2-6)

Directions: Write the pronunciation of the -ed ending after each word.

1. greeted	/əd/	7. attempted	13. cooked
2. wished	/t/	8. dropped	14. prepared
3. listened	/d/	9. served	15. introduced
4. crossed		10. included	16. allowed
5. lifted		11. reported	-
6. joined		12. promised	-

◇ PRACTICE 5. Irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: The following is a review of the forms of irregular verbs. The simple form is given. You are to provide the simple past and the past participle.

	GRO	UP 1: ALL THREE	FORMS ARE D	IFFERENT
Group 1A: 7	The vowel changes fi	rom "i" to "a" to "u."		
begin	began	begun	sink	(
drink			spring	·
ring	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		stink	·
shrink			swim	C
sing			a: 12 cl	15 D Ser W
Group 1B: 7	24 . 27	a the simple past. The	past participle end	ds in "n."
blow	blew	blown_	get	·
draw	· <u> </u>		forget	·
grow				
know			mistake	
throw	——————————————————————————————————————		shake	
fly		9 	take	·
break	d		bite	
choose		<u>8</u> 8	hide	·
drive	·			
freeze		,	be	(
ride	×	·	eat	· ··
rise		·	fall	
speak	. <u></u>		forgive	
steal	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	<u></u>	give	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
swear			lie	1
tear			see	
wear	·			
weave	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		do	
write			go	3

GROUP 2	: TWO FORMS A	ARE THE SAME:	THE SIMPLE PAS	F AND THE PAS	T PARTICIPLE
Group 2A: 7	he simple past and	the past participle e	end in "d."		
sell	sold	sold	lay		
tell			pay		
			say	:;	
flee	a <u></u> a	·			
bleed		·	find	10 	;
breed	a <u></u> y		grind		
feed			wind		
lead	·	i <u></u>			
read	·	··	have		
speed	·	1 <u></u>	hear		
Group 2B: 7	he simple past and	the past participle e	end in "t."		
creep	crept	crept	bring		
deal			buy		·
feel	<u>N. — — — — — — —</u>	··	catch		
keep		·	fight	·	
kneel			seek		
leave			teach	n <u></u>	
mean		·	think		·
meet		:			
sleep			bend		
sweep	·	îî	build	s <u> </u>	NN
weep	·		lend		
			send		
lose		ő <u></u> ñ	spend		<u> </u>
Group 2C: 7	The vowel changes to	o form the simple pa	ist and the past partic	iple.	
cling	clung	clung	hold		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
dig			shoot		
hang			sit		
spin	n <u>t v</u>	<u></u> ?	stand	ę <u> </u>	
stick	·		understand		
sting		÷	win		a
strike	<u> </u>	·			
swing	2 <u> </u>	3			

Group 2D:	Only the simple past	t is different.
become	became	become
come		<u>. </u>
run	,	

bet _	bet	bet	put	
bid _			quit	
broadcast _			shed	
burst _			shut	
cost _			slit	
cut _			split	
hit _		·	spread	
hurt _		a	upset	
let _				

O PRACTICE 6. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

burst	draw	slide	stick
buy	hide	slit	✓ swear
dig	shake	spread	win

- 1. All of the witnesses _______ to tell the truth in the court of law.
- Mike was so cold that his whole body _____.
- 3. Using only a pen with blue ink, Sue ______ a beautiful picture of a bird.
- 4. When the balloon _____, everyone was startled by the sudden noise.
- 5. Paul ______ his money because he was afraid it would get stolen while he was away.
- 6. Emily accidentally _____ her finger with a needle while she was sewing.
- 7. Janice ______ the top of the envelope with a knife instead of ripping it open.
- 8. I lost control of my car, and it _____ across the ice.
- 9. Mary _____ butter all over her piece of toast with her knife.
- 10. Our team finally _____ the soccer game by one goal.

- 11. The small animal ______ a hole in the ground to make her nest.
- 12. When Fred went shopping yesterday, he ______ some car wax and a garden hose.

PRACTICE 7. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

bite	cling	pay	sting
blow	feel	quit	swim
catch	mean	shed	weave

1. I broke a tooth when I _____ into a piece of hard candy.

2. The little boy ______ to his mother's hand as they walked toward the school bus.

- 3. Maria promised to help us. I hope she _____ what she said.
- 4. Arthur ______ out all of the candles on his birthday cake.



- 5. We both ______ smoking three months ago, and we already feel much better.
- 6. Douglas ______ the outside of his pocket to make sure his wallet was still there.
- 7. A bee ______ me on the hand while I was working in the garden.
- 8. Matthew Webb was the first person who ______ across the English Channel.
- 9. Paul _____ much more for his bike than I spent for mine.
- 10. Rita threw the ball high in the air. Daniel ______ it when it came down.
- 11. Each year as the snake grew larger, it formed a new skin and ______ its old skin.
- 12. Everyone in Ali's family has a special skill. His sister ______ that beautiful carpet.

○ PRACTICE 8. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

bet	freeze	sink	split
choose	lead	spend	upset
fly	ring	spin	weep

- 1. Dr. Perez ______ ten hours in the operating room performing delicate surgery.
- 2. On my first day at the university, Sally ______ the way to our classroom. I followed.
- 3. We made a friendly wager on the game. I _____ a dollar on my team.
- 4. I ______ when I heard the tragic news. Everyone else cried too.
- 5. As she stood, she ______ the table, and everything on top of it fell to the floor.
- 6. Paul wanted to make a fire, but the logs were too big. So he _____ them with his axe.



- When I threw a piece of wood from the shore, it floated on top of the water. When I threw a rock, it ______ immediately to the bottom of the lake.
- 8. In 1927, Charles Lindbergh ______ from New York to Paris in 33 hours and 30 minutes. How long does it take today on an SST? (SST = supersonic transport)
- 9. When the children ______ around and around, they became dizzy.
- 10. The telephone ______ several times and then stopped before I could answer it.
- William had trouble deciding which one he liked best, but he finally ______ the blue sweater.
- 12. When my cat heard a noise in the bushes, she ______ in her tracks (i.e., stopped moving completely) and listened intently.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

broadcast	fall	lose	steal
 cost	flee	seek	strike
 deal	hold	shoot	sweep

- 1. Ron had a small accident. He ______ to the floor when his foot got caught in the rug.
- 3. All of the radio and TV stations ______ the news of the peace plan yesterday.
- When Mrs. Grant was having trouble, she ______ help from her neighbors. She asked them for support and advice.
- The team played badly. They ______ the game by seven points. Oh, well. You can't win 'em all.
- 6. When we played cards, Jane ______ five cards to each player.
- 7. Sue ______ the knife in her right hand and the fork in her left hand.
- 8. The hunter slowly raised his rifle and ______ at the deer, but he missed.
- 10. When I spilled rice on the floor, I got the broom and ______ it up.
- 11. A thief broke into Carlos's apartment and ______ his TV and his stereo set.
- 12. Tommy wanted to play a little joke on his friend Marcia. He ran up to Marcia's front door, rang the doorbell, and then ______ quickly down the street. When Marcia answered the door, no one was there.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Troublesome verbs: raise/rise, set/sit, lay/lie. (Chart 2-8)

Directions: Select the correct verb in parentheses.

- 1. Mr. Wong (raises, rises) many different kinds of vegetables in his garden.
- 2. The man (raised, rose) to his feet and walked to the front of the room.
- 3. Mike (set, sat) a large vase of roses on the coffee table.
- 4. Claudia and Paulo (set, sat) next to each other at the lecture last night.
- 5. Jackie always (lays, lies) her wedding ring on the kitchen counter when she washes dishes.
- 6. Wouldn't you prefer to be (lying, laying) on the beach right now instead of sitting in this class?
- 7. When Alex (lay, laid) down to take a nap, he ended up sleeping for the whole afternoon.

- 8. Where is my wallet? I (lay, laid) it here on the dresser five minutes ago.
- 9. Dr. Singh (hung, hanged) his diploma from medical school on the wall in his office.
- 10. Nepal (lies, lays) to the north of India.

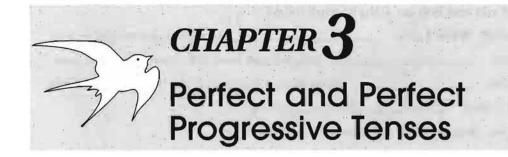
\diamond PRACTICE 11. The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-9 \rightarrow 2-12) Directions: Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in parentheses. Include any other words in parentheses. 1. We (have) _____ had ____ a wonderful dinner last night to celebrate our 25th wedding anniversary. 2. We (have, at home) were at home having our anniversary dinner when my uncle called to congratulate us last night. 3. A: Why is Henry in the hospital? B: He (work, in his garage) _____ on his car when the gas tank (explode) _____. A: What (cause) ______ the explosion? B: Henry ($\Delta light$) ______ a cigarette. 4. A: I'm sorry, Officer. I (see, not) _____ the stop sign. I (think) _____ _____ about something else. B: What (vou, think) ______ about? You should have been thinking about your driving. 5. Bill asked me to go over to his apartment, but I (want, not) _______ to leave the house because I (wait) ______ for a phone call. 6. Amy (hear, not) ______ her parents having an argument last night. She (listen, in her room) _____ to music. 7. When Richard (stop) ______ his car suddenly, the groceries (fall) _____ out of the bag they were in and (spill) _____ all over the floor of the car. 8. When the door-to-door salesperson (come) _____ yesterday, Claudia (hear, not) _____ the doorbell because she (dry, in her room) _____ _____ her hair with her electric hair dryer. 9. When I was a child, my mother always (serve) ______ cookies and milk to my friends and me when we (go) ______ to my house after school. 10. When we (look) ______ in on the baby last night, he (sleep) _____ _____. I think he (dream) _____ _____ about something nice because he (smile) _____

<> РКА	Di	E 12. The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-9 \rightarrow 2-12) <i>rections:</i> Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in rentheses.
	1.	Yesterday David (cross) was crossing a street when a truck (turn) turned
		the corner very fast and almost (hit)hit him.
	2.	During the study period in class yesterday, it (be) hard for me to
		concentrate because the student next to me (hum)
	3.	Last Monday while we (watch, in our living room)
		an exciting game on television, the electricity (go) out. So we (go) outside, (get) into the car, (turn) on the radio, and (listen) to the rest of the game. The next day the car battery (be) dead.
	4.	The police (outwit) a thief yesterday. They (surround)
		the jewelry store while he (stuff, still inside)
		his pockets with diamonds.
	5.	Yesterday we had a houseful of children for my son's sixth birthday party. In the middle of the party, the phone (ring), so I had to leave the children alone for a moment. When I (come) back into the room, most of the children (play, still) together nicely. But over in the corner, Bobby (pull) Annie's hair. I quickly (run) over and (tell) Bobby to stop.
	6.	TEACHER: You're late again. You were supposed to be here ten minutes ago. Where were you?
		MICHAEL: I (look) for a place to park.
		TEACHER: (you, find) one?
		MICHAEL: Yes, but it's at a parking meter that has a 15-minute limit. So every 15 minutes
		I'll have to go out and put some more money in the meter.
		TEACHER: Maybe you should start taking the bus to school.
		MICHAEL: I (take) the bus a couple of days ago and ended up
		miles from school. That's why I was absent from class.
		TEACHER: Oh.
	7.	BOB: My office mate, Jack, really makes me angry!
		SUE: Why? BOB: Well for one thing, he <i>(interrupt, always)</i> me. I
		can barely get a sentence out of my mouth.
		sue: Is that all?
		BOB: No. He (ask, always) me to write his reports for him.
		I have enough reports of my own without doing his reports too!

SUE: So how did you and Boh get along at work today? 8

 \Diamond

0.	SUE. SO How the you and bob get	along at work today:	
	BOB: Same old stuff. While I (17)	to explain something	to him,
	he (interrupt)	me, not just once but repeatedly. And	d once
	again he (ask)	me to write a report that the boss had ask	ed him
	to write. I (refuse)		
	SUE: Good for you. Jack needs to	write his own reports.	
Dir		ast progressive. (Charts $2-9 \rightarrow 2-12$) the simple past or the past progressive. Use any	verb that
1.	Last Saturday while Sandy was	cleaning out the attic, she <u>found</u> I	ner
	grandmother's wedding dress.		
2.	Two days ago, Peter	all of his money out of the bank and	
	a new car. Ye	esterday, while he to work, I	he lost
		another car. He wasn't hurt, but th	
	accident completely		
	and the second second presented to a		
3.	Last night we suddenly	up from a sound sleep when we	a
	noise about 3:00 A.M. I thought it	was a burglar, but it was only a cat that	
	along the wir	ndow sill.	
4.	Two days ago I	_ my friends Ann and Andy at their apartment.	They
		es when I They	
		we all down and	
	about old times.		
-		a fa ba stara Y fa	C
э.		to/at the airport, Lisa	
	धारतन्त्र धारत् स	as she me, she	
	arms and somethi	ng I couldn't hear because the people around me	
	so mucl	n noise.	
6.	Mary outside	the flowers when it	to rain.
	So of course she	off the hose and let nature take care of her ga	arden.
			23
			40V
			3
		0.	
		1151	
		10×	
		A.85	
		Present and Past, Simple and Prog	ressive 17
		- 12 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	



◇ PRACTICE 1. The present perfect. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the present perfect of the appropriate verb from the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

cost	grow	ride	swim
drive	improve	save	win
veat	know	start	write
forget	make	sweep	

1. A: How about more pie?

B: No, but thanks. I can't swallow another bite. I (already) have already eaten too much.

- 2. Our football team is having a great season. They ______ all but one of their games so far this year and will probably win the championship.
- Jane is expecting a letter from me, but I (not) ______ to her yet. Maybe I'll call her instead.
- 5. Our baby (not) ______ to talk yet. My friend's baby, who is several months older, can already say a few words in English and a few words in French.
- 6. A: I hear your parents are coming to visit you. Is that why you're cleaning your apartment?
 B: You guessed it! I (already) ______ the floor, but I still need to dust the furniture. Want to help?
- 7. A: I understand Tom is a good friend of yours? How long (you)

_____ him?

B: Since we were kids.

- 8. Everyone makes mistakes in life. I ______ lots of mistakes in my life. The important thing is to learn from one's mistakes. Right?
- 9. A: I (never) _______ on the subways in New York City. Have you?
 B: I've never even been in New York City.

- 10. A: (you, ever) ______ in the Atlantic Ocean?
 B: No, only the Pacific when I was in Hawaii. I even went snorkeling when I was there.
- 11. Little Freddie ______ a lot since I last saw him. He's going to be tall just like his father, isn't he?
- 12. Let's stop at the next motel. We _____ 500 miles so far today, and that's enough.
- 13. Alex spoke Arabic when he lived in Lebanon as a young child, but now he _____

_____ almost all of his Arabic. He remembers only a few words.

14. Maintaining this old car for the past five years ______ us much less than we would have spent if we had bought a new one. We ______ a lot of money by not buying a new car, haven't we?

\diamond PRACTICE 2. Using since and for. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Write either since or for in the blanks.

- 1. I haven't seen my brother <u>for</u> 6 months. I haven't seen my sister <u>since</u> April.
- 2. My wife and I have moved three times _____ we got married.
- 3. We've lived here ______ three years, but we're going to move again soon.
- 4. The Smiths have lived here ______ a long time. They've lived here ______ 1980.
- The International Olympic Games have continued almost without interruption 1896.
- 7. The world has enjoyed Beethoven's music _____ nearly 200 years.
- 8. They have been married ______ last summer.
- 9. The first sections of the Great Wall of China have endured ______ a long time. They have endured ______ more than 2,200 years.
- 10. Overall, Ed hasn't learned very much ______ the term began. He needs to study harder.
- 11. The clock on the campus tower hasn't moved ______ 3:13 on March 2, 1966.Nobody has been able to fix the clock ______ that time.
- 12. Argentina won the World Cup in 1986 for the second time ______ the cup was first awarded in 1930. Soccer is a popular sport there.

\diamond PRACTICE 3. The simple past and the present perfect. (Charts 2-9 and 3-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past or the present perfect of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. I <u>knew</u> Tim when he was a child, but I haven't seen him for many years. I <u>have known</u> Larry, my best friend, for more than 20 years. (know)
- The company and the union finally ______ on salary raises two days ago.
 Since then, they ______ on everything, and the rest of the negotiations have gone smoothly. (agree)
- 3. Mark ______ a trip to Asia last October. He ______ many trips to Asia since he started his own import-export business. *(take)*
- 4. Ivan ______ the violin with the London Symphony since 1990. Last year he ______ Beethoven's violin concerto at one of the concerts. *(play)*
- 5. When she was in college, Julia ______ home at least once a week. Now she has a job and is living in Chicago. In the last six months she ______ only three letters to her parents. (write)
- 6. Our university ______ 121 students to study in other countries last year. In total, we ______ 864 students abroad over the last ten years. *(send)*
- 7. Masaru is a pilot for JAL. He ______ nearly 8 million miles during the last 22 years. Last year, he ______ 380,000 miles. (fly)

Mark missed his physics examination this morning because he ______. He ______. He ________ a lot since the beginning of the semester. He'd better buy a new alarm clock. (oversleep)

- PRACTICE 4. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive. (Charts 3-1 and 3-2) Directions: Use either the present perfect or the present perfect progressive of the given verbs.
 - 1. The children are at the park. They (play) <u>have been playing</u> ball for the last two hours, but they don't seem tired yet.
 - 2. Jim (*play*) has played soccer only a couple of times, so he's not very good at it. He's much better at tennis.
 - 3. A: Janice (*sleep*) ______ for almost eleven hours. Don't you think we should wake her up?
 - B: I guess we probably should.
 - 4. Tim (sleep) ______ in the downstairs bedroom only once. He usually sleeps upstairs in the bedroom he shares with his brother.
 - 5. I (*fly*, *not*) ______ on a plane since last year when I was on a plane that had a fire in one of its engines. Now I'm afraid to even think about getting on an airplane.

- 6. A: How much longer until we arrive at the Singapore airport?
 B: Let me see. It's about 9:15. We (fly) ________ for almost six hours. We should be there in another couple of hours.
 7. A: Is the rescue crew still looking for survivors of the plane crash?
 B: Yes, they (search) _______ the area for hours, but they haven't found anybody else. They'll keep searching until night falls.
 8. Karl (raise) _______ three children to adulthood. Now they are educated and working in productive careers.
 9. Sally is falling asleep at her desk. Dr. Wu (lecture) ________ a class due to illness.
 10. Virginia is a law student. Ever since she enrolled in law school, she (miss, never) ________ a class due to illness.
 11. The club members (make, finally) _________ their decision. The election is over, and they (choose) ________ a new president.
- PRACTICE 5. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive. (Charts 3-1 and 3-2) Directions: Complete the sentences by using the present perfect or the present perfect progressive of the words in the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

cook	hear	spend	✓ understand
dig	meet	stand	wait
grow	paint	travel	want

Ann Andrews is now the club leader.

- 1. They have never gotten along with each other. I (never) <u>have never understood</u> why they agreed to be roommates in the first place.
- 2. Al just introduced me to his sister. Now I ______ everyone in his family.
- 3. Ms. Erickson is a sales clerk in a large department store. It's almost closing time. Her feet hurt, as they do every day, because she ______ at the sales counter since eight o'clock this morning.
- 4. A: I am so happy! I finally got the one thing that I (always) ______
 B: What's that?
- 5. My uncle ______ the outside of his house for three weeks, and he's still not finished. He's being very careful. He wants his house to look just right.
- 6. The Smiths are presently in Tunisia. They ______ throughout North Africa since the middle of May. They'll return home in another month.

- 7. My brother's daughter ______ nearly six inches (15 cm) since I last saw her two years ago.
- 8. A: How much money do you have to buy clothes with?
 - B: Sixty dollars.
 - A: I thought you had a hundred dollars.
 - B: I did. But I (already) _____ forty.
- 9. A: Isn't the rice ready to eat yet? It ______ for over an hour, hasn't it? Are you sure you know how to cook rice?
 - B: Of course I do! I've watched my mother make rice for years.
- 10. I'm surprised that George apologized for what he said. As far as I can remember, I (never)
 - _____ him say "I'm sorry" before.
- 11. A: We ______ to hear about the new baby since 5 A.M. Isn't there any word yet?
 - B: Not yet.
- 12. A: I've been watching Mr. Tuttle in his front yard across the street. He _____

______ a long trench across the middle of his yard for the last two hours. I wonder why.

B: He's uncovering the water pipes so he can repair a leak and put in new plumbing.

\diamond PRACTICE 6. The simple past and the past perfect. (Charts 2-9 and 3-3)

Directions: Use the simple past or the past perfect of the verbs in the list to complete the sentences. Include any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

be	✓ finish	invent	sting
burn	fly	leave	teach
design	help	spend	✓turn on

- 1. By the time Jason arrived to help, we *(already)* had already finished moving everything.
- 2. The apartment was hot when I got home, so I <u>turned on</u> the air conditioner.
- 3. Alexander Graham Bell (*already*) ______ the telephone by the time I was born.
- 4. The farmer's barn caught on fire some time during the night. By the time the firefighters arrived, the building ______ to the ground. It was a total loss.

- 6. Yesterday a hornet ______ me under my arm. That really hurt! When I put on my shirt after working in the garden, I didn't notice that there was a hornet in it.
- We were not happy with the plans that the architect showed us for our new house. Obviously, he (never) _______ a home like the one we wanted.
- 8. When I saw that Mike was having trouble, I _____ him. He was very appreciative.
- 9. My wife and I went to Disneyland when we visited Los Angeles last spring. Prior to that time, we *(never)* ________ to such a big amusement park. It was a lot of fun.
- Last year I experienced how tedious long plane trips can be. I ______ in an airplane for fairly long distances before, but never as long as when I went to Australia in June.
- 12. Promptly at five, I went to Iris' office to offer her a ride home from work, but I couldn't find her. She (already) ______.

\diamond PRACTICE 7. The simple past and the past perfect. (Charts 2-9 and 3-3)

Directions: Use the simple past or the past perfect of the verbs in parentheses. In some cases, both forms are correct.

- 1. Yesterday I (go) <u>went</u> to my daughter's dance recital. I (be, never) <u>had never been</u> to a dance recital before. I (take, not) <u>didn't take</u> dancing lessons when I (be) <u>was</u> a child.
- Last night, I (eat) ______ four servings of food at the "all-you-can-eat" special dinner at The Village Restaurant. Until that time, I (eat, never) ______ so much in one meal. I've felt miserable all day today.
- 3. A: I (see) ______ you in the school play last night. You (do) ______ a terrific acting job. (you, act, ever) ______ in a play before this one?

B: Yes. I (start) ______ acting when I was in elementary school.

www.ez-english.narod.ru

4. Last year, I (go) ______ mountain climbing for the first time. It was exciting and terrifying at the same time. We (move) ______ slowly and carefully, and it (take) ______ three days to get to the top. Imagine our surprise when we climbed onto the summit and found another group of climbers. They (arrive) ______ several hours ahead of us. They were having dinner and listening to Beethoven. We (laugh) ______, and they (invite) ______ us to join them. The climb (be) ______, to say the least, an unforgettable experience.



5. A friend of mine, Judith Nelson, is presently working in the international sales division at an electronics firm. She's just returned from a trip to Japan. She was asked to go there because she can speak Japanese. When she (be) _____ a business student at Boston University, she (study) _____ Japanese for four years. She (have, never) ______ the opportunity to use her Japanese until she went to Tokyo last month. While she was there, she (speak) ______ Japanese every day and (enjoy) ______ every minute of it. She's eager to return.

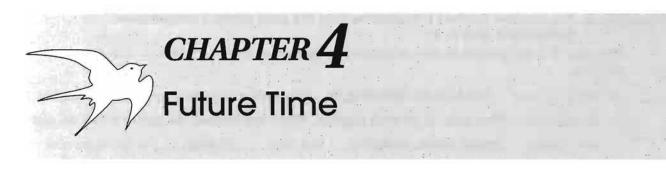
6. When I first (travel) ______ abroad to study, I (live, never) ______ _____ in a dormitory before. During the first year, I (have) ______ a roommate from Switzerland who (become) ______ a very good friend. Prior to that time, I (live, never) ______ with anyone from another culture.

PRACTICE 8. The present perfect progressive and the past perfect progressive. (Charts 3-2 and 3-4)

Directions: Use the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive to complete these sentences.

- 1. Anna (listen to) had been listening to loud rock music when her friends arrived, but turned it off so all of them could study together. When they finished, she turned it back on, and they (dance) have been dancing and (sing) singing for two hours now.
- 2. We (*wait*) ______ for Ali for the last two hours, but he still hasn't arrived.
- 3. We *(wait)* ______ for Ali for over three hours before he finally arrived yesterday.
- 4. Oscar *(train)* ______ for the Olympics for the last three years and wants to make the national team next year.
- 5. The marathon runner (*run*) ______ for almost two hours when he collapsed to the pavement. He received immediate medical attention.
- 6. Tom had a hard time finding a job. He (try) ________ to get a new job for six months before he finally found a position at a local community college. Now he has a two-year contract. He (teach) _______ there for only a few weeks, but he likes his new job very much.
- 7. Dr. Sato (*perform*) _______ specialized surgery since she began working at the university hospital ten years ago. She still does many operations each year, but now her work is so famous that she travels all over the world lecturing to other surgeons on her technique.
- 8. The Acme Construction Company is having problems. They (work) _____

______ on a new office building for the last seven months, and everything seems to be going wrong. Earlier, they stopped work on a smaller structure that they (*build*) ______ so they could take on this job. Now both projects are in jeopardy.



◇ PRACTICE 1. Will vs. be going to. (Charts 4-1 and 4-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with will or be going to, as appropriate. Include any words in parentheses.

- 1. A: Excuse me, waiter! This isn't what I ordered. I ordered a chicken salad.
 - B: Sorry, sir. I _____ take this back and get your salad.
 - A: Thank you.
- 2. A: Would you like to join Linda and me tomorrow? We <u>are going to</u> visit the natural history museum.
 - B: Sure. I've never been there.
- 3. A: Where's the mustard?
 - B: In the refrigerator, on the middle shelf.
 - A: I've looked there.
 - B: Okay. I ______ find it for you.
- 4. A: What's all this paint for? (you) _____ paint your house?
 - B: No, we _____ paint my mother's house.
- 5. A: Paul, do you want to go with me to the shopping mall?
 - B: No thanks. I have some things I have to do today. I ______ wash my car and then clean out the basement.
- 6. A: Someone needs to take this report to Mr. Day's office right away, but I can't leave my desk.
 - B: I ______ do it.
 - A: Thanks.
- 7. A: Let's make something easy for dinner. Got any ideas?
 - B: I ______ make some rice. Why don't you make a salad?
 - A: Sounds good.
- 8. A: Why did you buy so many tomatoes?
 - B: I _____ make a lot of spaghetti sauce.

- 9. A: Who'd like to take the VCR back to the visual aids room? Any volunteers?
 - B: I ______ do it.
- 10. A: Why did you buy so many vegetables?
 - B: I _____ make a large salad for the potluck dinner tonight.
- 11. A: Why is Carlos wearing a suit and tie? He usually wears jeans to class.
 - B: He ______ give a speech at the faculty lunch today.
 - A: Really? What (he) _____ speak about?
 - B: About university study in his country.
- 12. A: I wonder what the weather is like in Chicage now. I need to know what kind of clothes to pack for my trip there.
 - B: I don't know, but it just so happens that I have a cousin who lives in Chicago, and I have to call her tonight. I ______ ask her about the weather and tell you what she says.
- 13. A: I need some help.
 - B: What can I do, Andy?
 - A: I ______ go to a job interview this afternoon, and I don't have a decent tie to wear.
 - B: I ______ lend you one of mine.
 - A: Thanks.
- 14. A: You're going out?
 - B: Yes. I ______ go to the grocery store for some fruit, meat, and rice. Can you think of anything else we need?
 - A: How about some chocolate-covered nuts?
 - B: I said "need"!

\diamond PRACTICE 2. Expressing the future in time clauses. (Chart 4-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple present or with *will* and/or the correct form of *be going to*. (In some blanks, both *will* and *be going to* may be possible.)

1. The strike has been going on for over two months now. The strikers (return, not)

<u>will not / are not going to return</u> to work until they (get) <u>get</u> a raise and the benefits they are demanding.

- 2. A: Have you heard any news about Barbara since her car accident?
 - B: No, I've heard nothing. As soon as I (hear) _____ something, I (let)

_____ you know.

- 3. A: I see you're reading The Silk Road. I'd really like to read it sometime.
 - B: I (lend) ______ it to you as soon as I (finish) ______ it.

A: Really? Thanks!

- 4. When Rita (get) _____ her driver's license next week, she (be) ______
- 5. A: Mr. Jackson called. He'll be here at the garage to pick up his car in a few minutes. He (be, not) _______ very happy when he (learn) _______ about the bill for repairs on his car. Do you want to talk to him when he (come)
 - _____ in and (ask) _____ about his bill?
 - B: Not especially, but I will.
- 6. After Ali (return) ______ to his country next month, he (start) ______ _____working at the Ministry of Agriculture.

7. According to the newspaper, the Department of Transportation (build) _____

______ a new four-lane highway into the city. In my opinion, it (be) _______ obsolete before they (complete) _______ it. It seems to me that a six-lane highway is needed to handle the heavy traffic.

Relax. The plumber is on his way. He (be) ______ here before there (be) ______ a flood in the kitchen. Let's just keep mopping up the water the best we can.



PRACTICE 3. Using the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Directions: Change the verbs in *italics* to the present progressive for those sentences that express a planned event or definite intention. In some sentences, no change is possible.

- A: The package has to be there tomorrow. Will it get there in time?
 B: Don't worry. I'm going to send it by express mail.
 I'm sending it by express mail.
- 2. A: What's the weather report?
- 3. A: Would you like to have dinner with mc tonight, Pat?B: Thanks, but I'm going to have dinner with my sister and her husband.
- 4. A: What are you going to do this evening?B: I'm going to study at the library.
- 5. A: The phone is ringing.B: I'll get it.
- 6. A: Did you know that Bill and Sue are engaged?B: No. That's great! When are they going to get married?A: In September.
- 7. A: You're going to laugh when I tell you what happened to me today! B: Oh? What happened?
- 8. A: Have you lived here long?
 - B: No, not long. Only about a year. Eut we're going to move again next month. My father's company has reassigned him to Atlanta, Georgia.
- 9. A: I tried to register for Professor Stein's economics class, but it's full. Is he going to teach it again next semester?
 - B: I think so.
- 10. A: Son, I'm not going to send you any money this month. You're spending far too much. You need to learn to be more careful.
 - B: But Dad ...!
 - A: Just do the best you can. Your mother and I are going to come to visit you next month. We can talk about it then.

PRACTICE 4. Future progressive. (Chart 4-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the future progressive or the simple present of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. Just relax, Antoine. As soon as your sprained ankle *(heal)* <u>heals</u>, you can play soccer again. At this time next week, you *(play)* will be playing soccer again.
- I'll meet you at the airport tomorrow. After you (clear) ______ customs, look for me just outside the gate. I (stand) ______ right by the door.

- 3. Ingrid and Ruth won't be at this school when classes (start) ______ next semester. They (attend) ______ a new school in Taiwan.
 4. Please come and visit today when you (have) ______ a chance. I (shop) ______ from 1:00 to 2:30, but I'll be home after that.
- 5. I won't be here next week. I (attend) _______ a seminar in Los Angeles. Ms. Gomez will substitute-teach for me. When I (return) ______, I will expect you to be ready for the midterm examination.
- PRACTICE 5. The future perfect and the future perfect progressive. (Charts 4-6 and 4-7) Directions: Complete the sentences with the future perfect or the future perfect progressive of the verbs in the list. Include any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

arrive	listen	√rise	smoke
fly	ride	save	teach

- 1. By the time I get up tomorrow morning, the sun (already) will already have risen / will have already risen.
- 3. We're going to be late meeting my brother's plane. By the time we get to the airport, it (already)

4. He's never going to stop talking. In 15 more minutes, we ____

______ to him lecture for three solid hours. I don't even know

what he's saying anymore.

5. What? You're smoking another cigarette? At this rate you _____

_____ a whole pack by lunchtime. Don't you think you should cut down a little?

- 6. This is the longest flight I have ever taken. By the time we get to New Zealand, we
- for 13 hours. I'm going to be exhausted.
- Douglas has been putting some money away every month to prepare for his trip to South America next year. By the end of this year, he ______ enough. It looks like he's going to make it.
- 8. Can you believe it? According to our grammar teacher, by the end of this semester she ______ more than 3,000 students from 42 different countries. She has been teaching for nearly 20 years and she still loves it!

CHAPTER 5

Adverb Clauses of Time and Summary of Verb Tenses

♦ PRACTICE 1. Adverb clauses of time. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Change the position of the adverb clause in the sentence. <u>Underline</u> the adverb clause in the given sentence, and <u>underline</u> the adverb clause in the new sentence. Punctuate carefully.

- 1. I didn't feel any older when I reached my 21st birthday.
 - → When I reached my 21st birthday, I didn't feel any older.
- 2. I had a cup of tea before I left for work.
- 3. After I get home from work, I like to read the evening newspaper.
- 4. Since my watch broke, I have been late to work three times.
- 5. My cat hides under the house whenever it rains.
- 6. I'm going to get a job once I finish school.
- 7. While I was waiting for my bus, I heard a gunshot.
- 8. The village will have no electric power until a new generator is installed.
- 9. The last time I was in Taipei, I saw Mr. Wu.
- 10. As soon as we saw the tornado heading toward our town, we ran to the basement of the town hall.



\diamond PRACTICE 2. Adverb clauses of time. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Using the words in parentheses, make logical connections between the ideas in Column A with the ideas in Column B. Punctuate carefully and pay attention to verb tenses. <u>Underline</u> the adverb clauses in the new sentences.

Examples: 1. As soon as the taxi gets here, we can leave.

2. I turned off the TV before I left the room.

Column A

- 1. Our taxi will get here. (as soon as)
- 2. I turned off the TV. (before)
- 3. I parachuted from a plane. (the first time)
- 4. My boss stormed into my office (while)
- 5. Ceylon had been independent for 24 years. (after)
- 6. Jack fell off his bicycle. (since)
- 7. Ms. Johnson will return your call. (as soon as)
- 8. John will learn how to use a computer. (once)
- 9. I won't return this book to the library. (until)
- 10. Sue dropped a carton of eggs. (as)
- 11. Anna will go to class. (the next time)
- 12. The flooding river raced down the valley. (when)
- 13. The rice will be done. (just as soon as)
- 14. When I go to bed at night, I like to read. (until)

Column B

- A. She was leaving the store.
- B. It destroyed everything in its path.
- \checkmark C. We can leave.
 - D. I get sleepy.
- \checkmark E. I left the room.
 - F. Its name was changed to Sri Lanka.
 - G. We can eat.
 - H. She'll have some free time.
 - I. I'll finish my research project.
 - J. I was both terrified and exhilarated.
 - K. I was talking on the phone to an important client.
 - L. He'll be able to work more efficiently.
 - M. He's had to use crutches to walk.
 - N. She'll remember to take her grammar book.

\diamond PRACTICE 3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 5)

Directions: Choose the letter of the correct answer.

1. Afte	er Jessica 🔔 her	degree, she intends to	o work in her father's c	company.
A	A. will finish	B. will have finished	C. finishes	D. is finishing
2. By	the time I go to bec	d tonight, I my	work for the day.	
A	A. will finish	B. have finished	C. will have finished	D. finish
3. Wh	en my parents	_ for a visit tomorrow	, they will see our new	baby for the first time.
A	A. will arrive	B. arrived	C. will have arrived	D. arrive
			her feet. When she sa C. screamed	
	the time Alfonso fir ause his parents mo		igh school, he s	even different schools
A	A. attended	B. was attending	C. had attended	D. had been attending
6. Un	til you learn to rela	x more, you you	r ability to speak Eng	lish.
A	A. haven't improved	l	C. don't improve	
E	3. aren't improving		D. won't improve	
7. I bo	orrowed four books	on gardening the last	time I to the lib	orary.
A	A. go	B. went	C. had gone	D. have gone

		www.ez-english.na		
8.	Before I started the	car, all of the passenge	ers their seat belt	ts.
	A. will buckle	B. had buckled	C. buckle	D. have buckled
9.	It seems that whene	ver I travel abroad, I _	to take something	g I need.
	A. forgot	B. am forgetting	C. forget	D. had forgotten
10.	When I see the doct	or this afternoon, I	him to look at my	throat.
	A. will ask	B. asked	C. will have asked	D. ask
11.	After ancient Greek leaves.	athletes won a race in	the Olympics, they	a simple crown of oliv
	A. received	B. had received	C. were receiving	D. have received
12.	After the race	, the celebration begar	ı.	
	A. had been won	B. is won	C. will be won	D. has been won
13.	I'll return Bob's per	to him the next time	I him.	
	A. see	B. will see	C. will have seen	D. have seen
14.	I all of the qu	estions correctly since	I began this grammar	exercise on verb tenses.
	A. am answering	B. answer	C. have answered	D. answered
				, ,
15.	A small stone struck	the windshield while	we down the gra	avel road.
TIC	A. drive	the windshield while B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – opriate tense for the v	C. had driven	D. had been driving
TIC Di	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev rections: Use any appr	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – opriate tense for the ve	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses.	
TIC Di	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev rections: Use any appr	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the vi , never)	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses.	D. had been driving
TIC <i>Di</i>	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather <i>(fly,</i> intention of ever do	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the va , never) ing so.	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no
TIC <i>Di</i>	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather <i>(fly,</i> intention of ever do	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the view , never) ing so. I (wait)	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no
TIC <i>Di</i> 1.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (arrive, not)	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the view, <i>never</i>) ing so. I (wait)	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she st
TIC <i>Di</i> 1.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (arrive, not)	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the view, never) ing so. I (wait) re (be)	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she st
TIC Dir 1. 2. 3.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (<i>arrive</i> , <i>not</i>) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the very , never) ing so. I (wait) re (be) (26,247 feet).	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h only 14 mountains th	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she st
TIC Dir 1. 2. 3.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (arrive, not) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip an	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the view, <i>never</i>) ing so. I (<i>wait</i>) re (<i>be</i>) (26,247 feet). head of me tomorrow, so	C. had driven • 5) erbs in parentheses. in an in an for h only 14 mountains th so I think I'd better go	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she st hat <i>(reach)</i>
TIC Dir 1. 2. 3.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (<i>arrive</i> , <i>not</i>) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip an good-bye now becau	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the view, <i>never</i>) ing so. I (wait) re (be) (26,247 feet). head of me tomorrow, so use I won't see you in	C. had driven • 5) erbs in parentheses. in an in an for h only 14 mountains th so I think I'd better go	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she st nat <i>(reach)</i> to bed. But let me say <i>already)</i>
TIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (arrive, not) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip an good-bye now becau	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the view, <i>never</i>) ing so. I (wait) re (be) (26,247 feet). head of me tomorrow, so use I won't see you in by the	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h only 14 mountains the so I think I'd better go the morning. I <i>(leave,</i>)	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she sti- nat <i>(reach)</i> to bed. But let me say <i>already)</i> up.
TIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (<i>arrive</i> , <i>not</i>) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip an good-bye now becau Right now we (<i>have</i>)	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the view, never)	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h only 14 mountains th so I think I'd better go the morning. I (leave, he time you (get)	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she sti nat (reach) to bed. But let me say already) up. he temperature (be)
TIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (<i>arrive</i> , <i>not</i>) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip an good-bye now becau Right now we (<i>have</i>)	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the very , never) ing so. I (wait) re (be) (26,247 feet). head of me tomorrow, so use I won't see you in by the by the in the upper 90	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h for h only 14 mountains th so I think I'd better go the morning. I (leave, he time you (get) a heat wave. Th Os (upper 30s Celsius)	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she sti nat (reach) to bed. But let me say <i>already</i>) up. he temperature (be) for the last six days.
TIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (arrive, not) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip and good-bye now becau Right now we (have Last night I (go)	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the very , never) ing so. I (wait) re (be) (26,247 feet). head of me tomorrow, so use I won't see you in by the) in the upper 90 to so	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h for h only 14 mountains th so I think I'd better go the morning. I (leave, he time you (get) a heat wave. Th Os (upper 30s Celsius) a party. When I (get)	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she sti hat (reach) to bed. But let me say <i>already</i>) up. he temperature (be) for the last six days. ther
TIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (arrive, not) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip ah good-bye now becar Right now we (have Last night I (go) the room was full of	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the very , never) ing so. I (wait) re (be) (26,247 feet). head of me tomorrow, so use I won't see you in by the by the to so f people. Some of the	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h for h only 14 mountains th so I think I'd better go the morning. I (leave, he time you (get) a heat wave. Th Os (upper 30s Celsius) a party. When I (get) m (dance)	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she sti hat (reach) to bed. But let me say <i>already</i>) up. he temperature (be) for the last six days. ther , and other
TIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	A. drive E 4. Verb tense rev <i>rections:</i> Use any appr My grandfather (<i>fly</i> , intention of ever do Jane isn't here yet. (arrive, not) In all the world, the above 8,000 meters I have a long trip ah good-bye now becar Right now we (have Last night I (go) the room was full of (talk)	B. were driving view. (Chapters 1 – ropriate tense for the very , never) ing so. I (wait) re (be) (26,247 feet). head of me tomorrow, so use I won't see you in by the by the	C. had driven → 5) erbs in parentheses. in an for h for h only 14 mountains th so I think I'd better go the morning. I (leave, he time you (get) a heat wave. Th Os (upper 30s Celsius) a party. When I (get) m (dance)	D. had been driving a airplane, and he has no her since noon, but she st hat (reach) to bed. But let me say already) up. he temperature (be) for the last six days then, and other

7.	About three yesterday afternoon, Jessica (lie)	in bed reading a book.
	Suddenly she (hear) a l	oud noise and (get) up to see
	what it was. She (look)	out the window. A truck (back, just)
	into her new	car!
8.	Next month I have a week's vacation. I (plan) to take a trip.
	First, I (go) to Madisor	, Wisconsin, to visit my brother. After I (leave)
		to Chicago to see a friend who
	(study) at the univ	ersity there. She (live)
	in Chicago for three years, so she (know)	her way around the city.
	She (promise) to ta	ake me to many interesting places. I (be, never)
	in Chicago, s	o I (look) forward
	to going there.	
9.	Yesterday while I (sit)	in class, I (get) the hiccups.
	The person who (sit)	next to me told me to hold my breath. I
	(try) that, but it didn't work	. The instructor (lecture)
	, and I didn't want	to interrupt him, so I just sat there trying to
	hiccup quietly. Finally, after I (hiccup)	for almost five
	minutes, I (raise) my ha	and and (excuse) myself
	from class to go get a drink of water.	
10.	The weather has been terrible lately. It (rain)	off and on for
	two days, and the temperature (drop)	
		days ago, the sun <i>(shine)</i>
		pleasant. The weather certainly (change)
	quickly here. I never k	
		g, maybe it <i>(snow)</i>

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

On June 20th, I returned home. I (1. be) ______ away from home for two years. My family (2. meet) ______ me at the airport with kisses and tears. They (3. miss) ______ me as much as I had missed them. I (4. be) ______ very happy to see them again. When I (5. get) ______ the chance, I (6. take) ______ a long look at them. My little brother (7. be) ______ no longer little. He (8. grow) ______ a lot. He (9. be) _____ almost as tall as my father. My little sister (10. wear) ______ a green dress. She (11. change) ______ quite a bit, too, but she (12. be, still) ______

mischievous and inquisitive. She (13. ask) _	me a thousand questions a
minute, or so it seemed. My father (14. gain)	some weight, and
his hair (15. turn)	a little grayer, but otherwise he was just as I
had remembered him. My mother (16. look)	a little older, but not
much. The wrinkles on her face (17. be)	smile wrinkles.

\diamondsuit PRACTICE 6. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

On June 20th, I will return home. I (1. be) _	away from
home for two years by that time. My family (2.	meet) me at the
airport with kisses and tears. They (3. miss)	me as much
as I have missed them. I (4. be)	very happy to see them again. When I
(5. get) a chance, I (6. take)	a long look at them. My
little brother (7. be, no longer)	so little. He (8. grow)
at least a foot. He (9.	be) almost as tall as my
father. My little sister (10. wear, probably)	a green
dress because that's her favorite color. She (11.	change)
quite a bit, too, but she (12. be, still)	mischievous and inquisitive.
She (13. ask) me a thousan	d questions a minute, or so it will seem.
My father (14. gain, probably)	some weight, and
his hair (15. turn)	a little grayer, but otherwise he will be
just as I remember him. My mother (16. look)	a little older, but not
much. The wrinkles on her face (17. be)	smile wrinkles.

\diamond PRACTICE 7. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense. PART I.

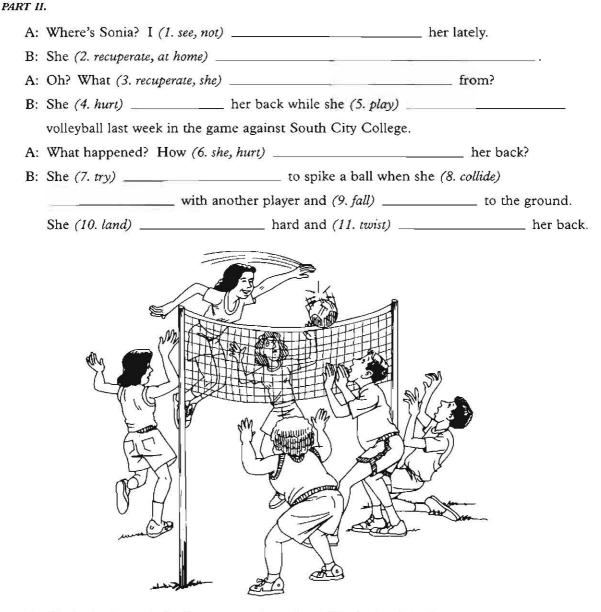
- A: What (1. seem) _____ to be the trouble, Ms. Jones?
- B: I (2. send) ______ in my money for a subscription to your magazine, Computer Data, two months ago, but to date I (3. receive, not) ______ any issues.
- A: I'm sorry to hear that. Unfortunately, one of our main computers (4. function, not)

______ at the moment. However, our computer specialists (5. work) ______ very hard to fix it at the present time. We (6. start)

_____ your new subscription as soon as possible.

B: Thank you.

Adverb Clauses of Time and Summary of Verb Tenses 35



- A: Gosh, that's too bad. I'm sorry to hear that. How's she doing?

(14. be, not) ______ able to play again for at least a month.

- A: (15. her doctor, allow) ______ her to play in the national tournament at the end of the summer?
- B: She (16. have) ______ the brace on her back for more than seven weeks by then, so I think he will.
- A: I hope so. I know how much she likes to compete in volleyball games. And the team really needs her.

PART III.

- A: Hi, Jim. How's it going?
- B: Great.
- A: (1. you, enjoy) ______ the rock concert last night?
- B: You bet! I had a terrific time.
- A: Tell me about it. I (2. go, never) ______ to a rock concert.
- B: Well, I (3. go, never) ______ to a rock concert before either, so I

(4. know, not) _____ what to expect. I've been to symphony concerts

lots of times, but never a rock concert. Ten minutes before the concert was supposed to start, hundreds of teenagers (5. try, still) ______ to find their

seats. The place was a madhouse. I thought that things would settle down once the

concert began. Boy, was I wrong! As soon as the lead singer (6. appear)

on the stage, everyone (7. start) ______ screaming at the top of their lungs.

I couldn't hear myself think. But after a while things calmed down. And the music was great. At one time during the concert, while the lead singer (8. sing)

______ a famous hit song, many people in the audience knew the song so well that they sang along with him. All in all, the concert (9. be) ______ a lot of fun, but very noisy.

A: It does sound like it was a lot of fun!

PART IV.

Mark Twain, the author of the *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*, is one of America's bestloved storytellers. He (1. grow up) _______ in a small town on the Mississippi River. As a young boy, he (2. admire, greatly) _______ the pilots of the riverboats and dreamed about being a riverboat pilot on the mighty river. He pursued his dream, and by the age of 22, he himself (3. become) _______ a riverboat pilot. Later in life, when he (4. become) _______ a writer, many of his stories (5. contain) _______ elements of his own experiences. He wrote many humorous stories and articles about life on the Mississippi River before he (6. die) _______ in 1910 at the age of 74. Sadly, Twain (7. work) ________ on a new story for several months before his death, but he (8. finish, never) _______ it. Over the years since his death, his boyhood home in Hannibal, Missouri, (9. become) _______ a favorite place for Americans to visit to learn about Twain and life on the Mississippi at the turn of the 19th century.

\diamond PRACTICE 8. Test A: Verb tenses. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 5)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

<i>Example:</i> I've been in this A. have come	s city for a long time. B. was coming		ears ago. D. had come
 "Hurry up! We're was "I for an impor 		taking you so long?" head and leave withou	it me."
A. wait	B. will wait	C. am waiting	D. have waited
2. "Robert is going to be "I'm sure he'll be a st		e in three movie	es already."
A. has been appear	ing	C. has appeared	
B. had appeared		D. appeared	
3. "Where's Polly?" "She"			
A. is in her room st	tudying	C. studies in her roo	om
B. in her room is st	tudying	D. has in her room	studied
4. "Hello? Alice? This i "Jeff? What a coincid		, ou when the phone ra	ng."
A. was just thinking	5	C. have just been th	inking
B. just thought		D. was just thought	
5. "What about th "It's more confusing t		aw?"	
A. are you thinking		C. have you though	t
B. do you think		D. have you been th	inking
6. "When is Mr. Fields r "Soon, I think. He _ year after that."		me. He'll probably ret	tire either next year or the
A. worked		C. has been working	3
B. had been workir	ıg	D. is working	
7. "Why did you buy all "I a delicious d	-		
A. make		C. am going to mak	e
B. will make		D. will have made	
8. "Let's go! What's tak "I'll be there as soon :			
A. found	B. will find	C. find	D. am finding
9. Next week when there	e a full moon, t	he ocean tides will be l	higher.
A. is being	B. is	C. will be	D. will have been
10. While I TV last A. watch	night, a mouse ran ac B. watched	cross the floor. C. was watching	D. am watching

11. Fish were among the earliest forms of life.A. existedB. are existing	
12. The phone constantly since Jack anno A. has been ringingB. rang	ounced his candidacy for president this morning. C. had rung D. had been ringing
13. The earth on the sun for its heat and	-
A. is depend B. depending	C. has depend D. depends
14. I don't feel good. I home from work	
A. am staying B. stay	C. will have stayed D. stayed
•	a down information about the earth's atmosphere. great contributions to weather forecasting.
A. is making B. has made	C. made D. makes
16. On July 20, 1969, Astronaut Neil Armstron ever to set foot on another celestial body.	g down onto the moon, the first person
A. was stepping B. stepped	C. has stepped D. was step
17. The plane's departure was delayed because passengers finally boarded the aircraft, man in the airport for three and a half hours.	of mechanical difficulties. When the weary y were annoyed and irritable because they
A. are waiting	C. have been waiting
B. were waiting	D. had been waiting
18. If coastal erosion continues to take place at anymore.	the present rate, in another fifty years this beach
A. doesn't exist	C. isn't existing
B. isn't going to exist	D. won't be existing
19. Homestead High School's football team	
A. has never won	C. had never been winning
B. is never winning	D. had never won
	tensive language study before they can qualify as English for three years, but he will still are masters the language.
A. will be studying	C. will have been studying
B. has studied	D. has been studying

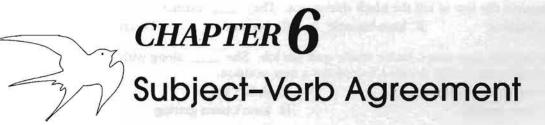
\diamond PRACTICE 9. Test B: Verb tenses. (Chapters 1 \rightarrow 5)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

<i>Example:</i> I've been in this city A. have come B.	v for a long time. I was coming		ars ago. D. had come
 "May I speak to Dr. Paine "I'm sorry, he a pati 	-	t. Can I help vou?"	
-	sees	C. has been seeing	D. was seeing
 "When are you going to as to her twice alread 			ne "
•		C. I was talking	
3. "Do you think Harry will " "I hope not. It'll probably	-		,) ,
A. are sleeping		C. have been sleeping	<u>z</u>
B. will be sleeping		D. be sleeping	
4. Paul, could you please turn	n off the stove? Th	ne potatoes for a	it least thirty minutes.
A. are boiling		C. have been boiling	
B. boiling		D. were boiling	
 "Is it true that spaghetti di "Yes. The Chineses back to Italy." 			larco Polo brought it
A. have been making		C. had been making	
B. have made		D. make	
6. "I once saw a turtle that h "Stop kidding. I yo		tle flew into the air to	catch insects."
A. don't believe		C. didn't believe	
B. am not believing		D. wasn't believing	
7. "Could someone help me "I'm not busy. I you		r into the pickup truck	?"
A. help B.	will help	C. am going to help	D. am helping
8. My family loves this house 60 years ago.	e. It the farm	nily home ever since m	y grandfather built it
A. was B.	has been	C. is	D. will be
9. Here's an interesting statis words. How many words			a about 48,000
A. spoke B.	was speaking	C. speaks	D. is speaking
10. I know you feel bad now, 7 adult, you all about		put it out of your min	d. By the time you're an
A. forget		C. will forget	
B. will have forgotten		D. forgot	

www	ez-ena	lish r	narod.ru
	ez-eng	11311.1	iai ou.i u

		www.ez-english.nar	od.ru	
11.		kill the black rhinocer B. have become	os. They extinct C. become	
	A. became	B. have become	C. become	D. are becoming
12.		y decided to look for a		ng with her boss for a long
13.			metime tomorrow afte	rnoon, it will bring with it
	A. reaches	B. will reach	C. is reaching	D. reaching
14.		chistoric reptiles domin present Age of Mamn		Age of Dinosaurs
	A. lasted	B. was lasting	C. has lasted	D. had lasted
15.	Jim, why don't you ta A. worked	ke some time off? You B. work		Take a short vacation. D. have been working
16.	outdoor mall. Next s	ummer when the touri e area where the old ru	sts arrive, they ?	-
17.	~	occurred at 2:07 А.М. с didn't even know it h		the people in the village next morning.
	A. slept	B. had slept	C. were sleeping	D. sleep
18.	The little girl started A. has lost	to cry. She her B. had lost	doll, and no one was a C. was losing	ble to find it for her. D. was lost
19.	According to research A. turn	n reports, people usuall B. are turning		25 to 30 times each night. D. turned
20.	Jane's eyes burned an hours. Finally, she to		She at the con	nputer for five straight
	A. is sitting	B. has been sitting	C. was sitting	D. had been sitting



O PRACTICE 1. Preview: subject-verb agreement. (Chapter 6)

Directions: Correct the mistakes in the use of singular and plural forms.

- 1. My mother wear, glasses.
- 2. Elephant is large animals.
- 3. Your heart beat faster when you exercise.
- 4. Healthy hearts needs regular exercise.
- 5. Every child in the class know the alphabet.
- 6. Some of the magazine at the dentist's office are two year old.
- 7. A number of the students in my class is from Mexico.
- 8. One of my favorite subject in school is algebra.
- 9. There's many different kind of insects in the world.
- 10. Writing compositions are difficult for me.
- 11. The United State have a population of more than 250 million.
- 12. Most of the people in my factory division likes and gets along with one another, but a few of the worker doesn't fit in with the rest of us very well.

PRACTICE 2. Pronunciation and spelling of final -s/-es. (Chart 6-1)

Directions: Add -s or -es to these words to spell them correctly, and give the pronunciation of the ending.

		7. month		12. industry	
1. ball <u>s</u>	121	8. tree		13. swallow	
2. wish <u>es</u>	/əz/	9. keep	<u> </u>	14. cliff	
3. aunt <u>s</u>	<u>/s/</u>	10. dress		15. bath	
4. flower		11. valley		16. bathe	
5. park		andre fal un statistica and summing and a			

6. touch _____

◇ PRACTICE 3. Basic subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-2)

Directions: Choose the correct verb, singular or plural, for each subject.

- 1. The weather *is, are* cold.
- 2. Vegetables is, are good for you.
- 3. A dog barks, bark.
- 4. Dogs barks, bark.
- 5. Ann is, are at home.
- 6. Ann and Sue is, are at home.
- 7. Every boy and girl is, are here.
- 8. A boy and a girl is, are in the street.
- 9. The furniture in that room *is, are* comfortable.
- 10. The chairs in that room is, are comfortable.
- 11. The furniture in those rooms is, are comfortable.
- 12. The chair, as well as the table, is, are made of wood.
- 13. The chairs, as well as the table, *is*, *are* made of wood.
- 14. The chair, as well as the tables, *is*, *are* made of wood.
- 15. Eating vegetables is, are good for you.

PRACTICE 4. Subject-verb agreement: using expressions of quantity. (Chart 6-3) Directions: Choose the correct verb, singular or plural, for each subject.

- 1. Some of the road is, are closed due to flooding.
- 2. Some of the roads is, are closed due to flooding.
- 3. A lot of that movie is, are full of violence.
- 4. A lot of movies is, are full of violence.
- 5. Three-fourths of the pizza has, have already been eaten.
- 6. Three-fourths of the pizzas has, have already been eaten.
- 7. Most of the houses was, were destroyed by fire.
- 8. Most of the house was, were destroyed by fire.
- 9. One of the houses was, were destroyed by fire.
- 10. Each of the houses is, are in ruins.
- 11. Each house is, are in ruins.
- 12. Every one of the houses has, have serious damage.
- 13. Every house has, have serious damage.
- 14. None of the houses has, have escaped damage.

- 15. None of the city is, are safe at night.
- 16. None of the cities is, are safe at night.
- 17. The number of desks in that classroom is, are thirty-five.
- 18. A number of stores is, are closed today because of the holiday.

PRACTICE 5. Subject-verb agreement: using there + be and some irregularities. (Charts 6-4 and 6-5)

Directions: Choose the correct verb, singular or plural, for each subject.

- 1. There is, are a cup on the table.
- 2. There *is*, *are* some cups on the table.
- 3. Why isn't, aren't there any windows in the classroom?
- 4. Why isn't, aren't there any chalk for the chalkboard?
- 5. States is, are political units.
- 6. The United States is, are in North America.
- 7. The news in that newspaper is, are biased.
- 8. Economics is, are an important area of study.
- 9. Diabetes *is, are* an illness. Mumps *is, are* another kind of illness. Rabies *is, are* a disease you can get from being bitten by an infected animal.
- 10. 100 meters isn't, aren't a long distance to travel by car.
- 11. Five minutes isn't, aren't too long to wait.
- 12. Six and four is, are ten.
- 13. People is, are interesting.
- 14. English is, are a common language.
- 15. The English is, are friendly people.
- 16. The elderly in my country is, are given free medical care.

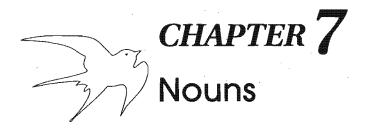
\diamond PRACTICE 6. Subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 \rightarrow 6-5)

Directions: Choose the correct completion for each sentence.

- 1. Nearly 40 percent of the people in our town never votes, vote in local elections.
- 2. A number of students has, have participated in intensive language programs abroad.
- 3. The number of students who knew the answer to the last question on the exam *was*, *were* very low.
- 4. Every one of the boys and girls in the school knows, know what to do if the fire alarm rings.
- 5. Isn't, Aren't Portuguese spoken in Brazil?
- 6. A lot of Brazilians speaks and understands, speak and understand Spanish.

- 7. Why is, are the police standing over there?
- 8. Why does, do most of the television stations broadcast news at the same hour?
- 9. Some of the most important books for my report is, are not available in the school library.
- 10. There has, have been times when I have seriously considered dropping out of school.
- 11. Not one of the women in my office has, have received a promotion in the past two years. All of the promotions has, have gone to men.
- 12. The news on the radio and TV stations *confirms, confirm* that a serious storm is approaching our city.
- 13. Geography is, are fascinating. Mathematics is, are fascinating.
- 14. Mathematics and geography is, are my favorite subjects.
- 15. By law, every man, woman, and child is, are guaranteed the right to free speech.
- 16. Isn't, Aren't sugar and pineapple the leading crops in Hawaii?
- 17. Why is, are there a shortage of certified school teachers at the present time?
- 18. How many states in the United States begins, begin with the letter "A"?*
- 19. The United States consists, consist of 50 states.
- 20. What places in the world has, have no snakes?
- 21. Politics is, are a constant source of interest to me.
- 22. Was, Were there ever any doubt in your mind about the outcome of the election?

^{*}Look in the Answer Key for the answer to this question.



◇ PRACTICE 1. Final -s/-es. (Chapter 6 and Chart 7-1)

Directions: Add final -s/-es where necessary. Do not change, add, or omit any other words in the sentences.

- 1. A bird care, for its feather, by cleaning them with its beak.
- There are many occupation in the world. Doctor take care of sick people. Pilot fly airplane.
 Farmer raise crop. Shepherd herd sheep.
- 3. An architect design building. An archeologist dig in the ground to find object from past civilizations.
- 4. The first modern computer were developed in the 1930s and 1940s. Computer were not commercially available until the 1950s.
- 5. There are several factory in my hometown. The glass factory employ many people.
- 6. Kangaroo are Australian animal. They are not found on any of the other continent, except in zoo.
- 7. Mosquito are found everywhere in the world, including the Arctic.
- 8. At one time, many people believed that tomato were poisonous.
- 9. Bird, fish, insect, and mammal are different species. Each group of these life form shares physical characteristic.
- 10. Most of the creature in the world possess the five sense of sight, hearing, touch, taste, and smell. However, these sense are often more highly developed in one species than another. Bird have a highly developed sense of sight. For instance, an eagle can spot a small lizard from high in the air. The lizard would be undetectable by a human being from the same distance. Animal that hunt by following a trail on the ground may have poor eyesight but a keen sense of smell. For example, dog see a blurred, gray world because they are nearsighted and cannot see colors. However, they can smell thousands of times better than human being can.

♦ PRACTICE 2. Plural nouns. (Chart 7-1)

Directions: Write the plural form of each noun.

1.	foot	feet	12. deer	s
2.	hero	heroes	13. ox	
3.	knife		14. donkey	
4.	quality		15. mystery	
5.	doorway		16. chief	
6.	gentleman		17. thief	
7.	wolf		18. flash	
8.	quiz		19. memo	·
9.	custom		20. memorandum	u
10.	video		21. crisis	2
11.	potato		22. mouth	¢

♦ PRACTICE 3. Irregular foreign plurals. (Chart 7-1)

Directions: Use the correct plural forms of the nouns in the list to complete the sentences. Use each word only once.

bacterium	datum	oasis
crisis	hypothesis	phenomenon
criterion	medium	stimulus
curriculum	memorandum	✓ thesis

- 1. Graduate students are often required to write long papers in which they state an opinion and give evidence to support it. These papers are often referred to as <u>theses</u>.
- 2. Thunder and lightning are ______ of nature.
- Before the students began their chemistry experiments, they stated theories to explain what was going to happen in their experiments. In other words, they made ______
- The government of that country is unstable. The country has faced many political
 ______ in the last ten years. It has had to face one problem after another.

- 6. The mass ______ include radio, television, newspapers, magazines, and the Internet.
- 7. The teacher wanted to make sure the students understood the standards by which she would make her judgments. She carefully explained the ______ she would use to judge the students' work.
- 8. All of the departments at the university provide descriptions of their ______ in the school catalog. Look there to find out what courses each department offers.
- 9. Certain factors cause plants to grow. These ______ are light, water, and fertile soil.
- 10. Very small living things that can cause disease are called germs. Germs are forms of
- 11. In a desert, there are places where water is available and a few plants grow. These areas are called ______.
- 12. The researcher assembled numerous facts through months of investigation. She used the ______ she had gathered to write a report for a scientific journal.*

◇ PRACTICE 4. Possessive nouns. (Chart 7-2)

Directions: Make the *italicized* nouns possessive by adding apostrophes and final -s/-es.

1. He put the mail in the secretary's mailbox.

- 2. There are three secretaries in our office. The secretary ies' mailboxes are in the hallway.
- 3. Tom has two cats. The *cat* food and water dishes are on a shelf in the laundry room.
- 4. I have one cat. My cat feet are white, but the rest of her is black.
- 5. My child name is Olaf.
- 6. Their *children* names are Pablo and Gabriella.
- 7. My supervisor names are Ms. Anderson and Mr. Gomez.
- 8. Your supervisor name is Mrs. Wright.
- 9. I'm interested in other *people* ideas.
- 10. This month issue of that magazine has several interesting articles.

^{*}In very formal English, *data* is considered plural, but more typically it is used as a singular noncount noun. Typical use: *This data is not correct*. Formal use: *These data are not correct*.

- 11. All of the performers in the play did well. The audience applauded the *actor* excellent performances.
- 12. An actor income is uncertain.

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Using apostrophes. (Charts 7-2 and 8-1)

Directions: Add apostrophes as necessary to mark a possessive noun or a contraction with a pronoun.

- 1. Mary's father works at the Northgate Medical Center. He's a dentist.
- 2. Jacks parents live in Georgia. His parents home is in Atlanta.
- 3. Our teachers last name is Wells. Shes one of the best teachers in the school.
- 4. Our teachers last names are Wells, Hunt, and Moore. Theyre all good teachers.
- 5. Ms. Wells husband is also a teacher. Ms. Hunts husband is an engineer.
- 6. Its well known that a bear likes sweet food. Its favorite food is honey.
- 7. Anns telephone number is 555-8989. Ours is 555-8998. People often confuse hers with ours, so we get frequent calls for her.
- 8. The tiger is a beautiful animal. Its coat is orange and white with black stripes. Although its found in the wild only in Asia, people throughout the world appreciate its beauty and power. Even though tigers are protected by laws, many scientists predict their extinction within twenty to thirty years. How much poorer our childrens and grandchildrens lives will be when the earth no longer has a place for tigers, elephants, wolves, and numerous other animals whose fates rely upon the wisdom and compassion of humankind.

PRACTICE 6. Using nouns as modifiers. (Chart 7-3)

PART I. Complete the sentences with the nouns in the parentheses. Use the singular or plural form as appropriate.

- 1. They sell <u>toys</u> at that store. It is a <u>toy</u> store. (toy)
- 2. I like ______ salads. I like salads that contain ______. (tomato)
- 3. I have a _____ garden. I grow many different kinds of ______ (vegetable)
- 4. Some people are addicted to ______. They are ______ addicts. (drug)
- 5. (two + lane) We drove down an old, narrow highway that had only ______
 We drove down a ______ highway.
- 6. (five + minute) I gave a ______ speech in class. My speech lasted for ______.

7.	(sixty + year + old) The Watkins live in	a	house.	Any house
	that is	usually needs a lot of repairs.		

PART II. Complete the sente	ences, using the <i>italicized</i> noun as a modifier.
8. That handbook is for st	idents. It is astudent handbook.
9. Their baby is ten months	old. They have a
10. Our trip lasted for three	days. We took a
11. She is a psychologist for	children. She is a
12. I wrote a check for fifty	dollars. I wrote a
13. I will get three credits for	that course. It is a
14. Their house has nine roo	ms. It is a
15. That food is for dogs. It	is
16. That room is for guesus.	It is a
17. The professor asked us	to write a paper of <i>five pages</i> . She asked us to write a
	e years old and a brother who is twelve years old. I have a
PRACTICE 7. Using nouns as m Directions: What do you call	
1. someone who robs bank	s + a bank robber
2. someone who fights bul	$ls \rightarrow a \ bull fighter \ *$
3. someone who collects s	samps $\rightarrow a \ stamp \ collector \ **$
4. someone who trains ani	
5. someone who tells stori	E\$*
6. someone who collects ta	ixes**
7. something that opens ca	ins all of the second
8. something that wipes a	windshield
*Usually spelled as one word. **Spelled with -or instead of -er.	es* axes** ans windshield
50 CHAPTER 7	Walley's

- 5. someone who tells stories*
- 6. someone who collects taxes**
- 7. something that opens cans
- 8. something that wipes a windshield

^{*}Usually spelled as one word.

^{**}Spelled with -or instead of -er.

- 9. someone who earns wages
- 10. someone who manages an office
- 11. someone who programs computers
- 12. someone who keeps books*
- 13. something that removes spots
- 14. something that holds pots
- 15. someone who makes trouble*
- 16. someone who reads minds
- 17. something that dries hair
- 18. something that peels potatoes
- 19. someone who plays tennis
- 20. someone who fights fires*
- 21. someone who carries mail

\diamond PRACTICE 8. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 7-4 \rightarrow 7-6)

Directions: Add final -s/-es to the *italicized* noun if necessary. Do not add, omit, or change any other words.

(no change) 1. Jackie has brown hair, and gray eyes.

- 2. My parents gave me some good advice
- 3. I always drink water when I'm hot and thirsty.
- 4. We ate some sandwich for lunch.
- 5. A gambler needs a lot of luck
- 6. I have a lot of homework to do tonight.
- 7. Maria took some good photograph at the wedding party.
- 8. Our country has made a lot of progress in the last 25 years.
- 9. That book has a lot of good idea
- 10. An encyclopedia contains a lot of information
- 11. I've learned a lot of new vocabulary
- 12. Olga knows a lot of American slang

^{*}Usually spelled as one word.

- 13. Every day, I learn some more new word in English.
- 14. Pioneer women had a lot of courage
- 15. We bought some new *clothing*
- 16. I bought a pair of leather glove
- 17. At rush hour there are a lot of *car* on the highway. Although normally it takes us twenty *minute* to drive from home to work, at rush hour it can take an hour because of the heavy *traffic*.
- 18. Ann likes to wear jewelry . Today she is wearing four ring , six bracelet , and a necklace .
- 19. I had meat , rice , vegetable , and some tea for dinner.
- 20. Butterfly begin as caterpillar and then are transformed into beautiful insect with vividly colored wing .
- 21. Traveling can impart a great deal of education as well as enjoyment. When people travel to another country, they can learn about its history, economy, and architecture, as well as become acquainted with its various custom.
- 22. Although everyone believed the accused man was guilty of murder, he was acquitted. The prosecuting attorney did not have enough *evidence* to convict him, nor even any *proof* that he had been able to enter the murdered man's house.
- 23. You need more *calcium* in your diet, Mrs. Abbott. It is found in milk and milk *product*, in dark green *vegetable* such as broccoli, and in *fish* such as *sardine*You need *vitamin*, too. Do you take *vitamin pill*?
- 24. Last night we heard about a new political crisis in our country. Do you have any more *information* about it? Are there any reports of *violence*? We've heard a lot of rumors about what may be happening, but we're anxious to know the *truth*. We need *fact*, not *gossip*.
- 25. We received a postcard from Melissa today. She's on vacation in the country, staying in a two-hundred-year -old inn. She says that the area has fantastic scenery and a wonderful golf course. She's having a lot of fun .

\diamond PRACTICE 9. Using articles. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a/an, the, or \emptyset .

- 1. $\underline{\not}$ lightning is $\underline{\not}$ flash of light. It is usually followed by $\underline{\not}$ thunder.
- 2. Last night we had <u>a</u> terrible storm. Our children were frightened by <u>the</u> thunder.
- 3. _____ circles are _____ round geometric figures.
- <u>circle with</u> slash drawn through it is an international symbol meaning "Do not do this!" For example, <u>circle in</u> illustration means "No Smoking."
- 5. _____ milk I put on my cereal this morning was sour because someone forgot to put it in _____ refrigerator after dinner last night.
- 6. _____ milk is an important source _____ of protein and _____ calcium.
- 7. _____ wisdom comes more from _____ understanding than from _____ knowledge.
- 8. I always appreciate _____ wisdom of my mother's advice.
- 9. In class yesterday, I sat next to two women. _____ woman on my right had _____ right answer to _____ teacher's question about verb forms.
- 10. Maria is _____ independent young woman who knows her own mind.
- 11. Have you met Mr. and Mrs. Smith? Mrs. Smith used to be ______ teacher, but now she is ______ computer programmer. Mr. Smith is ______ architect. The Smiths used to live in ______ apartment, but recently they have built ______ house.
- Frank Lloyd Wright is _____ name of _____ famous architect. He is _____ architect who designed the Guggenheim Museum in New York. He also designed _____ hotel in Tokyo. _____ hotel was designed to withstand _____ earthquakes.
- 13. According to today's paper, the mayor has appointed ______ committee to study what improvements need to be made in the city. ______ committee, which plans to continue its study through the rest of this year, will discuss ______ following proposals: (1) to build ______ new sewage disposal plant and (2) to create ______ new park. In ______ present proposal, ______ new park would have ______ swimming pool.
- 14. The large oak tree growing at _____ southeast corner of Vine Avenue and Pine Street has been _____ landmark since pioneer days. Unfortunately, it was shattered by _____ bolt of lightning during the thunderstorm last night.

- 15. My uncle's hobby is restoring _____ old cars. Right now he's working on _____ 1922 automobile. It's _____ antique car and has great value.
- 16. My aunt's new car has _____ power windows, _____ cassette player, and _____ multiadjustable driver's seat.
- Patty is my ten-year old daughter. She likes to play _____ jokes on people. Yesterday she put _____ frog into _____ lunchbox she saw sitting on _____ table in _____ school lunchroom.
- 18. Long-term exposure to ______ sun between 10 A.M. and 3 P.M. can be harmful. ______ person's skin will eventually become wrinkled and more susceptible to ______ cancer.
- 19. Yesterday I locked my keys in my car. Using _____ coat hanger, I tried to reach _____ lock inside _____ window next to _____ driver's seat, but I couldn't get _____ door to unlock. I thought about calling _____ police, but finally decided to call my wife. I suggested she take _____ taxi and bring her keys to open _____ car for me.
- 20. We flew to Dallas and then rented _____ car. On _____ second day we had _____ car, it wouldn't start, so the rental agency provided us with another one.
- 21. Mary is wearing _____ beautiful ring today. It is made of _____ gold and _____ rubies. _____ gold in her ring was mined in Canada. _____ rubies came from Burma.
- 22. One of the first things you need to do when you move to ______ new city is to find ______ place to live. Most ______ newspapers carry ______ advertisements (called "want ads") for ______ apartments that are for rent. If you find ______ ad for ______ furnished apartment, ______ apartment will probably contain ______ stove and ______ refrigerator. It will also probably have ______ furniture such as ______ beds, ______ tables, chairs, and maybe ______ sofa.
- 23. My wife and I have recently moved to this city. Since we're going to be here for only _______ short time, we're renting ______ furnished apartment. We decided that we didn't want to bring our own furniture with us. ______ apartment is in ______ good location, but that's about the only good thing I can say about it. Only one burner on ______ stove works. ______ refrigerator is noisy, and ______ refrigerator door won't stay closed unless we tape it shut. ______ bed sags in the middle and creaks. All of the rest of ______ furniture is old and decrepit too. Nevertheless, we're still enjoying living in this city. We may have to look for ______ another apartment, however.
- 24. This sentence is _____ last sentence in this exercise. This is _____ end of the exercise.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Expressions of quantity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with *much* or *many*. Give the plural forms of the nouns as necessary. Choose the correct singular or plural verb as necessary.

- 1. How <u>many</u> watch <u>es</u> does the average person own?
- 2. How ______ jewelry _____ do you usually wear?
- 3. How <u>many</u> tooth <u>teeth</u> do babies usually have when they're born?
- 4. How <u>much</u> bread $\underline{\mathscr{A}}$ is $\forall are$ there in the bread drawer?
- 5. I don't know ______ American slang ______.
- 6. Tending young children takes too _____ patience _____ for me. I'm better at spending time with young adults.
- 7. How ______ video _____ do you usually rent during a month?
- 8. My hair is all frizzy today. There is \ are _____ humidity _____ in the air.
- 9. The lawyers interviewed ______ witness ______ to the crime.
- 10. I haven't done ______ traveling ______ in the last few years.
- 11. We visited ______ village ______ on our trek that were without running water.
- 12. They didn't have ______ fun _____ when they were children because they were forced to work from sunup to sundown.
- 13. Pedro hasn't made ______ progress ______ in improving his English because he speaks Spanish with his friends all day long.
- 14. Our cat is old and lazy. He doesn't catch _____ mouse _____ .
- 15. There *isn't* \ *aren't* ______ news ______ in the paper this morning about the hurricane in Costa Rica.
- 16. Captain Cook had ______ adventure _____ during his sailing trips.
- 17. There was \ were so ______ smog _____ in Los Angeles yesterday that you couldn't see any of the hills or mountains from the city.
- 18. I didn't know ______ grammar _____ before taking this course. I'm not familiar with ______ grammar textbook _____.
- 20. There *isn't* \ *aren't* ______ information ______ of ______ importance in some daily newspapers.

 21. How _______ active volcano ______ is \ are there in the world today?

 22. Politicians give ______ speech ______ during their careers.

◇ PRACTICE 11. Using a few/few; a little/little. (Chart 7-10)

Directions: Without substantially changing the meaning of the sentences, replace the *italicized* words with *a few*, (very) few, a little, or (very) little.

a little

1. I think that some lemon juice in a salad makes it taste better.

(very) few

- 2. Many people have graduate degrees, but not many people have more than two graduate degrees.
- 3. You might reach your goal if you put forth some more effort.
- 4. Even though the mountain is very steep and the climb is hazardous, *several* strong-willed people have managed to reach the top.
- 5. The number of people in the world who are willing to risk their lives climbing a dangerous mountain is small. *Not very many* people will actually face death to climb a mountain.
- 6. The professor lectured very clearly. As a result *not many* students had questions at the end of the class period.
- 7. I have to go to the post office because I have some letters to mail.
- 8. Every day Max goes to his mailbox, but it is usually empty. He gets not much mail.
- 9. My friend arrived in the United States several months ago.
- 10. I think you could use some help. Let me give you some advice.
- 11. Not many days ago I met a very interesting person.
- 12. Margaret likes sweet tea. She usually adds *some* honey to her tea. Sometimes she adds *some* milk, too.
- 13. Has anyone ever called you on the phone and tried to sell you something you didn't want?I have not much patience with people who interrupt my dinner to try to sell me a magazine.
- 14. He's a lucky little boy. Because his parents have taken good care of him, he has had not many problems in his young life.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Using of in expressions of quantity. (Charts 7-11 and 7-12) Directions: Add of or write Ø in the blanks.

- 1. When I went shopping yesterday, there were several $\cancel{\emptyset}$ jackets in my size.
- 2. Several \underline{of} the jackets were made of 100 percent wool.
- 3. Many ______ students work part-time while they are attending school.

- 4. Many _____ my classmates have part-time jobs.
- 5. Some _____ dairy products are high in cholesterol.
- 6. Some _____ my favorite kinds of food are not good for me to eat.
- 7. The teacher didn't fail any _____ the students in his class.
- 8. Any _____ passengers who have first-class tickets can board the plane first.
- 9. I picked a few _____ flowers from my garden and made a bouquet.
- 10. A few _____ the flowers in the bouquet have already wilted.
- 11. Everyone needs a little _____ luck in life.
- 12. Most _____ babies learn to walk before their first birthday.
- Our company imports products from abroad. Most _____ these new products are testmarketed in selected cities.
- 14. Most _____ people enjoy picnics.
- 15. Some _____ the people we want to invite for our anniversary dinner will be on vacation.
- 16. Not all _____ trees lose their leaves in winter.
- 17. All _____ deciduous trees lose their leaves during the cold part of the year, whereas evergreen trees do not.
- 18. All ______ the trees in that orchard have been sprayed with pesticides.
- 19. Both _____ my sisters attended Harvard University.
- 20. Both _____ women are talented in music and drama.
- The concert was delayed because two _____ the musicians had left their instruments on the bus.
- 22. A trio consists of three _____ musicians.
- 23. I have two _____ sisters and three _____ brothers.
- 24. Two _____ my brothers live in St. Louis.
- 25. A hundred _____ people bought tickets to the lecture.
- 26. Two hundred _____ people came to the public meeting.
- 27. Hundreds _____ people visit the Lincoln Memorial every day.
- 28. A thousand _____ years ago, the power of electricity had not been discovered.

SALISTORIA

- 29. Three thousand ______ years ago, the number of planets in our solar system was unknown.
- 30. Thousands _____ years ago, the wheel was invented.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Using one, each, every. (Chart 7-13)

Directions: Choose the correct word in italics.

- 1. Each student, students in the class is required to take the final examination.
- 2. Each of the student, students in the class is required to take the final examination.
- 3. Every one of the room, rooms in our apartment has at least one window.
- 4. There is at least one window in every room, rooms in our apartment.
- 5. My bedroom has only one, very small window, windows.
- 6. One of the smallest window, windows in our apartment is in my bedroom.
- 7. When John bought some supplies at the hardware store, he thought the total amount on the bill was incorrect, so he checked each *item, items* on his bill very carefully.
- 8. Each of the *item, items* on the bill was correct.
- 9. Alex took an extended vacation in northern Europe last summer. Sweden was one of the *country, countries* he visited when he was in Scandinavia.
- 10. Susan has traveled widely, but she has visited only one Scandinavian country, countries.
- 11. Tom believes that there are no strangers. He views each *person*, *people* in the world as a friend he hasn't met yet.
- 12. I answered every question, questions on the examination. I didn't skip any.
- 13. Each one of the *child*, *children* in the class was given a piece of paper and a crayon. Each *child*, *children* drew a picture.
- 14. Hunger is one of the biggest problem, problems in the world today.
- 15. Each of the *applicant, applicants* for the scholarship is required to furnish five references (that is, names of people who are willing to write letters of recommendation).



O PRACTICE 1. Personal pronouns. (Chart 8-1)

Directions: Choose the correct pronoun in italics.

- 1. Please take these papers and give *it*, them to Mike.
- 2. Tom asked Ann and I, me about the new theater.
- 3. Janice and I, me live in an apartment.
- 4. Just between you and I, me, I think Tom is going to lose him, his job.
- 5. When a player committed a foul, the referee blew him, his whistle and pointed at she, her.
- 6. A boa constrictor, which is a very large snake, kills its, it's victims by strangling it, them.
- 7. People can easily send a letter to another city. *It*, *They* simply have to drop *it*, *them* into a collection box.
- 8. The teacher said to the students, "Throughout the semester, please write your, yours compositions on every other line, and be sure to write *it*, *them* in ink."
- 9. Both Ron and I, me are expecting some mail. Are those letters for he, him or I, me?
- 10. My, Mine roommate and I, me have to share a bookshelf. She, Her keeps her, hers books on the top two shelves, and I keep my, mine on the bottom two shelves.
- 11. A monkey spends most of its, it's time in trees.
- 12. I studied English when I was in high school. But I haven't studied *it, them* since I graduated from high school ten years ago, so I've forgotten a lot of *it, them*.
- 13. I looked everywhere in my room for my keys, but I couldn't find it, them.
- After work, Mr. Gray asked to speak to Tim and I, me about the company's new policies. He explained it, them to we, us and asked for our, ours opinions.
- 15. The first person I saw when I got off the plane was my sister. My father and she, her had come to the airport to greet *I*, me. My father was waiting for we, us in his, him car outside the airport.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Pronoun agreement. (Charts 8-2 and 8-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with pronouns. In some of the blanks there is more than one possibility. Choose the appropriate singular or plural verb in parentheses where necessary.

- 1. A student should always hand in <u>his/her; his or her; his; her</u> work on time.
- 2. Students should always hand in <u>their</u> work on time.
- 3. Teachers determine ______ students' course of study.
- 4. A teacher determines ______ students' course of study.
- 5. Each student is expected to hand in _____ work on time.
- 6. All students are expected to hand in _____ work on time.
- 7. If someone calls, please ask ______ to leave a message.
- 8. Somebody left ______ raincoat in the classroom.
- 9. The flight crew on our long plane trip were very attentive. ______ efforts to make us comfortable were greatly appreciated.
- 10. My family is wonderful. ______ (has, have) always helped me in any way ______ could.
- 11. The crowd enjoyed the game. ______ got excited whenever the home team scored.
- 12. The crowd at the last concert broke attendance records. _____ (was, were) the largest audience ever to have been in that stadium to listen to a rock concert.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 8-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using appropriate reflexive pronouns.

- 1. John overslept and missed his plane to San Francisco. He was angry at <u>himself</u> for not checking his alarm clock before going to bed.
- 2. I was a stranger at the party. I stood alone for a while, then walked over to an interesting-looking person and introduced _______.
- 3. Jason has only ______ to blame for the mistake he made.
- 4. Sue, please help ______ to some more cake. And would you like some more coffee?
- All of you who are successful Olympic athletes should be very proud of ______.
 Your achievements inspire people all over the world.
- 6. The math team from our high school won the state competition. They should pat ______ on the back for a job well done.

- When I was younger, I would get embarrassed by my mistakes. Now I am more relaxed and have found it is easier to laugh at ______.
- 8. Children need to learn to rely upon _____.
- My father always told me to handle my problems ______ and not to expect others to solve them for me.
- The little girl lost her teddy bear in the park. She tried to be brave, but at bedtime she cried
 _______ to sleep.
- Edward lived a lonely life as a young boy. With no one to play with, he would often sit on the front steps talking to ______ or to an imaginary friend.
- 12. What delicious cheesecake, Amelia! Did you make this _____?
- Whenever we have problems in life, we have to be careful not to waste too much time feeling sorry for ______.
- 14. After a busy day at work, I always enjoy a little time by _____
- 15. Fred wanted to be able to do something unusual, so he taught
 _______ to drink a glass of water while
 standing on his head.
- 16. I can't help you, Bob. You'll have to solve your problem by
- Jane did not join the rest of us. She sat in the back of the room
- You may think Stan is telling the truth, but I
 _____ don't believe him.
- 19. It is important for all of us to be honest with
- 20. Now that their children are grown, Mr. and Mrs. Grayson live by _____
- 21. You ______ have to make a decision, Ann. No one can make it for you.
- 22. I don't know what to tell you, Sue and Jack. You will have to take care of that problem
- 23. When everybody else forgot his birthday, Ralph decided to give ______ a birthday present. He bought a new shirt for ______.

\bigcirc PRACTICE 4. Pronoun agreement. (Charts 8-1 \rightarrow 8-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate pronouns. Choose the correct words in *italics* as necessary.

- 1. We should ask <u>ourselves</u> if <u>we are</u> (is, are) doing everything in <u>our</u> power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.
- 2. Each of you should ask ______ if _____ (is, are) doing everything in ______ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.
- 3. All of you should ask ______ if _____ (*is, are*) doing everything in ______ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.
- 4. People should ask ______ if _____ (*is, are*) doing everything in ______ (*is, are*) doing everything in ______
- 5. One should ask ______ if _____ (*is, are*) doing everything in ______ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.
- 6. Everyone should ask ______ if _____ (is, are) doing everything in _____ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Forms of other. (Chart 8-7)

Directions: Use a form of other to complete the sentences.

- 1. I had a red pen, but I seem to have lost it. I guess I'd better buy <u>another</u> one.
- 2. Some people are lazy. ______ are energetic. Most people are a mixture of both.
- 3. Two countries share the island of Hispañola. One is Haiti. ______ is the Dominican Republic.
- 4. Excuse me, waiter? Could you please bring me ______ fork? I dropped mine on the floor.
- Washington is one of the five states of the United States with borders on the Pacific Ocean.
 What are ______ states?*
- A successful harvest depends largely on the weather. In some years, there is an abundant harvest. In ______ years, the harvest is lean, especially when there is a drought.

^{*}Look in the Answer Key for the answer to this question.

- 8. I enjoyed watching everyone at the beach. Some people were playing volleyball, while
 ______ were picnicking. Some were listening to music, some were sleeping,
 and ______ were just lying in the sun. ______ people were
 swimming in the surf.
- 9. I'll be finished with this report soon. Give me ______ twenty minutes and I'll be ready to go with you.
- 10. Ali has been here studying for almost three years. In ______ six months he will have his degree and return to his country.
- Only three of the forty-two applicants for the job possess the necessary qualifications. None
 of ______ will be considered.
- 12. I work for Mr. Anderson every ______ Saturday. I help him with chores around his house.
- Scandinavia consists of four countries. One is Denmark. ______ are Finland, Norway, and Sweden.
- 14. Budapest, Hungary, is actually two cities. On one side of the Danube River lies Buda, and directly across from it, on ______ side of the river, lies Pest.
- 15. Most of the candidates who will take the qualifying examination in May will probably pass the first time. ______ will have ______ chance next month.
- 16. Some people like to take vacations in the mountains. ______ prefer the seashore. Some people like to drive from place to place; ______ people prefer to get to their destinations as quickly as possible. Although many people like to travel on their vacations, many ______ prefer to just stay at home.
- 17. The Wolcott twins are identical. In ______ words, they look alike. But they also think alike. Sometimes when one begins a sentence, ______ one finishes it.
- 18. One of the most important inventions in the history of the world was the printing press.
 ______ was the electric light. ______ were the telephone, the television, and the computer.
- 19. To avoid competitive disadvantages, professional boxers are classified by weight groups.
 There are over a dozen different weight classes. One is called the flyweight group.
 _______ are the featherweight, middleweight, and heavyweight groups.
- 20. The committee meets every _____ Monday.
- 21. Joe and Frank, detectives in the police department, work as a team. They work well with each ______.

- 22. The car I bought last year has turned out to be a real lemon! I'll never buy ______ one of the same make.
- 23. My report is due today, but I need ______ two days to finish it.
- 24. Some babies begin talking as early as six months; ______ don't speak until they are more than two years old.

\diamond PRACTICE 6. Nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 6 \rightarrow 8)

Directions: Correct the mistakes.

Potatoes

Potato are grown in most country. They are one of the most widely grown vegetable in the world. They are very versatile; they can be prepared in many different way. French fry are popular almost everywhere. Besides frying it, potato can be baked or boiled. The other way people use potatoes is to make potato flour for making bread and another kinds of dishes. Its also possible to make alcoholic beverages from potato. There are still others ways potatoes are used by commerical food processor to make product such as potato chip and freeze-dried potato.

Potato originated in South America, where it were cultivated by the Incas as early as 5000 year ago. It is believed that potatoes were the worlds first freeze-dried food. Over 4000 years ago the Incas carried his harvested potato up into the mountains and spread them on the ground to freeze overnight. After the sun came up and heated the potatoes the next day, the Incas squeezed the water out of the potatoes by stepping on it. This process were repeated for four or five day until almost all the moisture was gone from the potatoes. The Incas then dried the potatoes and stored it in pot. Some Indians of South America still does this today.

\diamond PRACTICE 7. Test A: Nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 6 \rightarrow 8)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

<i>Example:</i> I don't get <u>B</u> . A. many mail B. much mail	C. many mails D. much mails
 The science classes at this difficult A. schools are B. school is 	C. school are D. school's is
 One of the from Italy. A. student is B. students are 	C. student are D. students is
 3 to support the case against James? A. Is there any proof B. Are there any proof 	C. Is there any proofs D. Are there any proofs
4. You have to pay extra if you take tooA. much luggages B. many luggages	-
5 in your class have tickets for the le	
A. Do any of the student	C. Do any of the students
B. Does any of the student	D. Does any of the students
6. Bob got fired. It's going to be difficult for l	
A. other B. another	C. the other D. the another
7. There available in his area of spec	ialization.
A. isn't a lot of job	C. isn't a lot of jobs
B. aren't a lot of jobs	D. aren't a lot of job
8. He made the soup by mixing mea	t with some rice.
A. little B. few	C. a little D. a few
9. Many of the not expect to win.	
A. participants in the race do	C. participants in the race does
B. participant in the races does	D. participant in the race does
10. The English strong traditions.	
A. has many B. have much	C. have many D. has much
11 moved to that city recently. A. A number of Vietnamese have	C. The number of Vietnamese has
B. A number of Vietnamese have	D. The number of Vietnamese have
12. Each of the reference available in	
A. books on that list is	C. book on that list is
B. books on that list are	D. book on that list are
	D. Oook on that he ure
 Several sleeping under the tree. A. of lions were B. lion was 	

14. Many of the	not used today. They	are remnants of the pa	ast.
A, railroad tracks around here are		C. railroad tracks ar	ound here is
B. railroad's tracks	around here is	D. railroads' tracks a	around here are
15. As we walked through	the jungle, the	unusually quiet.	
A. monkeys were	B. monkeys was	C. monkies were	D. monkies was
16. At the news conferen	ce, several reporters di	idn't get clear answers	to questions.
A. theirs	B. their	C. his and hers	D. his and her
17. I have a siste	:г.		
A. seven years old	B. seven-years-old	C. seven-year-old	D. seven years olds
18. There in the	world today.		
A. is many new computer company		C. are many new co	mputers companies
B. is many new con	mputer companies	D. are many new co	mputer companies
19. Self-esteem is import	ant. It's important for	people to like	
A. oneself	B. yourself	C. him/herself	D. themselves
20. What you us	ed in picking a winner	r in the art contest?	
A. is the criteria	B. are the criteria	C. are the criterion	D. are the criterions

66 CHAPTER 8



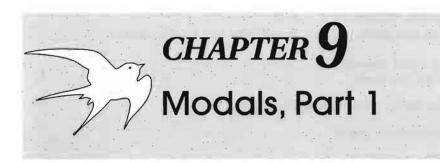
◇ PRACTICE 8. Test B: Nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 6 -> 8) Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Exc	ample: I don't get <u>B</u> A. many mail		C. many mails	D. much mails
1.	One of the dinner A. plate is	B. plates are	C. plates is	D. plate are
2.	Most hard. A. of students work	B. students work	C. student works	D. of student works
3.	Can you help me? I n A. a little	eed informat B. little	ion. C. a few	D. few
4.	All of the athletes who A. himself	took part in the intern B. oneself	-	be very proud of D. yourselves
5.	Snow and rain A. are phenomenon		C. is phenomena	D. is phenomenon
6.	-		g on it. I apologized to C. children's toy	them for my carelessness. D. childrens' toys
7.	Our weather is cloudy A. many sunshines		n't have C. much sunshines	D. much sunshine
8.	Several of my friends a A. newspaper	-	C. newspaper's	D. newspapers'
9.	Construction workers A. an heavy equipm B. a heavy equipme	ent	l a highway. C. heavy equipments D. heavy equipment	3
10.	Our classroom is supp A. plenty of chalks		C. several chalks	D. several chalk
11.	Knowing several A. languages are	helpful if you worl B. language is	k for an international c C. languages is	corporation. D. language are
12.	Two-thirds of my A. classmates is	from the Middle B. classmate are	East. C. classmate is	D. classmates are
13.	There in my A. are a lot of probl B. are a lot of probl	em	C. is a lot of problen D. is a lot of problen	
14.	Winning a lottery is a A. A number of win B. The number of v	iners is	 very small.C. A number of winnD. The number of w	

15. There are several means of mass communication. The newspaper is one. Television is

A. other	B. the other	C. another	D. the another
16. Each of the of	own cage.		
A. birds has their	B. bird has its	C. birds have their	D. birds has its
17. I really need	Can we talk?		
A. some advice	B. an advice	C. some advices	D. advices
18. Every a licen	se plate.		
A. cars have	B. cars has	C. car has	D. car have
19. The swimming team	has done well this year.	All of have	trained very hard.
A. their members	B. its members	C. it's members	D. theirs members
20. Next week, we're goir	ig to take a		
A. three day trips		C. three days trip	D. three days' trip





\diamond PRACTICE 1. Verb forms with modal auxiliaries. (Chart 9-1)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1.	Mary can to a A. comes	the meeting. B. to come	C. come
2.	Jack should h A. studies		C. study
3.	The whole team must		2018 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 - 2019 -
	A. worked	B. to work	C. work
4.			er and Marcia. They may be busy.
	A. called	B. to call	C. call
5.	Paul can Chi		he studied it for six years.
	A. speaks	B. to speak	C. speak
6.	May I you?		
	A. can help	B. to help	C. help
7.		might the bi	ridge in time for the holiday traffic.
	A. finished	B. to finish	C. finish
8.			e go out. It looks like it's going to rain.
	A. taken	B. to take	C. take
9.			't take any money with me.
	A. bought	B. to buy	C. buy
10.			hen you gave them their gifts.
	A. has said	B. to have said	C. have said
11.	Tom could u		
	A. had asked	B. to have asked	C. have asked
12.		Recent All and All	it with her when she went out.
	A. has taken	B. to have taken	C. have taken

\diamond PRACTICE 2. Making polite requests. (Charts 9-2 \rightarrow 9-4)

Directions: Change the sentences into polite requests using the words in parentheses.

- I want you to hand me that book. (would)
 → Would you (please) hand me that book?
- 2. I want you to give me some advice about buying a computer. (could)
- 3. I want to borrow your wheelbarrow. (could)
- 4. I want to have a cup of coffee. (may)
- 5. I want to use your bicycle tomorrow. (can)
- 6. I want you to read over my composition for spelling errors. (would)
- 7. I want you to open the door for me. (would you mind)
- 8. I want to leave early. (would you mind)

◇ PRACTICE 3. Using would you mind. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Using the verb in parentheses, fill in the blank either with if I + PAST tense or with the -*ing* form of the verb, as appropriate.

- 1. A: It's cold in here. Would you mind (close) ______ closing____ the window?
 - B: Not at all. I'd be glad to.
- 2. A: It's cold in here. Would you mind (close) <u>if I closed</u> the window?
 - B: Not at all. Go right ahead. I think it's cold in here, too.
- 3. A: Would you mind (take) ______ the book back to the library for me?B: Not at all.
- 4. A: This story you wrote is really good. Would you mind *(show)* ______ it to my English teacher?
 - B: Go right ahead. That'd be fine.
- 5. A: I'll wash the dishes. Would you mind (*dry*) ______ them? That would help me a lot.
 - B: I'd be happy to.
- 6. A: I'm feeling kind of tired and worn out. This heavy work in the hot sun is hard on me. Would you mind (*finish*) ______ the work yourself?
 - B: No problem, Grandpa. Why don't you go in and rest? I'll finish it up.
- 7. A: Would you mind *(use)* ______ your name as a reference on this job application?
 - B: Not at all. In fact, ask them to call me.

8. A: Would you mind *(wait)* ______ here for just a minute? I need to run back to the classroom. I forgot my notebook.

B: Sure. Go ahead. I'll wait right here.

9. A: I need to look up the meaning of the word "stationery." Would you mind (borrow)

B: No, I don't mind. I'm not using it right now.

10. A: Since this is the first time you've owned a computer, would you mind (give)

_____ you some advice?

B: Not at all. I'd appreciate it.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Must (not) and (do not) have to. (Charts 9-5 and 9-6)

Directions: Choose the correct completion according to the meaning.

- 1. Soldiers <u>B</u> disobey a superior officer. A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to 2. To stay alive, people _____ breathe oxygen. B. must not A. must/have to C. don't have to 3. You ______ finish your work on this project before you go on vacation. You'll probably lose your job if you don't. A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to 4. If you have an aquarium, you ______ give your tropical fish too much food or they'll die. B. must not C. don't have to A. must/have to 5. To be a successful mountain climber, you _____ have a great deal of stamina.
 - A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to
- 6. Thank goodness we _____ eat fish again tonight. Dad didn't catch any today. A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to
- 7. You _____ exert yourself. You're still not fully recovered from your surgery. A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to
- 8. My room is a mess, but I _____ clean it before I go out tonight. I can do it in the morning.

A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to

9. We really _____ help Marge move to her new apartment over the weekend. Not only is it too difficult for one person, but she still has her arm in a sling from her shoulder sprain a week ago.

A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to

10. Bill is in the darkroom developing the negatives of the photos he took on his last trip to Peru. You ______ open the door while he's there because the light will ruin the pictures. A. must/have to B. must not C. don't have to

◇ PRACTICE 5. Verb form review: have to. (Charts 9-5 and 9-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate form of *have to*. Include any words in parentheses.

- 1. A: (you) <u>Do you have to</u> leave so early?
 - B: I'm afraid I do. I have some work I <u>have to</u> finish before I go to bed tonight.
- 2. Last night Jack <u>had to</u> go to a meeting. (you) <u>Did you have to</u> go to the meeting last night too?
- 3. Joan travels to the Soviet Union frequently. Luckily, she speaks Russian, so she (not)
 - _____ rely on an interpreter when she's there.
- 4. I (not) ______ water the garden later today. Joe has agreed to do it for me.
- 5. I ______ write three term papers since the beginning of the semester.
- 6. Why (Tom) _____ leave work early yesterday?
- 7. I found some milk in the refrigerator, so we *(not)* ______ go to the store after all. There is plenty.
- 8. (John) _____ buy a round-trip ticket when he went to Egypt?
- 9. Matt is nearsighted. He _____ wear glasses ever since he was ten years old.
- 10. By the time this week is finished, I ______ take eight examinations in five days. The life of a student isn't easy!
- 11. (you, not) ______ return these books to the library today? Aren't they due?
- 12. If Jean stays in Brazil much longer, she ______ teach English part-time so that she'll have enough money to support herself. (she) ______ apply for a special work visa? Or can she work part-time on a student visa?
- 13. Because it was Emily's birthday yesterday, she *(not)* ______ do any of her regular chores, and her mother let her choose anything she wanted to eat for dinner.
- 14. When I arrived in Rome last week, I was looking forward to practicing my Italian. I'm disappointed because I (not) ______ speak Italian very much since I got here. Everyone keeps talking to me in English.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Should, ought to, had better. (Charts 9-7 and 9-8)

Directions: Give advice to the people in the following situations. Use *should*, *ought to*, or *had better*. Choose from the suggested completions in the list, or use your own words.

call home and talk to his family
change clothes before he goes
clean it up right away
find a chemistry major to tutor her
get his roommate a pair of earphones
vjoin some clubs to meet people with similar interests
listen to Tom before he fired him
make her own decisions about her career and go to architecture school
not eat so much
not leave the room; apologize immediately; signal to a waiter for help
stop for gas
take it back sooner

- 1. Ann would like to make some new friends. \rightarrow I think she should/ought to join some clubs to meet people with similar interests.
- 2. Ellen is having a lot of trouble in her chemistry class. She's failed the last two tests.
- 3. You didn't stop for gas, and then you ran out of gas on the highway.
- 4. Sam and Tim, both teenagers, have messed up the house, and their parents are coming home soon.
- 5. You had to pay a fine because your library book was overdue.
- 6. Ron is wearing jeans. He's expected at a formal reception this evening.
- 7. Mary's parents expect her to work in the family business, a shoe store, but she wants to be an architect.
- 8. Richard's roommate stays up very late studying. While his roommate is studying, he listens to loud music, and Richard can't get to sleep.
- 9. Pierre is feeling really homesick these days.
- 10. You have a stomach ache because you ate too much.
- 11. Tom didn't show up for work yesterday because he and his friend were in an auto accident. Tom was okay, but his friend was badly hurt, so Tom had to stay with him at the hospital. Tom didn't call his boss to tell him he wouldn't be at work. When Tom arrived at work today, his boss fired him immediately, refusing to listen to any of Tom's explanations for missing work.

12. A man was having dinner in a restaurant with a co-worker. When he got up, he accidentally bumped the table, spilling a plate of food onto the woman's lap. He looked at her in horror and left the room.



♦ PRACTICE 7. Be supposed to. (Chart 9-9)

Directions: Correct any errors in the use of be supposed to.

- 1. The students are suppose to write a composition.
- 2. They supposed write it about a person they admire.
- 3. They're supposing to write it in ink.
- 4. They don't supposed to write it in pencil.
- 5. When are they suppose to hand it in?

◇ PRACTICE 8. Be supposed to. (Chart 9-9)

Directions: Restate the following rules in sentences with be supposed to.

- 1. NO SMOKING \rightarrow You are not supposed to smoke.
- 2. KEEP OFF THE GRASS.
- 3. NO EATING OR DRINKING IN THIS ROOM.
- 4. MOVE TO THE REAR OF THE BUS.
- 5. DO NOT JOKE WITH AIRPORT PERSONNEL WHILE YOUR HAND LUGGAGE IS BEING INSPECTED.
- 6. USE THE STAIRS IN CASE OF FIRE. DO NOT USE THE ELEVATOR.
- 7. NO LITTERING.
- 8. SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Let's, why don't, shall I/we. (Chart 9-10)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with appropriate pronouns. If nothing is needed in the blank, write \emptyset .

1. A: We'll never find an apartment we can afford in the middle of the city. Why don't

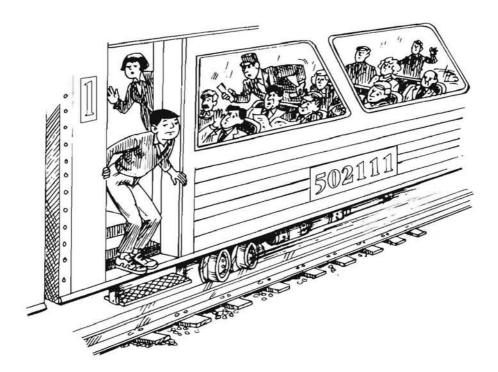
we look for one in the suburbs. It's farther, but the apartments are probably less expensive.

- B: Okay. I'll drive. Let's $\cancel{\phi}$ drive to the suburbs right now.
- A: Why don't <u>we</u> look in the newspaper first? We should look in the classified ads for that area. Do you have this morning's paper?
- B: No. Shall _____ go get one?
- A: Good idea. I'll come with you.
- 2. A: I'm worried about Barbara. She's never this late.
 - B: Let's not _____ worry. She's probably just held up in traffic.
 - A: Why don't _____ call her parents? At least then we'll know if she left home on time.
 - B: Okay, if it will make you feel better, but why don't _____ just try not to get upset?I'm sure she's okay.
- 3. A: This pasta is delicious! Why don't _____ try some?
 - B: No, thank you. I'm full. Let's _____ ask for the check.
 - A: What? No dessert? This place is famous for its pies. Why don't _____ stay and have some dessert?
 - B: I couldn't eat another bite, but I'll wait for you. Shall _____ get the waiter for you?
 - A: Yes, please, when you see him. Thanks. You sure you don't want any dessert?
- 4. A: I think it's time for us to fix up the apartment.
 - B: Okay. Why don't _____ do something to the living room?
 - A: That's a good idea. Shall _____ paint the walls?
 - B: Sure. Sounds great.
 - A: Okay. I'll go to the paint store. Shall _____ get the same color that's on there now, or a different one?
 - B: Something different.
 - A: Why don't _____ get an off-white?
 - B: No. How about a light yellow?
 - A: Okay. And while I'm gone, why don't _____ cover the furniture and floor so we won't drip paint on anything.
 - B: Well, I'd really like to help, but I have to get back to work.
 - A: What?!

- PRACTICE 10. Using could and should to make suggestions. (Chart 9-11) Directions: For each of these situations, give three suggestions with could. Then give definite advice with should.

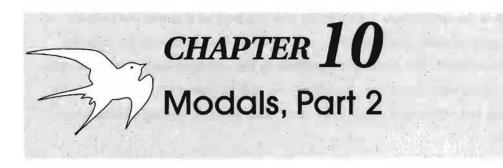
 - 2. Bruce has helped his mother onto the train and escorted her to a seat. While he is saying goodbye, the train begins pulling away from the station. By the time he gets through the crowded aisles to the exit, the train is traveling fast. Now what?





4. You were driving in the countryside late at night, and you noticed that you were almost out of gas. You managed to make it to a small town nearby but discovered that the only gas station in town was closed. You decided to hitchhike to the next town and look for an open station, but the person who picked you up robbed you and left you stranded on a country road. Hitchhiking was a bad idea. What were some other possible courses of action you could have taken?

I could			
I could	 	 	
l should			



Dir	E 1. Degrees of certainty: <i>I</i> rections: Which of the two comp mpletion.		could. (Chart 10-1) t likely to say? Choose the best
	"Look at all the children waiti "It be after 3:00. Th A. must		is it?"
2.	"George says that we're going "He be right. I think on all sides of that issue." A. must		on rate next year." body's. I've heard strong opinions
3.	"Have you heard anything fro "He be, or he A. must must		
4.	"Is that a famous person over "It be. Everyone's tr A. must		
5.	"Isn't Peter Reeves a banker?" "Yes. Why don't you talk to h A. must		o help you with your loan."
6.	"Isn't Margaret's daughter ov "She be. I saw her d license." A. must		to be at least sixteen to get a driver's
7.		possibility of world peace i	s greater now than ever before?" n be fragile."
8.	"The speedometer on my car "Do you think you're driving "I don't know. I"	over the speed limit?"	
	A. must be	B. might be	C. am
9.	"You've been on the go all da "Yes, I I can't reme		this worn out."
	A. must be	B. may be	C. am

10.	"Have you seen the new		-	
	"No, but it sad A. must be	d. Many people leaving B. might be	the theater seem to hat C. is	ve been crying."
1 1	"Denne here the	<u> </u>		
11.	"Do you hear that sque "I don't know. It	a mouse. Isn't that	what a mouse sounds l	ike?"
	A. must be	B. may be	C. is	
12.	"How old do you think "I just looked at his dri	Roger is?" ver's license. He	33."	
	A. must be	B. might be	C. is	
Di no	E 2. Forms of modals <i>rections:</i> Complete the se <i>t</i> if necessary for a sente A: Where's Ann?	ntences with the approp		s in parentheses. Add
1.	B: I don't know. She ((could + arisit)		her sunt and
		ne usually visits them ev		
2.	You (should + watch) _		the movie	on TV tonight. I
	highly recommend it.	It's a classic.		
3.	I heard a loud crash in	the next room. When I	walked in, I found a b	rick on the floor, and
	the window was broken through the window.	n. Someone (must + thr	row)	the brick
4.	Jack is in the employee	lounge drinking coffee.	He (should + work)	
		on his report right		
5.	Do you hear the guitar i	music? Carla (must + pl	ay)	her guitar.
6.	A: I need to see Tom.	Where is he?		
	B: In his room. Knocl	k on his door softly. He	: (might + take)	
		a nap.		
7.	Michael wanted to go t	to the opera, but he put	off buying a ticket, and	now they're all sold.
	He (should + buy)		his ticket wee	eks ago. He
	(should + wait)		until now to try	to get a ticket.
8.	Bob was stopped by a j	police officer last night.	He (must + drive)	
		too fast when	she clocked him on he	r radar. She gave him
	a speeding ticket.			
9.	The staff (must + plan)		very wel	l for the luncheon.
	There are still about te	n people waiting to eat,	and there's not enough	n food left.

10. A: Where's your bicycle?

- B: I don't know. One of my friends (may + borrow) ______ it. Gee, I hope it wasn't stolen. Maybe Sally borrowed it.
- A: Sally? She (could + borrow) ______ it. She has a broken leg. Why would she want to borrow your bicycle?
- 11. George didn't do very well on the test because he didn't understand what he was supposed to do. He (could + listen) ______ very carefully when the teacher gave the directions.
- 12. A: Joan was really upset when she found out that someone had told Alan about the surprise birthday party she gave him last night. She thinks Joe told him.
 - B: Joe (could + tell) ______ him about it. He was out of town until just before the party. He barely got there in time from the airport.
- 13. A: Art has two full-time jobs this summer to make some money for school in the fall. He(must + have) ______ very much time to rest and do other things.
 - B: That might explain why no one answered the door when I stopped by his house a little while ago. He (must + sleep) ______.
- 14. A: Kathy just bought a new car, and now she's looking for a new apartment.
 - B: She (must + make) ______ a lot of money in her new job.

\diamond PRACTICE 3. Making conclusions: *must* and *must not*. (Charts 10-1 \rightarrow 10-5)

Directions: Make logical conclusions about these situations. Use *must* or *must not* for your "best guess."

- 1. The Adams' house is dark and quiet. Their car isn't in the driveway. → They must not be at home.
- We had a test in class yesterday. Charles, who rarely studies and usually fails the tests, got a score of 95% this time:
 → He must have studied for the test.
- 3. The man sitting behind us has been talking throughout the movie. He knows what's going to happen before it happens.
- 4. Anita is in bed. The lights are out, and I can hear someone snoring.
- 5. Mrs. Jenkins has lost some of her hearing. Yesterday the children asked her several times for some cookies, but she didn't answer.
- 6. Jeremy's car radio is always set on the classical music station. He also keeps a supply of classical music tapes in the car.
- 7. When Jeremy's wife is in the car with him, she always asks him to change the station or the tape.
- 8. Diane never seems to have enough money. I tried to call her last night and got a recording telling me that her phone had been disconnected.

- 9. Four people had dinner together. Two of them ate wild mushrooms, and two of them didn't. The two who ate the mushrooms are now critically ill.
- 10. I heard a loud crash in the next room. I rushed in immediately and found our antique vase on the floor. It was broken. Five-year-old Bobby was playing quietly with his toy truck. The cat was leaping frantically from table to table. The window was open, and the breeze was blowing gently through the room. I wondered what had happened to the antique vase.



◇ PRACTICE 4. Ability: can and could. (Chart 10-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with can, can't, could, or couldn't.

- 1. Fish ______ talk.
- 2. I used to be a good swimmer. I ______ swim long distances when I was a teenager.
- 3. Why ______ all the nations of the world just get along in peace? Why are there always wars somewhere on the earth?
- 4. When I was younger, I ______ stay up past midnight and get up at dawn feeling refreshed and ready to go. I ______ do that any longer now that I'm middle-aged.
- 5. I ______ get to sleep last night because it was too hot in my room.
- 6. An illiterate person is someone who ______ neither read nor write.
- My uncle was a wonderful craftsman. He made beautiful things out of wood. But he
 read or write because he never went to school.

- 8. I had to put together my daughter's tricycle. It came from the factory unassembled. At first
 - I _____ figure out what to do, but finally, after hours of work, I managed to

get it assembled.



♦ PRACTICE 5. Repeated action: would. (Chart 10-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences using *would* and the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

bring	drive	listen	throw
call	fall	take	wipe
√come	knock	tell	✓ yell

- 1. My father never liked to talk on the phone. Whenever it rang, he (always) would always yell, "I'm not here!" Usually, he was only joking and would come to the phone when it was for him.
- 2. I'll always remember Miss Emerson, my fifth grade teacher. Sometimes a student

_____ asleep in her class. Whenever that happened, Miss Emerson

_____ a piece of chalk at the student!

3. Until we finally had a long talk about it, my Aunt Pat (never) _______ before coming over. In fact, she (not even) _______ on the door. She would just walk right in and catch us all by surprise.

82 CHAPTER 10

- 4. I have fond childhood memories of my Uncle Joe. Whenever he came to visit, he *(always)* ______ me a little present.
- 5. When our kids were still living at home, I liked to go out to eat with my family. On every payday, I ______ the family to some restaurant for dinner.
- People acquire strange habits. For example, my Uncle Oscar, who lived with us when I was a child, (always) ______ his plate with his napkin whenever he sat down to a meal.

_____ intently and question her for every detail.

8. When I was a salesman, it seemed to me that I was in my car most of the time. I
________ to work to pick up my schedule, and then go from place to place all day, calling on small businesses.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Would rather. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the suggestions in the list or your own words.

be an environment lawyer go home	study Chinese stay home
not go out	not tell you
✓go to an opera go out with their friends stay home with their parents	

- 1. I went to a movie last night. I prefer operas to movies. I would rather <u>have gone to</u> <u>an opera</u>.
- 2. I studied French when I was in high school only because my parents wanted me to. I would rather ______.
- 4. I know you want to know, but I'd rather _____. I told Marge that I'd keep it a secret.
- 5. Sometimes teenagers would rather _____ than _____.
- 6. I would rather ______ right after dinner at the restaurant last night, but my friends insisted on going back to John's apartment to listen to some music and talk. Tonight, I'd really rather ______. I want to get a good night's sleep for the first time all week.

◇ PRACTICE 7. Test A: Modals and phrasal modals. (Chapters 9 and 10)

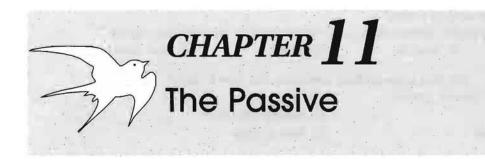
Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: Peter <u>C</u> rather sleep on a mat A. shall B. could	tress than on the floor. C. would D. must
1. Al painted his bedroom black. It looks da	rk and dreary. He a different color.
A. had to choose	C. must have chosen
B. should have chosen	D. could have been choosing
D. Should have chosen	D. Could have been choosing
 Tom is sitting at his desk. He's reading his He 	s chemistry text because he has a test tomorrow.
A. could study	C. will study
B. should be studying	D. must be studying
3. When Mr. Lee was younger, he w take frequent rests because he has emphys	work in the garden for hours, but now he has to ema.
A. has got to	C. should be able to
B. can	D. could
4. Whenever my parents went out in the ever younger brother.	
A. would get	C. must have gotten
B. should get	D. had better get
5. Yesterday I to a furniture store. I	
A. could go	C. could have gone
B. went	D. ought to have gone
Tom wasn't at the party last night. He mu come, but he didn't have a ride.	ist not a ride. I know he wanted to
A. be able to have gotten	C. have been able to get
B. to have been able to get	D. be able to get
7. Robert has a new car. He it for a the regular retail cost.	a very good price. He paid 30 percent less than
A. could buy	C. was supposed to buy
B. had to buy	D. was able to buy
8. "Did you enjoy the picnic?""It was okay, but I'd rather to a n	novie "
A. go B. be going	C. have gone D. went
9. "Why are you so sure that Ann didn't corr	umit the crime she's been accused of committing?"
"She that crime because I was wi	th her, and we were out of town that day."
A. may not have committed	C. committed
B. wasn't supposed to commit	D. couldn't have committed
10. "Since we have to be there in a hurry, we "I agree."	
A. had better	C. have been used to
B. may	D. are able to

		evening. Why don't yo May I borrow yours?"		
	A. had better		C. must	D. might
	" you hand m "Certainly."	e that pair of scissors,	please?"	
	A. May	B. Shall	C. Will	D. Should
	Larry drove all night t he arrived.	o get here for his siste	r's wedding. He	exhausted by the time
	A. ought to be		C. must have been	
	B. could be		D. will have been	
			_ be here for another ess time than we expec	three hours." cted. I hope you don't
	A. couldn't		C. had better not	
	B. might not		D. aren't supposed t	0
	" taking me d "Not at all."	owntown on your way	to work this morning	ò.,
	A. Can you		C. Would you mind	
	B. Why don't you		D. Could you please	
	"I locked myself out c "You your ro		ln't know what to do."	
	A. could have called	d	C. would have called	1
	B. may have called		D. must have called	
	"You haven't eaten an "I am."	ything since yesterday	afternoon. You	be really hungry!"
	A. might	B. will	C. can	D. must
	"How long have you b "We have been		-three years on our nex	t anniversary."
	A. must	B. should	C. will	D. could
1	"I there at 6 me a lift in your car?" "Sure. Are you ready	-	out my car won't start.	Could you please give
	A. will be	B. may be	C. supposed to be	D. have got to be
	"I don't know. One o	table, but now it's go f the children		it?"
	A. may have eaten		C. had to eat	
	B. could eat		D. should have eater	1

Exc	mple: Peter <u>C</u>	_ rather sleep on a mai	ttress than on the floo	or.	
	A. shall	B. could	C. would	D. must	
1.	"My boss is always "That bot "But it does."	looking over my shoul ther you."	der whenever I do an	ything."	
		B. might not	C. may not	D. won't	
2.	"This movie is bor "I agree	ing and too violent." leave?"			
	0	B. Why don't we	C. Must we	D. Would we	
3.		_ the fish in the refrige dn't know it was still in		,	
	A. had better pu	ıt	C. would rather p	out	
	B. had to put		D. may put		
4.		riffin do for a living?"			
	"Nothing. He's ve	ry rich. He w	ork for a living."		
	A. must not		C. doesn't have to)	
	B. shouldn't		D. hadn't better		
5.	. "Why are you so late?" "I my aunt to the airport. The traffic was terrible!"				
	A. could take	-	C. should take		
	B. must have tal	ken	D. had to take		
6.		a was offered a job at a		Chicago."	
		lerful! She ver			
	A. is supposed t	o be	C. must be		
	B. might be		D. is		
7.		me to work this weeken work on weekend	ls."		
	A. must	B. be going to	C. ought to	D. have to	
8.	"They towed my c "You have	ar away from the execu e parked there."	tive parking lot yester	day."	
	A. may not	B. should not	C. must not	D. might no	
9.		have a big birthday par next year. He			
	A. should be	B. must be	C. will be	D. has to be	
10.	"I need some help "Sure, just a secon	with this table	_ you lift the other e	nd, please?"	
	A. May	B. Should	C. Could	D. Shall	
11.	have found it in th		It's not listed in the	phone book, so y	
	"I got it from your		0	D	
	A. may not	B. won't	C. might not	D. couldn't	

12. "Is that volcano dorn	ant or active?"			
		erupt again in the	very near future."	
A. would	B. may be	C. could	D. had better	
13. "Last year I this fine print in these contracts, but now I can't.""You'd better go to the eye doctor."				
A. could read		C. should have read	1	
B. must have read		D. had to read		
14. "Is littering against th "Yes. There's a law th		throw trash on the	e streets."	
A. don't have to		C. couldn't		
B. must not		D. might not		
15. "Do you want to go t "I think I'd rather				
A. to go	B. going	C. go	D. have gone	
16. "Barbara just told me "She go! We	In the second	[[A 4 1 4] []		
A. has got to	B. has gotten to	C. have to	D. must be	
17. " letting me "Not at all."	use your bicycle for a	little while?"		
A. Please to		C. Will you		
B. Would you min	d	D. Could you pleas	e	
18. "We be here "It's too late now. We				
A. couldn't		C. might not		
B. don't have to		D. aren't supposed	to	
19. "Harry's new jacket of "He it on be	fore he bought it."	2 		
A. must have tried		C. should have tried	d	
B. was able to try		D. may have tried		
20. "Do you like to play "Yes. When I worked game."		meet a friend at	five every afternoon for a	
A. would	B. should	C. had better	D. would rather	
			Modals, Part 2 87	
		So.		



♦ PRACTICE 1. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1)

Directions: Change the active to the passive by writing the correct form of **be** in the blanks. Use the same tense for **be** in the passive sentence that is used in the active sentence.

Example: Mrs. Bell answered my question My question was answ	vered by Mrs. Bell.
1. simple present:	
Authors write books Books	_ written by authors.
2. present progressive:	
Mr. Brown is writing that book That book	_ written by Mr Brown.
3. present perfect:	
Ms. Lee has written the report The report	written by Ms Lee.
4. simple past:	
Bob wrote that letter That letter	_ written by Bob.
5. past progressive:	
A student was writing the report	written by a student.
6. past perfect: Lucy had written a memo A memo	written by Lyon
7. simple future:	_ written by Lucy.
Your teacher will write a report A report	written by your teacher
8. be going to:	
Tom is going to write a letter The letter	written by Tom.
9. future perfect:	
Alice will have written the report The report	_ written by Alice.
10. The judges have made a decision A decision	made by the judges.
11. Several people saw the accident The accident	_ seen by several people.
12. Ann is sending the letters The letters	_ sent by Ann.
13. Fred will plan the party The party	_ planned by Fred.
14. The medicine had cured my illness My illness	_ cured by the medicine.
15. The cat will have caught the mouse The mouse	caught by the cat.
16. Engineers design bridges Bridges	_ designed by engineers.
17. The city is going to build a bridge A bridge	built by the city.
18. A guard was protecting the jewels The jewels	_ protected by a guard.

PRACTICE 2. Forming the passive: questions, negative, and affirmative. (Chart 11-1 and Appendix Units B and D)

Directions: Change these sentences to the passive.

- 1. a. QUESTION: Did Tom write that report? -> Was that report written by Tom?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, he didn't write it. \rightarrow No, it wasn't written by him.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: Alice wrote it. \rightarrow It was written by Alice.
- 2. a. QUESTION: Is Mr. Brown painting your house?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, he isn't painting it.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: My uncle is painting it.
- 3. a. QUESTION: Will Steve wash the dishes?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, he won't wash them.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: The children will wash them.
- 4. a. QUESTION: Has Sue planned the meeting?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, she hasn't planned it.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: The committee has planned it.
- 5. a. QUESTION: Does Mr. Parr play that violin?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, he doesn't play it.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: His son plays it.
- 6. a. QUESTION: Is Jack going to return the books to the library?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, he isn't going to return them.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: His sister is going to return them.
- 7. a. QUESTION: Did the archeologists discover the ancient skeleton?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, they didn't discover it.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: A farmer discovered it.
- 8. a. QUESTION: Was Sally preparing the food?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, she wasn't preparing it.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: Her mother was preparing it.
- 9. a. QUESTION: Will Ms. Anderson have typed the letters?
 - b. NEGATIVE: No, she won't have typed them.
 - c. AFFIRMATIVE: The secretary will have typed them.

\diamond PRACTICE 3. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1 and Appendix Units B and D)

Directions: In the following, active sentences are changed to passive sentences. Complete the passive sentences with the appropriate verb form. Keep the same tense. Use question and negative forms as necessary.

- 1. Did Ann discover the mistake?
 - → Was the mistake discovered by Ann?
- 2. A famous author wrote that book.
 - \rightarrow That book <u>was written</u> by a famous author.
- 3. Jack won't pay the bill.
 - \rightarrow The bill won't be paid by Jack.

- 4. The waiter refilled my glass.
 - \rightarrow My glass _____ by the waiter.
- 5. Did Sue knock that vase to the floor?
 - \rightarrow ______ that vase ______ to the floor by Sue?
- 6. Tommy didn't break the chair.
 - → The chair ______ by Tommy.
- 7. Alan's knowledge of art doesn't impress me.
 - \rightarrow I ______ by Alan's knowledge of art.
- 8. One of the parents is taping the children's song.
 - The children's song ______ by one of the parents.
- 9. Is a student pilot flying that airplane?
 - → _____ that airplane _____ by a student pilot?
- 10. The best chess player will win the match.
 - → The match ______ by the best chess player.



11. Your emotional appeals will not influence the judge.

• The judge _____ by your emotional appeals.

- 12. The voters are going to decide that issue.
 → That issue ______ by the voters.
- 13. The city attorney has discovered new evidence.
 → New evidence ______ by the city attorney.
- 14. Mr. Snow hasn't taught that course since 1985.
 - + That course _____ by Mr. Snow since 1985.
- 15. Had a special messenger delivered the package before you got to the office?
 - → _____ the package _____ by a special messenger before you got to the office?
- 16. The pollution in the city was affecting Tim's breathing.
 - \rightarrow Tim's breathing _____ by the pollution in the city.

PRACTICE 4. Using the passive: transitive vs. intransitive verbs. (Chart 11-1 and Appendix Chart A-1)

Directions: In these sentences, some of the verbs are transitive and some are intransitive. Identify the verb of the sentence. Then identify the object of the verb if there is one. If the verb has an object, change the sentence to the passive. Use the symbol \mathcal{O} to indicate "none."

	VERB	OBJECT OF VERB	PASSIVE SENTENCE
1. Al will pay the bill.	will pay	the bill	The bill will be paid by Al.
2. Sue will come tomorrow.	will come	ø	ø
3. The hotel supplies towels.			
 Accidents happen every day. Everyone noticed my mistake. The train arrived at three. 			
7. The news didn't surprise me.			
8. Did the news surprise you?			
9. The sun wasn't shining.			
10. Ann interrupted my story.			
11. Do ghosts exist?			
12. Birds fly in the sky.			
13. Will Ed come tomorrow?			
14. Mr. Lee died last year.			
15. Did Bob throw the ball?			1 - 100
16. Sue laughed loudly.			
17. An old man told the story.			
18. It hasn't rained lately.			

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1)

Directions: Change these active sentences to passive if possible. Some of verbs are intransitive and cannot be changed. Keep the same tense.

- 1. My uncle will meet you at the airport. \rightarrow You will be met at the airport by my uncle.
- 2. Our plane will land at 6:03. (no change)
- 3. John is working at the bakery.
- 4. We walked downtown after work yesterday.
- 5. The chef will prepare the food.
- 6. The baby was crying in his crib.

- 7. I don't agree with you.
- 8. Thousands of people ride the subway every day.
- 9. Joe fell down on his way to school this morning.
- 10. George seemed unhappy yesterday.
- 11. Our houseguests are going to arrive sometime tomorrow afternoon.
- 12. The office manager answered the phone.

\diamond PRACTICE 6. Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Some of the sentences are active and some are passive. Use any appropriate tense.

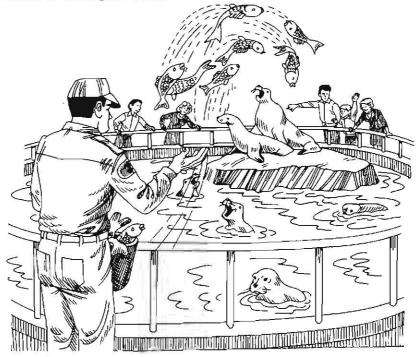
- 1. You (notify) will be notified by my secretary next week.
- 2. Last night I (remember, not) <u>didn't vemember</u> to lock my front door.
- 4. A: What a beautiful old wooden chest!
 - B: It (build) _____ by my grandfather over fifty years ago.
- 5. At one time, the entire world *(rule)* ______ by dinosaurs. Some dinosaurs *(walk)* ______ on their hind legs and *(stand)* ______ as tall as palm trees.
- 7. Many of us take water for granted in our daily lives, but people who live in the desert *(use, not)* ______ water carelessly. To them, each drop is precious.
- 8. I (agree, not) ______ with people who say space exploration is a waste of money. What do you think?
- 9. Do you really think that we *(invade)* ______ by creatures from outer space in the near future?
- 10. Most insects (*live*) ______ for less than a year. The common housefly (*live*) ______ from 19 to 30 days.
- 11. (you, accept, already) ______ by this university when you heard about the other scholarship?
- 12. I got into a taxi quickly because I (follow) ______ by two strange men. As soon as I got into the taxi, I (feel) ______ a little safer.
- 13. The impact of the earthquake yesterday *(feel)* ______ by people who lived hundreds of kilometers from the epicenter.

- 14. When Alex was only ten, his father (die) _____
- 15. Mark (influence) ______ a lot by his friends, isn't he? He should be more independent and think for himself.
- 16. A few days ago, my car (steal) ______ by one of the teenagers in my neighborhood. He (catch) ______ by the police a few blocks from my house. He just wanted to take it for a drive, but now he's in a lot of trouble.

◇ PRACTICE 7. Using the by-phrase. (Chart 11-2)

Directions: Change these active sentences to passive. Keep the same tense. Include the by-phrase only if necessary.

- 1. People grow rice in India. \rightarrow Rice is grown in India. (no by-phrase)
- 2. My aunt made this rug. \rightarrow This rug was made by my aunt.
- 3. They are fixing my car today. \rightarrow My car is being fixed today. (no by-phrase)
- 4. They speak French in Quebec.
- 5. Mr. Eads designed that bridge in the 1870s.
- 6. Someone invented the wheel thousands of years ago.
- 7. Did Thomas Edison invent the telephone?
- 8. They are going to build a new hospital just outside of town.
- 9. How do people make candles?
- 10. Very few people watch that TV show.
- 11. Look! Someone is feeding the seals.



- 12. Sally made that pie.
- 13. Someone is considering Jack for that job.
- 14. Three continents surround the Mediterranean Sea.
- 15. I got upset when someone interrupted me in the middle of my story.
- 16. People didn't build Rome in a day.
- 17. Do they make those tractors in this country, or do they import them?
- 18. While I was walking down the street, a nice young man in a military uniform approached me.

\diamond PRACTICE 8. Indirect objects as passive subjects. (Chart 11-3)

Directions: Identify the indirect object (1.0.). Change the sentences to the passive by using the indirect object as the subject of the sentence. Use the *by*-phrase only if necessary. Keep the same tense.

- I.O. 1. Someone is going to serve Jack breakfast in bed on his birthday. \rightarrow Jack is going to be served breakfast in bed on his birthday.
- 2. Someone has offered Mike the opportunity to study abroad.
- 3. People don't pay babysitters a lot of money.
- 4. When I was living in Kuwait, my neighbor taught me Arabic.
- 5. Someone awarded Jason a medal for distinguished service in the military.
- 6. The real estate office will send you a copy of the sales contract.
- 7. Someone handed me a telegram when I answered the door.
- 8. The director of the museum, Ms. Cynthia Hall, is going to give the schoolchildren a special tour of the modern art exhibit.
- 9. People gave Mr. French a gold watch upon his retirement from the company.

\diamond PRACTICE 9. Active and passive. (Charts 11-1 \rightarrow 11-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given words. Some of the sentences are passive and some are active. Use any appropriate tense.

- 1. The examination papers are scored by machine. The students *(tell)* will be told their results next week.
- 2. The project got finished early. The committee (complete) <u>completed</u> its work three weeks ahead of schedule.
- 3. The teacher (assist) _____ by two graduate students during the exam yesterday.
- 4. Soon after I (apply) _____ for a job with the United Nations two years ago, I (hire) _____.
- 5. The crocodiles at the zoo look like statues. They (*lie*) ______ perfectly still for hours at a time. They have no need to move because they don't have to hunt for their food. They (*feed*) ______ regularly by the zookeepers.

6.	This lovely beach won't exist forever. Eventually, it (erode, probably)
	by the sea, and there will be nothing left but bedrock. The geologic forces of nature never stop.
7.	Bananas originated in Asia. They (introduce) to the
	Americas in 1516. Until the 1860s, bananas (eat) principally by
	people of the tropics. Today, bananas (export) to all parts of
	the world, and they (enjoy) by people who live in all climates.
8.	There's going to be a story in the local newspaper about my neighbor, Mrs. Morris.
	Tomorrow she <i>(interview)</i> by one of the local reporters
	about her doll collection. Over the years, she (collect) more
	than 400 dolls from all over the world.
9.	Ali and Mustafa (complain) to the landlord many times
	since they moved into their apartment, but to date nothing (do)
	about the leak in the roof and the broken window in the bedroom.
10.	Yesterday I told my teenage daughter to clean her room before she (go)
	to school. After she had left the house, I looked in her room. She (pile)
	all her clothes on a chair. Everything else (shove)
	under her bed.
11.	Sometimes people (intimidate) by salespeople. As a result,
	sometimes they (buy) things they don't really want.
12.	Two days ago I (put) an ad in the classified section of the newspaper so I
	could find a buyer for my old car. Yesterday I (sell) it. It (buy)
	by a teenager who (look) for an
	old car to fix up himself. Today a friend of mine told me he wanted to buy my old car, but
	he was too late. By the time he talked to me, the car (sell, already)
	to the teenager.
13.	The wheel (invent) over 5,000 years ago. Throughout
	history, it (assist) people in making better use of oxen, horses,
	and other animals in transporting goods.
14.	The avalanche (occur) around ten in the morning on October seventh.
	Six skiers (cross) a steep slope when suddenly they (sweep)
	off their feet by cascading snow. Back at the ski resort, an
	avalanche alert was sounded, and a rescue party (leave) immediately. After
	several hours, all six skiers (find) Four of them (injure, seriously)
	, but they were all alive. The rescue party (take)
	the injured skiers down the mountain as quickly as they could.

◇ PRACTICE 10. The present participle vs. the past participle. (Charts 2-2, 2-5, and $11-1 \rightarrow 11-3$)

Directions: Use the present participle or the past participle of the given verbs to complete the sentences. Use each verb only once.

breed	finance	scrub	✔ thread
broadcast	lean	shove	wind
drag mine		smuggle	
expose	✓ redecorate	stretch	

- 1. The Clarks' living room is being <u>vedecorated</u> in blue and white. They want it to look nice for their daughter's wedding reception.
- 2. Jack pricked his finger while he was <u>threading</u> a needle.
- The police talked to an informant. According to him, the illegal drugs had been ______ into the country in a private airplane.
- 4. The logging industry in that country still uses animal power. After the trees are cut down, the logs are ______ to the central camp by elephants.
- 5. On your trip to Tahiti, you will be ______ to many interesting customs, delicious food, and delightful people.
- 6. My hands and knees got sore while I was ______ the floor with soap and water.
- 7. The old clock wasn't ticking because it hadn't been ______. Someone forgot to do it.
- 8. The news of the victory was ______ throughout the country over the radio and television. Everyone heard about it almost as soon as it happened.
- 9. The bus was extremely crowded. I was ______ this way and that by the other passengers every time the bus turned a corner.
- Oil exploration costs a lot of money. The explorations in the southern part of the country are being ______ by the government.
- 11. Frank was resting. He had been ______ back on his chair for several minutes with his eyes closed when he heard a knock on the door.
- 12. Gold is ______ in several countries. The nugget that Elena is wearing came from Brazil.
- 13. We couldn't enter the street. A rope had been _____ across the street.
- 14. Arabian horses are _____ at the Bar X ranch. They are quite expensive.

\bigcirc PRACTICE 11. The present participle vs. the past participle. (Charts 2-2, 2-5, and 11-1 → 11-3)

Directions: Use the present participle or the past participle of the given verbs to complete the sentences. Use each verb only once.

	bill	erase	✓ photograph	rub
	destroy	√ memorize	predict	vaccinate
a a substation	equip	perform	rehearse	whisper

- 1. The vocabulary list had been <u>memorized</u> by all of the students, and each one scored over 90 percent on the exam.
- 2. Shhhh! Don't move. Don is <u>photographing</u> that deer, and we don't want to scare it off.
- 3. You'll want to buy this computer. It has been ______ with all of the latest accessories, including a built-in modem.
- 4. The earthquake that struck the village was terrible. About 75 percent of the buildings were completely ______ within two minutes.
- 5. Little Jackie was _____ her eyes because she was sleepy.

- The dance company is having a successful tour of the United States. Their dances will have been ______ more than 500 times before they return to Senegal.
- 9. The National Weather Service is ______ another heat wave in the coming month. I hope they're wrong.
- 10. Robert and Julia had been ______ against cholera before they went abroad. They traveled without worrying about becoming infected.
- 12. Carl spent two hours at the dentist's office today having some fillings put in. He will be ______ for the dental work at the end of the month.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)

Directions: Change the active sentences to the passive.

- 1. People should save pandas from extinction. \rightarrow Pandas should be saved from extinction.
- 2. People must obey all traffic laws.
- 3. Someone ought to repair this broken window.

- 4. Someone should have supplied the hotel guests with clean towels.
- 5. Someone had better take this garbage to the dump soon.
- 6. People can pick tomatoes before they are completely ripe.
- 7. Someone is supposed to divide the profits among the shareholders.
- 8. Someone must have hurt Bob's feelings.
- 9. Someone has to finish this work today.
- 10. Someone ought to have reported the accident to the police.
- 11. You shouldn't put fresh bananas in the freezer.

♦ PRACTICE 13. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate forms of the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once. Some of the sentences are active and some are passive.

	consider	pollute	sew	whisper
	cost	read	sign	wrap
:	discover	✓ repeat	✓ tell	
	forget	replace	wear	

- 1. Jack has a right to know. He ought to <u>be told</u> the news immediately. If you don't do it, I will.
- 2. I have no patience with gossips. What I told Bill was a secret. He shouldn't have <u>repeated</u> it to you.
- Use this brown paper and tape. A package has to ______ carefully before it is mailed. Otherwise, the post office won't send it.
- 5. The ancient ruins may have ______ as early as 1792. The historical record is difficult to interpret.
- 6. You should ______ this button back on right away before you lose it.
- 7. This burnt out light bulb should have ______ days ago. There are some new bulbs in the green cabinet. Could you get one for me?
- Did you know that Sylvia bought a new sports car? I don't know how much she paid for it, and of course it's none of my business, but it must have ______ her a lot of money.
- 9. Shhhh! Let's not talk so loudly. We don't want to awaken the baby. We'd better
- 10. You'd better not drink that river water. It could ______.

- We have no choice in the matter. I know Tommy wants to spend the night outside in a tent with his friends, but he's sick. His well-being must _____ above all else. We have to tell him he can't do it.
- While you are working here, you are never to greet the public in your everyday clothes.
 When you are on duty, your uniform must ______ at all times.
- Your passport is supposed to ______. It is invalid without your signature.
- 14. I think everyone should ______ this paperback on the economic crisis. It contains information that everyone should have.

♦ PRACTICE 14. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)

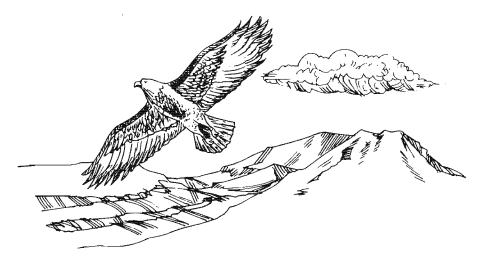
Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate forms of the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once. Some of the sentences are active and some are passive.

distinguish	✓ obtain	scrub	vaccinate
eat	participate	stop	win
establish	reply	teach	
kill	revise	trade	

- 1. A driver's license can <u>be obtained</u> from the Licensing Bureau at the corner of Pine Street and 5th Avenue.
- Sam Smith was awarded the prize, but it should have ______ by Jennifer
 Watson. Her drawing was much better than his in my opinion.
- 3. Surgeons must ______ their hands thoroughly with disinfectant soap and hot water before they enter the operating room.
- 4. A parrot can ______ to say words. I know a parrot that can say, "Me want food." Her grammar isn't very good, but she often manages to get something to eat.



- 5. What are you talking about? You can't have ______ against the common cold. Small pox, maybe but not the common cold.
- 6. When Mr. Brown said "How do you do?" you should have ______ by saying "How do you do?" I know that's not an answer to a question, but that's the way people talk when they greet each other.
- 7. I shouldn't have ______ by the police. I'm sure I wasn't speeding, but I got a ticket anyway.
- 8. Maria's composition was quite good, but it still had to ______. Her introduction didn't clearly state her thesis, and some of the ideas she presented weren't supported by specifics.
- 9. If you don't want to work tonight, you ought to ______ work shifts with Emily. She can work for you tonight, and you can work for her tomorrow night. The boss doesn't mind as long as someone is there to serve the food.
- 11. A university may ______ in outer space before long. Ideas for such a university are presently in the planning stage.
- 12. Your body needs lots of vitamins and minerals. You should ______ more salads and less junk food in the future.
- 13. A bald eagle can ______ from other large birds by its white head and white tail.
- 14. Some ranchers still believe that bald eagles must _________ to protect their livestock. Research has shown, however, that eagles do little if any damage to a rancher's stock. Today eagles are a protected species. The sight of a bald eagle soaring over water and trees fills one with awe and wonder at the beauty of nature.



♦ PRACTICE 15. Stative passive. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in the list. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT. Use each verb only once.

bury	cover	✓excite	insure
close	crack	exhaust	pollute
confuse	dress	finish	stick

- 1. The children <u>ave excited</u> about going to the circus. They're looking forward to seeing the elephants, the clowns, and the acrobats.
- 2. Three of the children have the measles. Their bodies ______ with red spots. They also have fevers.
- 3. A: What happened to this mirror? It ______.B: So it is. Someone must have dropped it.
- 4. The kids ______ from playing soccer all afternoon. They should rest for a while now.
- 5. _____ you _____ with that novel yet? I'd like to borrow it to read over the weekend.
- 6. A: I heard that a burglar broke into your house and stole all of your jewelry!
 - B: Yes, and I feel terrible about it. Some of it was my grandmother's and can't be replaced.
 But at least all of it ______, and I'll be reimbursed for its value.
 It's still not the same as having the jewelry, though.
- 8. A: I'm going over to the theater to get tickets for the next concert.
 - B: The ticket booth ______ until 6:00 P.M. You'll have to go there after six to get the tickets.
- 9. What's wrong with this drawer? I can't pull it open. It _____.
- 10. George ______ in his best suit today because he has an important interview this afternoon.
- Douglas gave me one set of directions to their house, and Ann gave me a different set of directions. Needless to say, I ______ very _____. I hope we don't get lost on the way.
- 12. I know the scissors are somewhere on this desk. I think they ______ somewhere under these piles of papers.

♦ PRACTICE 16. Stative passive. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verbs in the list. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT. Use each verb only once.

acquaint	equip	locate	schedule
cancel	forbid	make	summarize
clog	list	overdraw	

- Maria's family lives in New York City, and her husband's family lives in Philadelphia. They
 would like to live in a city which ______ between the two so that they
 can visit their relatives frequently.
- Robert wrote a very good, well-organized composition. The introduction tells the reader what the composition is about, and the last paragraph reviews all of his main points. His conclusions ______ in the last paragraph.
- 3. I don't know how, but I've lost my brother's new telephone number. Unfortunately, it ______, so I can't look it up in the directory. I'll have to call my mother and get it from her.
- 4. We can't climb over the fence to walk in that field. The sign says: "Trespassing
 _______. Violators will be prosecuted."
- 5. I ______ not ______ with our new neighbors. They just moved in last week, and I haven't had the opportunity to introduce myself.
- 6. Your dental appointment ______ for 10:00 on Saturday. Please give us 24-hours notice if you need to cancel it.
- 7. I have to deposit some money in the bank immediately or I'm in big trouble. I've written too many checks, and there's not enough money to cover them. My bank account
- 8. Good news! Our meeting ______. Now we can go to the beach after work instead of spending the evening at a meeting.
- 9. I can't wear this blouse because it ______. I'd have to iron it, and I don't have time.
- Some new automobiles ______ with air bags as well as seat belts.
 The air bags provide additional protection in case of an accident.
- 11. That table ______ of plastic, not wood. The manufacturer certainly did a good job of imitating the look of wood.
- It takes a long time for the water to go down the drain in my kitchen sink. I think the drain
 ______ with grease and food particles. I'd better call the plumber tomorrow.

PRACTICE 17. Stative passive + prepositions. (Chart 11-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate prepositions.

- 1. This apartment comes furnished <u>with</u> only a stove and refrigerator.
- 2. My uncle is known _____ his generosity.
- 3. Alice is dressed ______ her warmest clothes today.
- 4. For the holiday meal, the bowls on the table were filled ______ specially prepared foods.
- 5. People who have been exposed ______ heavy doses of radiation may be more suspectible to certain diseases.
- 6. By the end of the long trip, the floor of the car was cluttered _____ junk.
- 7. Mr. Bellamy is discriminated ______ because of his age. When he applies for a job, he gets turned down as soon as they learn he is 61 years old.
- 8. The boss is so convinced ______ Jean's ability that he's paying her more money than he paid the previous employee.
- 9. Victor is blessed ______ a good sense of humor, which has helped him get out of some very difficult situations.
- 10. A: Are you disappointed ______ the color of this room? We could repaint it.
 B: I think I'm satisfied ______ it the way it is. What do you think?
 - b. I think I in satisfied _____ it the way it is. what do you think:
- 12. Zoology is more closely related _____ biology than it is to botany.
- 13. I'm annoyed ______ my boss. He scheduled a meeting for an hour beginning at ten o'clock, the same time I was planning to see a client.
- 14. As soon as you are done ______ the dictionary, I'd like to use it.
- 15. Last month, little Billy was bitten by a dog. Now he's scared ______ every dog he sees.
- 16. Carol is engaged _____ Larry. Their marriage is planned for May 3.
- 17. A: Why are you so upset ______ the children?
 - B: They didn't call me when they missed their school bus, and I got very worried ______ them.
- 18. Each speaker was limited ______ three minutes.
- 19. Olga is exhausted. She's tired ______ working 19 straight hours at her computer, but she can't go home until the crisis is over.
- 20. I'm tired ______ living in a small apartment. I'd like to live in a house, or at least a larger apartment.

\diamond PRACTICE 18. Present vs. past participles. (Charts 2-5 and 11-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in the list. Use the present participle or the past participle. Include a PREPOSITION if necessary. Use each verb only once.

accompany	compose	✓ explain	limit
annoy	√ concern	involve	provide
bless	connect	know	satisfy
blow	cross	laugh	

- 1. I am <u>concerned about</u> your health. You're not taking good care of yourself.
- 2. Shhh! The teacher is <u>explaining</u> the assignment, and I want to hear what he's saying.
- 3. Paris is famous for the Eiffel Tower. Bangkok is ______ its floating market, which is a favorite tourist attraction.
- 4. In elementary school, all of the children are ______ textbooks. They don't have to buy their own.
- 5. Everyone is ______ hard because Don is telling a very funny story.
- 6. Diane is a perfectionist when it comes to developing her photographs. She's been in the darkroom for hours and won't come out until she is completely ______
 - _____ the prints.
- 7. The Atlantic Ocean is ______ the Pacific Ocean by the Panama Canal. Ships can go from one ocean to the other without having to sail around the southern tip of South America.
- 8. While I was ______ the street, a car came out of nowhere and almost hit me.
- 9. Most teenagers are very busy after school. They are _____ many extracurricular activities, such as sports and special interest clubs.
- 10. An alloy is a metal compound that is _____ two or more metals.
- 11. Mrs. Hill doesn't have to travel alone. Her daughter is ______ her to Rome.
- 12. We are fortunate people. We are ______ a happy home and good health. We have many things to be thankful for.
- The enrollment in that class is ______ 25 students. You'd better sign up for it early. Otherwise, you won't be able to get in.
- My neighbors are quite inconsiderate. They make so much noise that I can't get to sleep at night. I am very ______ them.
- 15. The weather was awful. It was raining so hard that it was impossible to see across the valley, and the wind was ______ so hard that it was difficult to walk.

\diamond PRACTICE 19. The passive with get. (Chart 11-7)

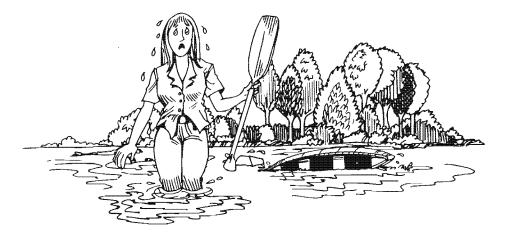
Directions: Complete the sentences by using an appropriate form of *get* and the PAST PARTICIPLE of the verbs in the list.

break	hurt	start	rtear
bury	lose	stick	worry
hire	soak		

- 1. I had a terrible day. First the heel of my shoe broke off, then my dress <u>got torn</u> in the elevator door. I'm glad the day is over!
- 2. Oh! Look at that beautiful vase on the floor. How did it _____?
- 3. A: You're late. What happened?
 - B: We ______. We took the wrong exit from the highway, and it took a long time to figure out where we were.
- 4. A: I really need a job.
 - B: Why don't you apply for a job at the fast-food restaurant? They're looking for help. I'm sure you'll ______.
- 5. A: Did Susan ______ when she fell down the stairs?

B: Not badly. Just a few bumps and bruises. She'll be fine.

- 6. A: You're here! I ______ about you. What happened to make you so late?
 - B: I couldn't start my car. The battery was dead.
- 7. Maureen ______ thoroughly ______ when her canoe tipped over and she fell into the river. She looked like a drowned rat.



8. In two weeks the school term will be finished. I'd better ______ on my term paper before it's too late. I've been procrastinating too long.

9. It was a real tragedy. The rains were torrential, and the mudslide completely covered everything. Three houses _______ in the mud when it rolled down

the hillside. We could barely see the rooftops.

- 10. A: I heard about your embarrassing situation last night.
 - B: It was awful! I put my big toe in the faucet while I was taking a bath, and it

_____! I couldn't pull it out no matter how hard I tried.

\diamond PRACTICE 20. The passive with *get.* (Chart 11-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using an appropriate form of *get* and the PAST PARTICIPLE of the verbs in the list.

accept	dress	embarrass	invite
catch	elect	fire	mug
cheat	electrocute	√ hit	ruin

- 1. I shouldn't have parked my car near the construction site. It <u>got hit</u> by falling rocks. Now it's covered with dents and scratches.
- Tom has applied to three top universities. Since he's an excellent student, I'm sure he'll
 ______ by at least one of them. If he doesn't, there are other good
 schools he can attend.
- 3. Alex thought he had gotten a good deal when he bought a diamond ring from some guy on the street, but the "stone" turned out to be glass and was practically worthless. Alex
- 4. A: I can't believe Paul ______ from his job. I thought he was doing well.
 B: He was, but then he had a major disagreement with his boss, and tempers were flying. I

hope he gets his job back.

- 5. A: Let's take the subway.
 - B: Not me! The last time I was on the subway, I ______. A man knocked me down and stole my wallet.
- 6. A: Did you ______ to the Saunders' dinner party tonight?
 - B: Yes, but I can't go.
- 7. A: You're all out of breath!
 - B: I was late getting home and had to ______ quickly. Then I ran all the way over here.
 - A: Well, that explains why your collar is up and your tie is crooked.
- The animal was running through the woods when it suddenly ______ in the hunter's trap.
- 9. It was a close election. The new president _____ by a very small margin.

!

10. What are you doing?!! Don't let the cord to your electric hair dryer fall into the sink. You'

11.	We managed	to	save	some	of the	furniture,	but many	of our	things		
					when	the floody	vaters pou	red int	o our h	iouse.	

12. During the school play, little Annie ______ when she couldn't remember the lines she was supposed to say.

◇ PRACTICE 21. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)

.

Directions: Complete the sentences by using an appropriate form (PRESENT or PAST PARTICIPLE) of the *italicized* word.

- 1. The book interests me. (a) It is an <u>interesting</u> book. (b) I am <u>interested</u> in it.
- 2. That chemical *irritates* your skin. (a) The chemical is _____. (b) Your skin is _____.
- 3. The trip tired everybody. (a) Everyone was _____. (b) The trip was
- 4. Ann *boiled* an egg. (a) She took the egg out of the _____ water. (b) She had
 a _____ egg for breakfast.
- 5. The news upset us. (a) We were _____. (b) The news was

6. The instructions on the box for assembling the tool confuse me. (a) They are

_____. (b) I am thoroughly _____.

- 7. Bob's grades disappointed his parents. (a) His grades were _____
 - (b) His parents were _____.
- 8. My father often reassured me. (a) He was a very _____ person.
 - (b) I always felt ______ when I was around him.
- I waited for two hours to see the doctor, and it really *frustrated* me! (a) Long waits such as that can be very ______.
 (b) I was ______.
- 10. Anna has a noise in her car that *disturbs* her. (a) It is a ______ noise.

(b) She is _____ when she hears it.

- 11. Jessica's arguments *convinced* us. (a) She presented _______. arguments. (b) We were ______.
- 12. The tender love story *moved* the audience. (a) It was a ______ story.

(b) The audience felt _____.

13.	Their behavior <i>shocked</i> us. (a) It was	behavior. (b) We were
14.	The sad movie <i>depressed</i> me. (a) I was	(b) It was a
	movie.	
15.	The unkind teacher's harsh words humiliated the stude	
	student hung his head in shame. (b) The student nev experience.	er forgot that
16.	The newspaper account of the new medical discovery	intrigued me. (a) It was an
	account. (b) Other	people wrote the
	newspaper to get more information.	
	E 22. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8) rections: Complete each sentence with the correct form	of the word in parentheses.
1.	The poor people who live in shacks south of the city of	don't have (run)
	water.	
2.	No one may attend the lecture except (invite)	guests.
3.	The (suggest) remedy for t	he common cold is to rest and to drink
	plenty of fluids.	
4.	Because we have a (write)	agreement, our landlord won't be able
	to raise our rent for two years.	
5.	After an (exhaust) trip of t	welve hours, Jason fell asleep at the
	dinner table.	
6.	There are many (stimulate)	activities in a large city.
7.	The anthropologist recorded the tribe's (speak)	language with a
	small tape recorder.	
8.	I like to hear the sound of gently (fall)	rain.
9.	(Freeze) fish is as nutrition	is as fresh fish, but it doesn't taste quite
	as good.	
10.	The (invade) army plunde	red the villages of food and valuables.
11.	Skydiving is a (thrill)	experience.
12.	Ben's tasteless jokes didn't produce the (intend)	effect. Instead,
	his guests were offended.	
13.	The professor dispelled the tense atmosphere in the c	lassroom by beginning her lecture with
	some (amuse) anecdotes.	

- 14. That country is highly industrialized but has very little arable land. Its economy depends upon the export of various (manufacture) ______ goods in exchange for imported agricultural products.
- 15. When I get home from work, I'm going to take a long, *(relax)* ______ bath.
- 16. The scientist reviewed all of his procedures for the experiment after the (expect)______ results did not occur.
- 17. When Brenda heard the news of the *(approach)* ______ hurricane, she bought flashlight batteries, candles, and canned food to prepare for the storm.
- 18. Bright children have (inquire) _____ minds.
- 19. The game was played in our stadium. The (visit) _______ team scored the (win) ______ goal in the last seconds of the soccer game. Nevertheless, the (disappoint) ______ fans continued to cheer our team.
- 20. I heard some (encourage) _____ news.
- 21. Sally spends her vacations in the mountains. The fresh air invigorates her. She likes the cool, (invigorate) ______ air.
- 22. Waste from the factory poured into the river and contaminated it. Some of the villagers got sick from eating *(contaminate)* ______ fish.

♦ PRACTICE 23. Verb form review: active and passive. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 5$ and 11) Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

- 1. Only coffee and dessert (serve) were served at the reception yesterday.
- 2. Kim wants very badly to make the Olympic team next year. She *(train)* has been <u>training</u> hard for the last two years.
- 3. I've looked in my purse, on the dresser, in my coat pocket, and on all of the tables in the house, but I can't find my keys anywhere. They *(lose)* ______.
- Some people in my country don't take politics seriously. In a recent parliamentary election, a cartoon character named Donald Duck (receive) ______ 291 votes.
- 6. According to our Constitution, everyone is equal. But in truth, some minorities

(discriminate) ______ against in our country. In the last 20 years,

new laws (enact) ______ to help ensure equality in housing and job opportunities.

7. Mark is a genius. By the time he graduated, he *(offer)* ______ jobs by a dozen computer companies.

- 8. When I (finish) _____ my work, I'm going to take a walk.
- 9. After the test papers (return) ______ to the students in class tomorrow, the students (give) ______ their next assignment.
- 10. The Olympic Games began in 776 B.C. in Olympia, a small town in Greece. At that time, only Greeks (allow) _______ to compete in them.
- 11. I (fool, not) ______ when Linda told us she'd won a million dollars at the racetrack. I knew she was only kidding.
- 12. There are certain (establish) ______ procedures that must (follow) ______ in conducting a scientific experiment.
- Due to his abrasive, (*irritate*) ______ manner, Mr. Morrow has difficulty getting along with his co-workers. He (*replace*) ______ by Mr. Han next month as the coordinator of the production plans.
- 14. When Jake put a coin in the (vend) _____ machine for a can of soda pop, nothing came out. So in a fit of temper, he (kick) _____ it hard. Suddenly, it (fall) _____ over, right on top of Jake, who (injure, seriously) _____

_______. Jake (end) _______ up in the hospital for three weeks, and today he (wear, still) _______ a cast on his arm. I

bet that's the last time he ever kicks a (vend) _____ machine.



15. I have a serious problem with my (propose) ______ class schedule this semester. The chemistry class that I need for my science requirement (offer, not) ______

______ this semester. I don't know what to do. I need that class in order to graduate in June.

- 16. A: Arthur (jog) ______ for a full hour. He must be tired.
 - B: Why is he jogging so much these days?A: He (plan) ______ to run in the 10k race in Chicago next month,
 - and he wants to be ready for it.
- 17. A census is a survey of the population of a country. In the United States, a population
 - census (conduct) _____ by the government every ten years.
 - Questionnaires (send) _______ to every household in the country. People

(ask) ______ about such things as their employment, education, housing,

and family size. After the information (collect) _____, it (publish)

_____ by the Census Bureau. Many government agencies (use)

_____ this information to make plans for the future about housing,

agriculture, urban development, public transportation, and schools.

◇ PRACTICE 24. TEST A: The passive. (Chapter 11) Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: Ms. Haugen at the Ajax Con A. is employing B. employed		D. is employed
1. I still can't believe it! My bicycle la	ist night.	
A. was stolen B. was stealing	C. stolen	D. stole
 The current constitutional problem is A. studying B. being studying 	 by the top legal mi C. being studied D. been studied 	nds in the country.
3. Something funny in class yesterday. A. happened B. was happened		D. is happened
 4. The child's arm was swollen because he A. stung B. had stung 	by a bee.C. had been stungD. had being stung	
5. Today, many serious childhood diseases	by early immuni	zation.
A. are preventing	C. prevent	
B. can prevent	D. can be prevented	
6. I with you on that subject.		
A. am agree B. am agreed	C. agreeing	D. agree
7. Many U.S. automobiles in Detroit,	Michigan.	
A. manufacture	C. are manufactured	1
B. have manufactured	D. are manufacturin	g
8. Let's go ahead and do it now. Nothing	by waiting.	
A. accomplishes	C. has accomplished	I
B. accomplished	D. will be accomplis	hed
9. "When?" "In 1928."		
A. penicillin was discovered	C. was penicillin dis	
B. did penicillin discovered	D. did penicillin diso	cover
 In recent years, the government has imposed manufacturers. Both domestic and importe devices. 		
A. equip with	C. equip by	
B. be equipped with	D. be equipped by	
11. A shortage of water is a problem in many pa from the ground faster than nature can reple	enish the supply.	
A. is being taken B. has been taking	C. is taking	D. has taken
12. Vitamin C by the human body. It ;	gets into the blood str	eam quickly.
A. absorbs easily	C. is easily absorbed	
B. is easily absorbing	D. absorbed easily	

13. "When can I ha	ve my car back?"		
"I think it'll	late this afternoon."		
A. finish	B. be finished	C. have finished	D. be finish
	y interview went very well e job I wanted. I'm really	and the set of the second set and the second second set of the second second second second second second second	ave. Despite all my anxiety, justify their confidence.
A. was hiring	B. hired	C. got hiring	D. got hired
15. My country	the pursuit of world	peace.	
A. is dedicati	ng to	C. is dedicating by	
B. is dedicate	ed to	D. is dedicated by	
16. About 15,000 y	ears ago, northern Wiscon	sin under ice	a mile deep.
A. buried	B. was burying	C. was buried	D. had buried
17. Ed was new on	the job, but he quickly fit	himself into the	routine of the office.
A. established	d B. establishing	C. establishes	D. establish
18. The Mayan Ind centuries ago.	ians an accurate	and sophisticated caler	idar more than seven
A. were deve	loped B. developed	C. are developed	D. have been developed
19. George is	Lisa.		
A. marry with	h B. marry to	C. married with	D. married to
20. The rescuers _	for their bravery an	d fortitude in locating	the lost mountain climbers.
A. were prais	ed B. praised	C. were praising	D. praising

9

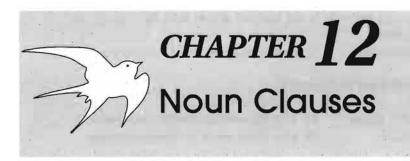
5

The Possive 113

◇ PRACTICE 25. TEST B: The passive. (Chapter 11) Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: Ms. Haugen 🔤	Dat the Ajax Co	mpany.	
	B. employed		D. is employed
1. "Can't we do someth		n?"	
"Something	-		
A. is doing	B. is done	C. is being done	D. has been doing
2. "Are you interested ir "Very. Undersea life			
A. fascinated	B. fascinating	C. being fascinating	D. being fascinated
3. The university	_ by private funds as	well as by tuition inco	me and grants.
A. is supported	B. supports	C. is supporting	D. has supported
4. My car made strange the mechanic at my g			't start again. Fortunately,
A. was discover		C. was discovered	
B. discovered		D. has been discover	red
5. "Ms. Jones, please typ "They've already			
A. typed			D. been being typed
6. "Has the committee r "Not yet. They are st	•	sal."	
A. considering		C. being considered	
B. been considered	l	D. considered	
		hals. It's often more th	
A. is providing		C. provides	
B. is being provide	d	D. provided	
 "How did that windo "I don't know." 	w?"		
A. get broken	B. broke	C. got broken	D. broken
9. Renoir is one of the masterpieces all over		mpressionist painters.	His paintings
A. had considered		C. are considered	
B. are considering		D. consider	
10. As the fairy tale goes, from a beautiful princ A. turned			agician, and only a kiss
B. was turning	D. had been turning	7	
11. When I woke up and lightly with a			The ground had been
A. covering	B. cover	C. covers	D. covered
n. covering		0. 00/013	D. Covercu

12. We can't even walk in this storm. Let's wait in the hallway where we'll be the strong winds until things quiet down.					
A. protected from B. p	protected by	C. protecting from	D. protecting by		
13. " about the eight of "Not yet."	13. " about the eight o'clock flight to Chicago?" "Not yet"				
A. Has been an announc B. Has an announcemen		C. Has an announcer D. Has been made an			
14. Last night a tornado swept	through Rockville	e. It everythin	ng in its path.		
A. destroyed	0	C. was being destroye			
B. was destroyed		D. had been destroye			
15. Be sure to wash these veget unwashed produce.	ables thoroughly.	A lot of pesticide resi	due on		
	an found	C. can be found	D. can be finding		
16. The building of the bridge both sides of the river. Fina many hours of driving have A. was constructed B. gets constructed	ally, it be	cause the public dema			
17. On Friday afternoon before a three-day holiday weekend, the highways people on their way out of the city.					
A. are crowding by		C. are crowded with			
B. are being crowd with		D. crowd by			
18. Fortunately, the hospital's new air-conditioning system when the first heat wave of the summer arrived.					
A. had installed		C. had been installed			
B. installed		D. had been installing	g		
19. It's hard to believe that my application for a scholarship I was sure I'd get it. I don't know now if I'll go to school next year.					
A. was denied B. c	lenied	C. was denying	D. has denied		
20. The man died because med immediately.	20. The man died because medical help was not summoned. A doctor should				
A. have called B. b	been called	C. called	D. have been called		



PRACTICE 1. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word. (Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Identify noun clauses and questions. Look at the <u>underlined</u> part of each sentence. If the underlined part is a question, circle Q. If it is a noun clause, circle **N.Cl.** Add the necessary punctuation.

- 1. (Q) N.Cl. I couldn't hear him. What did he say?
- 2. Q (N.Cl.) I couldn't hear what he said.
- 3. Q N.Cl. I need some information. Where does Tom live I have to send him a letter.
- 4. Q N.Cl. I need to know where Tom lives I have to send him a letter.
- 5. Q N.Cl. There's something I don't understand. Why did Barb cancel her vacation plans
- 6. Q N.Cl. I don't understand why Barb canceled her vacation plans
- 7. Q N.Cl. I can't tell you what they did You'll have to ask Jim.
- 8. Q N.Cl. What did they do Please tell me.
- 9. Q N.Cl. Do you know that woman? Who is she She looks familiar.
- 10. Q N.Cl. Do you see that woman over there? Do you know who she is She looks familiar.
- 11. Q N.Cl. Where did Ann go Do you know?
- 12. Q N.Cl. Where Ann went is a secret

PRACTICE 2. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word. (Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: If the given words are a question, insert a capital letter and a question mark. If the given words are a noun clause, write "I don't know" and a final period.

2	I don't know where he is.	
J	I don't know what he did.	
•	W what did he do?	
	how old is he	

6	how old he is	
7	where did he go	
8	where he went	
9	why he said that	
10	why did he say that	
11	who he is	
12	who is he	
13	when will he arrive	
14	when he will arrive	
15	who is he talking to	
16	which one he bought	

PRACTICE 3. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word. (Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Make a question from the given sentence. The words in parentheses should be the answer to the question you make. Use a question word (who, what, how, etc.). Then change the question to a noun clause.

1. That man is (Mr. Robertson).

OUESTION: Who is that man?

NOUN CLAUSE: I want to know ______ who that man is.

2. George lives (in Los Angeles).

QUESTION: _____

NOUN CLAUSE: I want to know _____

3. Ann bought (a new dictionary).

QUESTION: ____

NOUN CLAUSE: Do you know _____

4. It is (350 miles) to Denver from here.

QUESTION: _

NOUN CLAUSE: I need to know _____

5. Jack was late to class (because he missed the bus).

QUESTION: _____

NOUN CLAUSE: The teacher wants to know _____

6.	That is (Ann's) pen.
	QUESTION:
	NOUN CLAUSE: Tom wants to know
7.	Alex saw (Ms. Frost) at the meeting.
	QUESTION:
	NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know
8.	(Jack) saw Ms. Frost at the meeting.
	QUESTION:
	NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know
9.	Alice likes (this) book best, (not that one).
	QUESTION:
	NOUN CLAUSE: I want to know
10.	The plane is supposed to land (at 7:14 P.M.).
	QUESTION:
	NOUN CLAUSE: Could you tell me

♦ PRACTICE 4. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word. (Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Make questions and noun clauses.

Example:

- SPEAKER A: Make a question from each given sentence. The words in parentheses should be the answer to your question.
- SPEAKER B: Keep your book closed. Change Speaker A's question into a noun clause. Begin your sentence with "(Name of Speaker A) wants to know"
- 1. Fred* lives (in an apartment). Speaker A: Where does Fred live? Speaker B: (Yoko) wants to know where Fred lives.
- 2. It's (ten o'clock). Speaker A: What time is it? Speaker B: (Roberto) wants to know what time it is.
- 3. Tom wants (a watch) for his birthday.
- 4. Jane gets to school (by bus).

MW BL. BIRSHISHISHING *To Student A: Use the name of a class member instead of the name in the exercise if you wish. For example: Where does Ali live? (instead of Where does Fred live?)

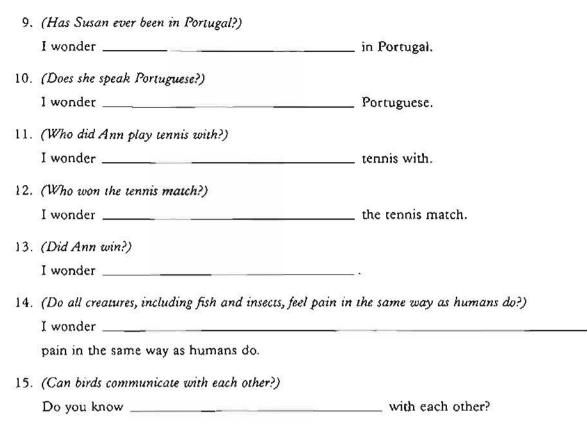
- 5. Vacation starts (on June 3rd).
- 6. Sue left class early (because she didn't feel well).
- 7. The movie is going to last (two hours and ten minutes).
- 8. Mary called (Jim).
- 9. (Mary) called Jim.
- 10. Alice talked to the teacher about (the test).
- 11. Alice talked to (the teacher) about the test.
- 12. (Alice) talked to the teacher about the test.
- 13. Sue's plane will arrive (at 8:05).
- 14. (Two) students will be absent from class tomorrow.
- 15. There are (over 10,000) lakes in Minnesota.
- 16. It's (twenty-five miles) to Springfield from here.
- 17. Jane (studied) last night.
- 18. We're supposed to buy (this) book, (not that book).
- 19. Ann likes (chocolate) ice cream the best.
- 20. A robin's egg is (turquoise blue).
- 21. That woman is (Mrs. Anderson).
- 22. (Mr. Anderson) is talking on the telephone.
- 23. That's (Sam's) notebook.
- 24. (Jessica's) car was stolen.

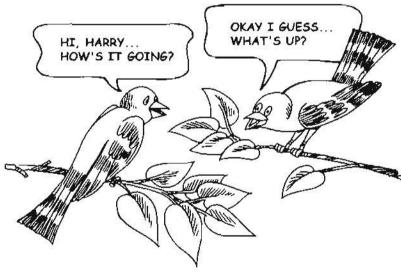
PRACTICE 5. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word. (Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Use the words in parentheses to complete the sentences. Use any appropriate verb tense. Some of the completions contain noun clauses and some contain questions.

- 1. A: John is searching every drawer. Do you know what <u>he's looking for</u> (he, look for)
 - B: I have no idea. Why don't I just ask him? John? What <u>are you looking for</u>? (you, look for)

2.	A: I heard that Sam changed his mind about goi	
	to stay home? Is somet	
	B: I don't know. Maybe Jane can tell us why	
	with us. Let's ask her. I hope he's okay. (he,	
3.	A: Whose book? (this	
	B: It's not mine. I don't know whose	(it, be)
4.	A: Did Jack get enough food when he went to th? It takes a lot of f	
	B: Just relax. I don't know exactly how much fis	sh, but I'm
	sure there'll be enough for dinner for all of us	S. (he, buy)
5.	A: I need a math tutor. Do you know who	? (John's tutor, be)
	B: No. Let me ask Phil. Excuse me, Phil? Who	??
	Do you know? (John's tutor, be)	
6.	A: Lucy, why	for the exam? You could have done
	much better if you'd been prepared. (you, stud	ly, not)
	B: Well, Professor Morris, why	for the exam is a long
	story. I intended to, but (I, study, not)	
	E 6. Changing yes/no and information que (Charts 12-2 and 12-3) rections: Complete each sentence by changing the	
	(Will it rain?) I wonderif/whether it will	
2.	(When will it rain?) I wonder <u>when it will r</u>	ain
3.	(Is Sam at home?)	
	I don't know	at home.
4.	(Where is Sam?)	
	I don't know	·
5	(Did Jane call?)	
2.	Ask Tom	
<i>.</i>		·
6.	(What time did she call?)	
	Ask Tom	
7.	(Why is the earth called "the water planet"?)	
	Do you know	"the water planet"?
8.	(How far is it from New York City to Jakarta?)	
	I wonder fr	rom New York to Jakarta.





16. (How do birds communicate with each other?)

Have you ever studied _______ with each other?

17. (Where is the nearest post office?)

Do you know ______?

18. (Is there a post office near here?)

Do you know ______ near here?

Noun Clauses 121

♦ PRACTICE 7. Question words and whether followed by infinitives. (Chart 12-4)

Directions: Using the idea in the question in parentheses, complete each sentence with a question word or *whether* followed by an infinitive.

- (Where should I buy the meat for the lamb stew?)
 I don't know <u>where to buy</u> the meat for the lamb stew.
- 2. (Should I stay home or go to the movie?) Tom can't decide <u>whether to stay</u> home or <u>go</u> to the movie.
- 3. (How can I fix the toaster?) Jack doesn't know how to fix the toaster.
- 4. (Should I look for another job?) Jason is wondering <u>whether (or not) to look</u> for another job.
- 5. (Where can I get a map of the city?)
 - Ann wants to know ______ a map of the city.
- 6. (Should I go to the meeting?)
 Al is trying to decide ______ to the meeting.
- 7. (What time should I pick you up?)
 I need to know _____ you up.
- (Who should I talk to about this problem?)
 I don't know ______ to about this problem.
- 9. (Should I take a nap or do my homework?)
 I can't decide _____ my homework.
- 10. (How can I solve this problem for you?)
- My adviser can't figure out ______ this problem for me.
- 11. (Where should I tell them to meet us?) I'm not sure ______ them to meet us.
- 12. (How long am I supposed to cook this meat?) I can't remember ______ this meat.
- 13. (What should I wear to the ceremony?) I can't decide ______ to the ceremony.
- 14. (How much coffee should I make for the meeting?) You'll have to tell me ______ for the meeting.
- 15. (Which essay should I use for the contest?)
 - Susan can't decide ______ for the contest.
- 16. (Should I take a year off from work and travel around the world? Or should I keep working and save my money?)

Alice can't decide ______ a year off from work and _____

around the world, or _____ working and _____ her money.

◇ PRACTICE 8. That-clauses. (Chart 12-5)

Directions: Combine each pair of sentences into one that contains a noun clause. Begin the new sentence with **That** or **It**.

Examples: The weather is not going to improve. That is apparent.

 \rightarrow It is apparent that the weather is not going to improve. OR That the weather is not going to improve is apparent.

 → That pollution diminishes the quality of our lives. That is hard to deny.
 → That pollution diminishes the quality of our lives is hard to deny. OR It is hard to deny that pollution diminishes the quality of our lives.

- 1. No one stopped to help Sam when he had car trouble. That is surprising.
- 2. People in modern cities are distrustful of each other. That is unfortunate.
- 3. People in my village always help each other. That is still true.
- 4. People need each other and need to help each other. That is undeniably true.
- 5. People have a moral duty to help others in need. That seems obvious to me.
- 6. People today are afraid to help strangers. That is a pity.
- 7. People in cities live in densely populated areas but don't know their neighbors. That seems strange to me.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Using the fact that. (Chart 12-5)

Directions: Combine each pair of sentences into one sentence by using the fact that.

- 1. I studied for three months for the examination. Regardless of that, I barely passed. \rightarrow Regardless of the fact that I studied for three months for the examination, I barely passed.
- 2. Jim lost our tickets to the concert. There's nothing we can do about that.
- 3. We are going to miss one of the best concerts of the year because of Jim's carelessness. That makes me a little angry.
- 4. We can't go to the concert. In view of that, let's plan to go to a movie.
- 5. I couldn't speak a word of Italian and understood very little. Except for that, I had a wonderful time visiting my Italian cousins in Rome.
- 6. Many people living in Miami speak only Spanish. When I first visited Florida, I was surprised by that.
- 7. Bobby broke my grandmother's antique flower vase. That isn't important.
- 8. He lied about it. That is what bothers me.

- 9. Prof. Brown, who had had almost no teaching experience, was hired to teach the advanced physics courses. At first, some of us objected to that, but she has proven herself to be one of the best.
- 10. That automobile has the best safety record of any car manufactured this year. I am impressed by that and would definitely recommend that you buy that make.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Add the necessary punctuation and capitalization to these sentences. Do not change the word order or add or delete any words.

- The athlete said where is my uniform
 → The athlete said, "Where is my uniform?"
- 2. I can't remember Margaret said where I put my purse
- 3. Sandy asked her sister how can I help you get through this difficulty
- 4. I'll answer your question later he whispered I'm trying to hear what the speaker is saying
- 5. As the students entered the room, the teacher said please take your seats quickly
- 6. Why did I ever take this job Barry wondered aloud
- 7. After crashing into me and knocking all of my packages to the ground, the man stopped abruptly, turned to me and said softly excuse me
- 8. Do we want four more years of corruption and debt the candidate shouted into the microphone no the crowd screamed
- 9. The woman behind the fast-food counter shouted who's next

I am three people replied at the same time

Which one of you is really next she asked impatiently

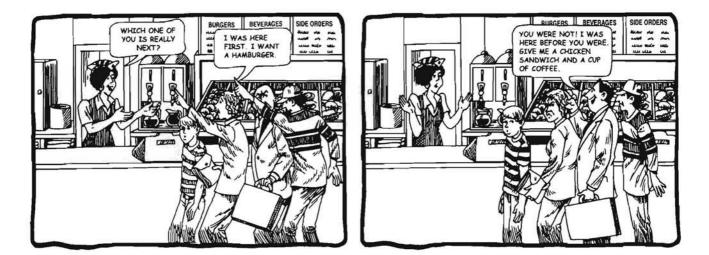
I was here first said a young woman elbowing here way up to the counter I want a hamburger

You were not hollered an older man standing next to her I was here before you were give me a chicken sandwich and a cup of coffee

Wait a minute I was in line first said a young man give me a cheeseburger and a chocolate shake

The woman behind the restaurant counter spotted a little boy politely waiting his turn she turned to him and said hi, Sonny what can I get for you









◇ PRACTICE 11. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Change the sentences by changing quoted to reported speech. Use formal sequence of tenses.

- 1. Tom said, "I am busy." \rightarrow Tom said that he <u>wes</u> busy.
- 2. Tom said, "I need some help." \rightarrow Tom said that he ______ some help.
- 3. Tom said, "I am having a good time." \rightarrow Tom said that he _____ a good time.
- 4. Tom said, "I have finished my work." → Tom said that he _____ his work.
- 5. Tom said, "I finished it an hour ago." \rightarrow Tom said that he ______ it an hour ago.
- 6. Tom said, "I will arrive at noon." \rightarrow Tom said that he _____ at noon.
- Tom said, "I am going to be there at noon." → Tom said that he ______
 there at noon.
- 8. Tom said, "I can solve that problem." → Tom said that he _____ that problem.
- 9. Tom said, "I may come early." \rightarrow Tom said that he _____ early.
- 10. Tom said, "I might come early." → Tom said that he _____ early.
- 11. Tom said, "I must leave at eight." \rightarrow Tom said that he ______ at eight.
- 12. Tom said, "I have to leave at eight." \rightarrow Tom said that he ______ at eight.
- 13. Tom said, "I should go to the library." \rightarrow Tom said that he ______ to the library.
- 14. Tom said, "I ought to go to the library." → Tom said that he ______ to the library.
- 15. Tom said, "Stay here." \rightarrow Tom told me _____ here.
- 16. Tom said, "Don't move." → Tom told me _____.
- 17. Tom said, "Are you comfortable?" → Tom asked me if I _____ comfortable.
- 18. Tom said, "When did you arrive?" → Tom asked me when I _____

◇ PRACTICE 12. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the quoted speech to reported speech. Use formal sequence of tenses as appropriate. (Pay attention to whether the reporting verb is past or present.)

- 1. I asked Martha, "Are you planning to enter law school?" I asked Martha <u>if/whether she was planning</u> to enter law school.
- 2. Ed just asked me, "What time does the movie begin?"

Ed wants to know ______ what time the movie begins _____.

3. Fred asked, "Can we still get tickets for the concert?" Fred asked _____if/whether we could still get_____ tickets for the concert.

4.	Thomas said to us, "How can I help you?"
	Thomas wants to know <u>how he can help</u> us.
5.	Eva asked, "Can you help me, John?"
	Eva asked John her.
6.	Charles said, "When will the final decision be made?"
	Charles wanted to know
7.	Frank asked Elizabeth, "Where have you been all afternoon?"
	Frank asked Elizabeth all afternoon.
8.	Bill just said, "What is Kim's native language?"
	Bill wants to know
9.	Yesterday Ron said to Bob, "What's the problem?"
	Ron asked Bob
10.	I asked myself, "Am I doing the right thing?"
	I wondered the right thing.
11.	All of the farmers are asking, "When is this terrible drought going to end?"
	All of the farmers are wondering to end.
12.	George asked me, "What time do I have to be at the laboratory in the morning?"
	George asked me to be at the laboratory in the morning.
13.	Beth asked, "Who should I give this message to?"
	Beth asked me
14.	Our tour guide said, "We'll be leaving around 7:00 in the morning."
	Our tour guide told us around 7:00 in the morning.
15.	Nancy asked, "Why didn't you call me?"
	Nancy wanted to know her.
Din	E 13. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7) rections: Complete the sentences using the information in the dialogue. Use past verb forms in a noun clauses if appropriate and possible.
1.	Joanne asked me, "Do you know Dave Clark?" "Yes," I replied. "I've known him for many years. Why do you want to know?"
	Joanne asked me if I <u>knew</u> Dave Clark. I replied that I <u>had known</u> him
	for many years and asked her why she <u>wanted</u> to know.
2.	I asked Mary, "Why do you still smoke?" Mary replied, "I've tried to quit many times, but I just don't seem to be able to."

When I asked Mary why she _____, she replied that she _____

_____ to quit many times, but she just ______ to be able to.

3.	The teacher asked, "Bobby, what is the capital of Australia?"
	Bobby replied, "I'm not sure, but I think it's Sydney."

Yesterday in class, Bobby's teacher asked him	He
inswered that he sure, but that he	-
Sydney.	

- 4. The children inquired of their father, "Will we be able to visit the Air and Space Museum and the Natural History Museum, too?"
 - Their father said, "We will if we leave the hotel before 10 o'clock tomorrow morning."

The children asked their father whether they ______ able to visit the

Air and Space Museum and the Natural History Museum, too. He told them they

_____ if they _____ the hotel before 10 o'clock the next morning.

5. I told Jenny, "It's pouring outside. You'd better take an umbrella." Jenny said, "It'll stop soon. I don't need one."

I told Jenny that it ______ outside and that she ______ an umbrella. However, Jenny said she thought the rain ______ soon and that she

_____ one.

6. "Where are you going, Ann?" I asked.
"I'm on my way to the market," she replied. "Do you want to come with me?"
"I'd like to, but I have to stay home. I have a lot of work to do."
"Okay," Ann said. "Is there anything I can pick up for you at the market?"
"How about a few bananas? And some apples if they're fresh?"
"Sure. I'd be happy to."
When I asked Ann where she _______, she said she _______ on her way to the market and _______ me to come with her. I said I _______ to, but that I _______ to stay home because I _______ a lot of work to do. Ann kindly asked me if there ______ anything she _______

_____ fresh. She said she'd be happy to.

7. "Where are you from?" asked the passenger sitting next to me on the plane. "Chicago," I said.

"That's nice. I'm from Mapleton. It's a small town in northern Michigan. Have you heard of it?" "Oh yes, I have," I said. "Michigan is a beautiful state. I've been there on vacation many times." "Were you in Michigan on vacation this year?"

"No. I went far away from home this year. I went to India," I replied.

"Oh, that's nice. Is it a long drive from Chicago to India?" she asked me. My mouth fell open. I didn't know how to respond. Some people certainly need to study geography.

The passenger sittir	ng next to me on t	he plane	me w	here I
from. I	_ her I	from Chicag	;o. She	that she
from Mapleton, a sma	ll town in norther	n Michigan.	She wondered if I	
of it,	and I told her tha	t I	. I went on to say	that I thought
Michigan a	a beautiful state ai	nd explained	that I	there on
vacation many times.	She	me if I		in Michigan on
vacation this year. I re	eplied that I		and	her that I
	far away, to India.	Then she as	ked me if it	a long drive
from Chicago to India	My mouth fell	open. I didn'	t know how to resp	pond. Some people
certainly need to stud	v geography.			

\diamond PRACTICE 14. Using the subjunctive. (Chart 12-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences, using the idea of the words in parentheses.

- 1. (You should organize a camping trip.) The girls proposed that their scout leader <u>organize</u> a camping trip. 2. (Ms. Hanson thinks that the director should divide our class into two sections.) Ms. Hanson recommended that our class <u>be divided</u> into two sections. 3. (You must call home every week.) Dan's parents insisted that he _____ home every week. 4. (Someone must tell her the truth about her illness.) It is essential that she ______ the truth about her illness. 5. (Open your suitcases for inspection.) The customs official demanded that all passengers ______ their suitcases. 6. (Ann, you should take some art courses.) The counselor recommended that Ann _____ some art courses. 7. (All parts of the motor must work correctly.) It is vital that all parts of the motor ______ in proper working order. 8. (Please mail all packages at the central office.) The director requests that all packages ______ at the central office. 9. (Soldiers must obey their officers. It is imperative that soldiers ______ their officers. 10. (We must remember to give the babysitter certain phone numbers to call in case of emergency.)
- It is important that the babysitter ______ phone numbers to call in case of emergency.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Using -ever words. (Chart 12-9)

Directions: Complete these sentences by using -ever words.

- 1. As vice-president of international sales, Robert has complete control over his travel schedule. He can travel <u>whenever</u> he wants.
- Robert is free to decide which countries he will visit during his overseas trips. He can travel
 wherever he wants.

- To Ellen, the end justifies the means. She will do ______ she has to do in order to accomplish her objective.

- is the last to leave the room should turn off the lights and lock the door.
- 9. I know that Norman will succeed. He'll do ______ is required to succeed.
- 10. My wife and I are going to ride our bicycles across the country. We will ride for six to seven hours every day, then stop ______ we happen to be at the end of the day.

WWW. R. O. Mainstration

$\diamond\,$ PRACTICE 16. TEST A: Noun clauses. (Chapter 12)

Directions: In each sentence, select the ONE correct answer.

<i>Example:</i> He asked me where <u>B</u> . A. did I live B. I lived	C. do you live D. that I lived		
1. I talked to Bob two weeks ago. I thought h misunderstood him. He asked me where _			
A. is my hat B. my hat was	C. my hat is D. was my hat		
 "The people in the apartment upstairs mus "I don't know how many, but it so A. children do they have 			
B. do they have children	D. they have children		
3. Do you know? I myself have no ic	lea.		
A. how many years the earth is	C. how long is the earth		
B. how old the earth is	D. how much time has been the earth		
4. "There's too much noise in this room. I ca	n't understand what"		
A. is the professor saying	C. that the professor is saying		
B. is saying the professor	D. the professor is saying		
5. When I was little, my father gave me some	advice. He said talk to strangers.		
A. I shouldn't B. that shouldn't	C. don't D. that I don't		
 6. "I didn't expect Ann's husband to be here a "I'm surprised, too. Ann must have insister A. he come B. he comes 			
 7. "Ms. Wright, can you give me a little extra help typing some letters today?" "Sorry, I can't. The boss has an urgent report for me to write. She demanded that it on her desk by 5 P.M. today." 			
A. was B. will be	C. is D. be		
8. "Did you tell Carol where us this evening?" "Yes, I did. I can't understand why she is late."			
A. should she meet	C. she meets		
B. she to meet	D. to meet		
9. A fortune-teller predicted inherit a A. that I would B. that I	lot of money before the end of the year. C. what I will D. what I		
	e job, but we don't know why he left his last job." Is policy disagreement with his boss last January." C. what he'd had D. that what he had		
11. "Is it true that you fell asleep in class yester			
"Unfortunately, yes is unbelievab			
A. That I could do such a thing itB. That I could do such a thing	C. I could do such a thing it D. I could do such a thing		
D. That I could do such a thing	D. I Could do Such a milig		

12.	"Officer, can you tell me how to get to Springfield?" "Sure. What part of Springfield to go to?"			
	A. do you want	B. you want	C. that you want	D. where you want
13.	'Is it true the law says there is no smoking in restaurants in this city?"			
	A. that what	B. what	C. if	D. that
14.	prompt is important to our boss.			
	A. A person is		C. If a person is	
	B. Is a person		D. Whether or not a person is	
15.	A scientific observer of wildlife must note every detail of how in their environme their eating and sleeping habits, their social relationships, and their methods of self-protection.			
	A. do animals live	B. live animals	C. do live animals	D. animals live
16.	16. The mystery movie was clever and suspenseful. The audience couldn't guess committed the murder until the surprise ending.			
	A. who he	B. who had	C. that who	D. that
17.	How do you like your new school? Tell me			
	A. who in your class is		C. who is in your class	
	B. who your class is in		D. your class who is in it	
18.	"What do you recommend about this tax problem?" "I strongly suggest that we consult an expert as soon as possible."			
	A. do we do	B. we will do	C. we do	D. should we do
19.	The college does not grant degrees simply to pays the cost of tuition; the student must satisfy the academic requirements.			
	A. whoever	B. who	C. whomever	D. whoever that
20.	"What are you going to buy in this store?" "Nothing want is much too expensive."			
	A. That I	record and the construction of the second	C. That what I	D. What do I

MMM. OT. OILDIST. MORTOLIN

$\diamond\,$ PRACTICE 17. TEST B: Noun clauses. (Chapter 12)

Directions: In each sentence, select the ONE correct answer.

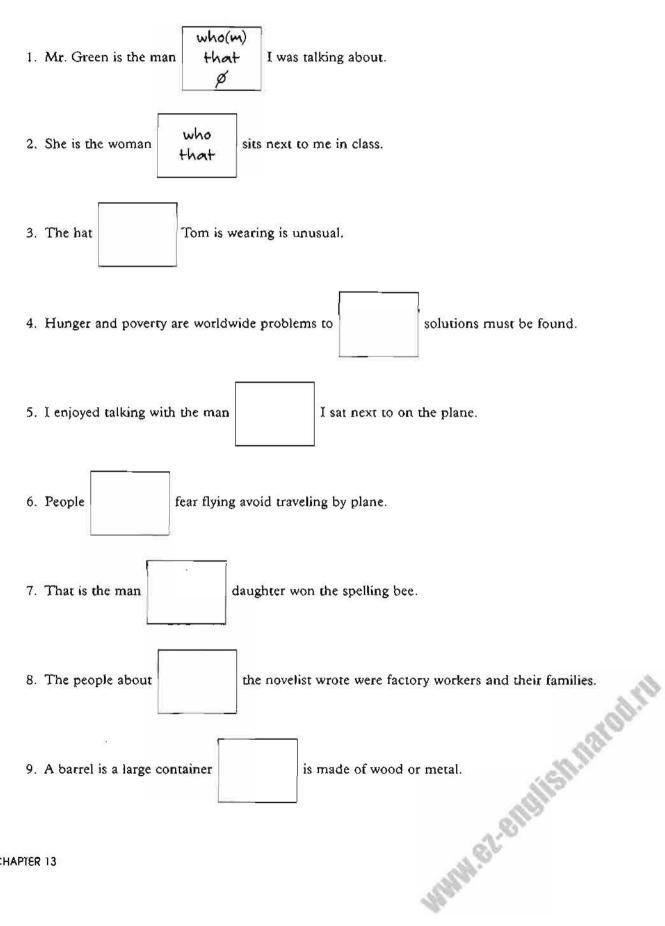
Exc	A. did I live B.	<u>B</u> . I lived	C.	do you live	D. that I lived
1.	"Does anybody know "Your guess is as good as r		d?"		
	A. how long this plane v		C.	how long will this	plane be
	B. how long will be this			that how long this	-
		pranc	2.	and non long and	plane will be
2.	"This restaurant is very ex "It is, but order w		y is	a very special occa	ision."
	A. what is it you		C.	whatever you	
	B. what do you		D.	whatever you do	
3	Why did Beth ask you	a hisysle?			
у.	A. that if you had B.	=	C.	that you had	D. if you had
	((1177) 1' 1			1	-
4.	"What did your grammar t "I did badly on the last tes				
	A. said why hadn't I	t, one st		said why I hadn't	
	B. asked why hadn't I			asked why I hadn'	°+
	D. asked why hadn't I		D.	askeu wily i flaufi	L
5.	"Why are you staring out t "Nothing."	he window? Wha	t	about?"	
	A. you are thinking		C.	are you thinking	
	B. you think		D.	do you are thinkin	ng
6.	"I can't decide what color "You should choose				
	A. whichever that B.	-			D. that what
7.	"Did you remember to tell "Oh, my gosh! I complete			should bring to the	meeting tomorrow?"
	A. that B.	what	C.	if	D. that what
8.	"My aunt has been feeling "I think so can c		ohys	ical symptoms is a	-
	A. Depression		C.	That depression	
	B. That depression it		D.	It is that depression	on
9.	There was an earthquake of However, because of the de evacuated quickly.	-	-	•	
		will be	C.	be	D. is
10		outout that I ash-	d		ing and lists-
10.	saying was so imp				•
	A. What the woman was	5		That the woman w	
	B. The woman was		D.	What was the wor	nan

11.	"This cake is terrible. "It's my grandmother" A. did I bake		t to tell me how long . C. do I bake	it." D. to bake
12.	"Let's go to to Riverto "Sounds like fun A. How far is	from here?"	C. It how far is	D. How far is it
13.	"Somebody forgot this A. whose is this hat B. whose hat this is			
14.	personal life, and even	asked him h	ad ever used any illega	
	A. that if he	B. that he	C. if or not he	D. whether or not he
15.	It is hoped that all pre about certain among the population A. what we know	diseases is still not su		n from spreading easily
	B. what do we know	v	D. that we know what	at
16.	"Why didn't Henry at "He's been very sick.	His doctor insisted the	at he in bed t	
	A. will stay	B. stayed	C. stays	D. stay
17.	Nobody yet knew wha organized quickly to p A. happens		y against the rising flo	
18.	Did the teacher explai	n how this pr B. can we solve		D. solve
	A. do we solve	D. can we solve	C. 10 Solve	D. solve
19.	from going out into th	e open seas.		not deter the fishing boats
	A. The fact that	B. That fact is that	C. Is fact that	D. The fact is that
20.	wondered what	supposed to do.		imply looked around and
	A. was he	B. am I	C. he was	D. I am



\diamond PRACTICE 2. Basic patterns of adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-4)

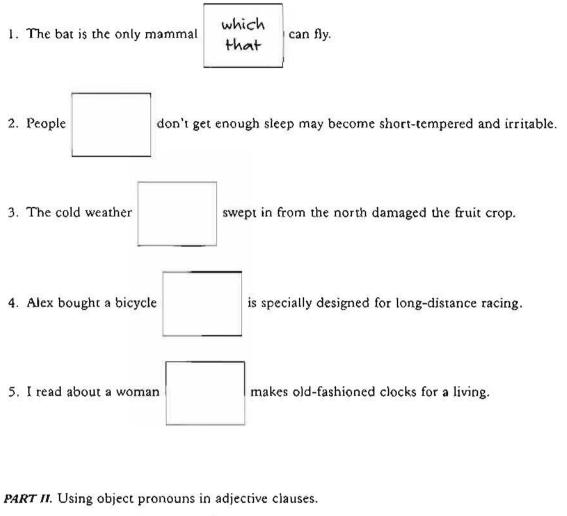
Directions: In the spaces, write all the pronouns possible to complete each sentence. Write $\boldsymbol{\emptyset}$ if the sentence is correct without adding a pronoun.

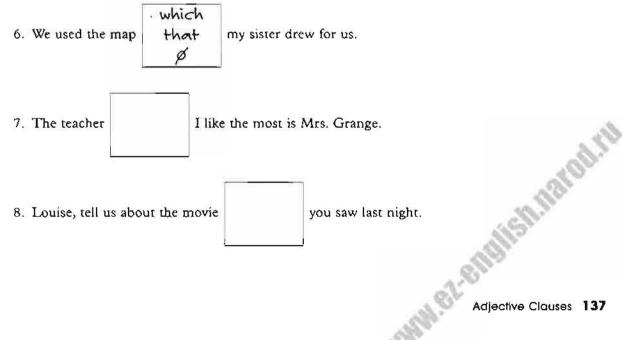


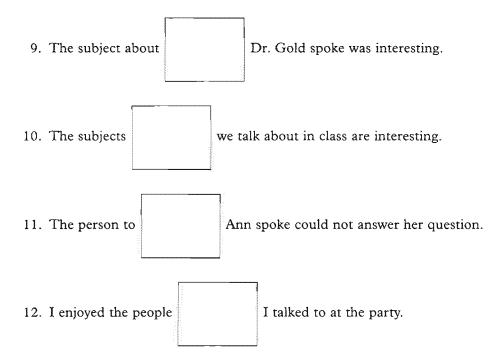
\Diamond PRACTICE 3. Basic patterns of adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-4)

Directions: Write all the pronouns possible to complete each sentence. Write Ø if the sentence is correct without adding a pronoun.

PART I. Using subject pronouns in adjective clauses.







\diamond PRACTICE 4. Adjective clause patterns. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-4)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using all possible forms. Use (b) as an adjective clause.

- 1. (a) Louis knows the woman. (b) The woman is meeting us at the airport. \rightarrow Louis knows the woman $\begin{cases} who \\ that \end{cases}$ is meeting us at the airport.
- 2. (a) The chair is an antique. (b) Sally inherited it from her grandmother.
- 3. (a) The bench was wet. (b) I sat on it.
- 4. (a) The man finished the job in four days. (b) I hired him to paint my house.
- 5. (a) I miss seeing the old woman. (b) She used to sell flowers on that street corner.
- 6. (a) The architect is brilliant. (b) Mario works with him.
- 7. (a) Mary tutors students. (b) They need extra help in geometry.
- 8. (a) I took a picture of the rainbow. (b) It appeared in the sky after the shower.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Adjective clauses: using whose. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using whose in an adjective clause.

- (a) Do you know the man?
 (b) His car is parked over there.
 → Do you know the man whose car is parked over there?
- 2. (a) I know a woman. (b) Her name is May Day.
- 3. (a) The people were very hospitable. (b) We visited their home.
- 4. (a) The school principal walked down the hallway to find the boy. (b) His parents had been injured in an automobile accident.
- 5. (a) Mrs. Lake is the teacher. (b) I enjoy her class the most.
- 6. (a) Any company is stifling the creativity of its workforce. (b) Their employees are in constant fear of losing their jobs.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Adjective clauses: using where and when. (Charts 13-7 and 13-8)

Directions: Begin your response with "That is " Use where or when in an adjective clause.

Example: You were born in that city. Response: That is the city where I was born.

- 1. We have class in that room.
- 2. We ate dinner at that restaurant.
- 3. Anna works in that building
- 4. I was born in that year.
- 5. You eat lunch at that cafeteria.
- 6. The monsoons arrive in that month.
- 7. Alex lives on that street.
- 8. You spent your vacation on that island.
- 9. You went swimming in that lake.
- 10. You grew up in that town.
- 11. The space flight to Mars is scheduled to leave on that day.
- 12. The earthquake occurred in that country.
- 13. The examination will be given in that room.
- 14. You lived in that city until you were ten years old.
- 15. You felt the happiest at that time.

\diamond PRACTICE 7. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 \rightarrow 13-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer or answers.

1.	Yoko told me about st	tudents <u>A, D</u> hav	ve taken the entrance e	xam 13 times.
	A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that
2.	The secretary <u>B, C</u> ,	<u>D</u> I talked to didn't	know where the meetin	ng was.
	A. which	B. whom	C. that	D. Ø
3.	You need to talk to a			-
	A. whose	B. which	C. whom	D. Ø
4.	Bob is the kind of per			
	A. who	B. whom	C. that	D. him
5.	He is a person	friends trust him.		
	A. who	B. his	C. that	D. whose
6.	I'm looking for an ele	ctric can opener	also can sharpen k	nives.
	A. who	B. which	C. that	D. Ø
7.	People live ir	n glass houses shouldn	't throw stones.*	
	A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. Ø
8.	The problems	_ Tony has seem insur	mountable.	
	A. what	B. he	C. that	D. Ø

^{*}This is an idiom that means people shouldn't criticize others for faults they themselves have. For example, a lazy person shouldn't criticize another person for being lazy.

9.	The man I in	ntroduced you to last n	ight may be the next p	president of the university.
	A. which	B. whom	C. that	D. Ø
10.	Cathy is trustworthy.	She's a person upon _	you can alway	s depend.
	A. who	B. whom	C. that	D. Ø
11.	Your career should fo	cus on a field in	you are genuinely i	nterested.
	A. which	B. what	C. that	D. Ø
12.	People outlo	ok on life is optimistic	are usually happy peo	ple.
	A. whose	B. whom	C. that	D. which

PRACTICE 8. Adjective clauses: subject-verb agreement. (Charts 13-1 and 13-2; Chapter 6)

Directions: Choose the correct verb in italics.

- 1. There are three students in my class who speaks, (speak) French.
- 2. There is one student in my class who speaks, speak Greek.
- 3. The patients who *is, are* treated at City Hospital *doesn't, don't* need to have private physicians.
- 4. The courses this school offers, offer is, are listed in the catalog.
- 5. A pedometer is an instrument that *measures, measure* the distance a person *walks, walk.*
- 6. People who *suffers, suffer* from extreme shyness can sometimes overcome their problem by taking a public speaking class.
- 7. In the months that has, have passed since the accident, Robert has regained the use of his legs.
- 8. Malnutrition and illiteracy are among the problems in the world that *has, have* no simple solutions.
- 9. Most advertisements are directed toward adults and teenagers, but you can see commercials on television that *is, are* aimed at prompting children to persuade their parents to buy certain products.
- 10. The requirements of the school as written in the catalog *states, state* that all students who *wishes, wish* to attend must take an entrance exam.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)

Directions: Circle YES if the adjective clause requires commas and add them in the appropriate places. Circle NO if the adjective clause does not require commas.

- 1. YES (NO) I made an appointment with a doctor who is considered an expert on eye disorders.
- 2. (YES) NO I made an appointment with Dr. Raven, who is considered an expert on eye disorders.
- 3. YES NO The car that Al bought had had three previous owners, but it was in excellent condition.
- 4. YES NO We thoroughly enjoyed the music which we heard at the concert last Sunday.

- 5. YES NO Bogota which is the capital of Colombia is a cosmopolitan city.
- 6. YES NO They climbed Mount Rainier which is in the State of Washington twice last year.
- 7. YES NO Emeralds which are valuable gemstones are mined in Colombia.
- 8. YES NO The company offered the position to John whose department performed best this year.
- 9. YES NO On our trip to Africa we visited Nairobi which is near several fascinating game reserves and then traveled to Egypt to see the pyramids.
- 10. YES NO I think the waiter who took our order used to work at Captain Bob's Restaurant.
- 11. YES NO Someone who understands physics better than I do is going to have to help you.
- 12. YES NO Larry was very close to his only brother who was a famous social historian.
- 13. YES NO Violent tropical storms that occur in western Asia are called typhoons.
- 14. YES NO Similar storms that occur on the Atlantic side of the Americas are called hurricanes rather than typhoons.
- 15. YES NO A typhoon which is a violent tropical storm can cause great destruction.
- 16. YES NO According to the news report, the typhoon that threatened to strike the Indonesian coast has moved away from land and toward open water.

♦ PRACTICE 10. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)

Directions: Choose the correct answer or answers.

1. Ms. Donaldson, <u>A</u> teaches linguistics at the university, recently received recognition for her research on the use of gestures in communication.							
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø			
2. A woman <u>A, C</u> research.	teaches linguist	ics at the university r	received an award	for outstanding			
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E.Ø			
3. The earth, sun.	is the fifth larges	st planet in the solar	system, is the thirc	l planet from the			
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø			
-	nillion was awarded his research on the	to Dr. Sato, common cold.	_ has impressed th	e scientific			
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø			
5. The award for the entire team respe	•	ayer was won by a pla	ayer the c	oaches and the			
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø			
6. The award was w	on by Dennis John	son, the coa	ch highly respects.				
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø			
7. My accountant, _ this year.	understand	ls the complexities of	f the tax system, is	doing my taxes			
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E.Ø			
		eighborhood element warmly received in th	•	ecision,			
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø			

9. Our office needs	s a secretary	_ knows how to use various word processing progra						
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø				
10. The winner of the Nobel Prize in physics dedicated the honor to his high school physics teacher, had been an inspiration during his early years.								
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø				
11. The consultant	was hired to	o advise us never rea	lly understood our	situation.				
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø				
12. I gave the check to Oliver, promptly cashed it and spent all the money before the day was out.								
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E. Ø				
13. The check	I gave Oliver wa	s for work he'd done	for me.					
A. who	B. whom	C. which	D. that	E.Ø				

O PRACTICE 11. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)

Directions: Choose the correct explanation of the meaning of each sentence.

- 1. The students, who attend class five hours per day, have become quite proficient in their new language.
 - (a) All of the students attend class for five hours per day.
 - b. Only some of the students attend class for five hours per day.
- 2. The students who attend class five hours per day have become quite proficient in their new language.
 - a. All of the students attend class for five hours per day.
 - (b.) Only some of the students attend class for five hours per day.
- 3. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists, who were to begin playing.
 - a. All of the violinists were to begin playing.
 - b. Only some of the violinists were to begin playing.
- 4. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists who were to begin playing.
 - a. All of the violinists were to begin playing.
 - b. Only some of the violinists were to begin playing.
- 5. I put the vase on top of the TV set, which is in the living room.
 - a. I have more than one TV set.
 - b. I have only one TV set.
- 6. I put the vase on top of the TV set that is in the living room.
 - a. I have more than one TV set.
 - b. I have only one TV set.
- 7. Trees which lose their leaves in winter are called deciduous trees.
 - a. All trees lose their leaves in winter.
 - b. Only some trees lose their leaves in winter.
- 8. Pine trees, which are evergreen, grow well in a cold climate.
 - a. All pine trees are evergreen.
 - b. Only some pine trees are evergreen.

\diamond PRACTICE 12. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Charts 13-10 \rightarrow 13-13)

Directions: Circle YES if the adjective clause requires commas and add the commas in the appropriate places. Circle NO if the adjective clause does not require commas.

- 1. (YES) NO Thirty people, two of whom were members of the crew, were killed in the ferry accident.
- 2. YES (NO) I'm trying to convince my mother to buy a small car which has front-wheel drive instead of a large car with rear-wheel drive.
- 3. YES NO Over 500 students took the entrance examination the results of which will be posted in the administration building at the end of the month.
- 4. YES NO The newspapers carried the story of an accident in which four pedestrians were injured.
- 5. YES NO The newly married couple that lives next door just moved here from California.
- 6. YES NO The new supervisor was not happy with his work crew none of whom seemed interested in doing quality work.
- 7. YES NO My oldest brother in whose house I lived for six months when I was ten has been a father to me in many ways.
- 8. YES NO Tom is always interrupting me which makes me mad.
- 9. YES NO To express the uselessness of worrying, Mark Twain once said, "I've had a lot of problems in my life most of which never happened."

\diamond PRACTICE 13. Expressions of quantity in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-11)

Directions: Combine the sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

- 1. I received two job offers. I accepted neither of them. \rightarrow I received two job offers, neither of which I accepted.
- 2. I have three brothers. Two of them are professional athletes.
- 3. Jerry is engaged in several business ventures. Only one of them is profitable.
- 4. The United States of America is a union of fifty states. The majority of them are located east of the Mississippi River.
- 5. The two women have already dissolved their business partnership. Both of them are changing careers.
- 6. Tom is proud of his success. Much of it has been due to hard work, but some of it has been due to good luck.

♦ PRACTICE 14. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.

- 1. Only a few of the movies that are shown at the Gray Theater are suitable for children. \rightarrow Only a few of the movies shown at the Gray Theater are suitable for children.
- 2. We visited Madrid, which is the capital of Spain.. \rightarrow We visited Madrid, the capital of Spain.
- 3. The couple who live in the house next door are both college professors.
- 4. Astronomy, which is the study of planets and stars, is one of the world's oldest sciences.

- 5. Only a small fraction of the eggs that are laid by a fish actually hatch and survive to adulthood.
- 6. Jasmine, which is a viny plant with fragrant flowers, grows only in warm places.
- 7. Arizona, which was once thought to be a useless desert, is today a rapidly growing industrial and agricultural state.
- 8. Simon Bolivar, who was a great South American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.
- 9. In hot weather, many people enjoy lemonade, which is a drink that is made from lemon juice, water, and sugar.
- 10. I was awakened by the sound of laughter which came from the room which was next to mine at the motel.
- 11. Few tourists ever see a jaguar, which is a spotted wild cat that is native to tropical America.

◇ PRACTICE 15. Punctuating adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Add commas where necessary.

- 1. A national holiday has been established in memory of Martin Luther King, Jr. the leader of the civil rights movement in the United States in the 1950s and 1960s.
- 2. Neil Armstrong the first person to set foot on the moon reported that the surface was fine and powdery.
- 3. Mark Twain is an author known far and wide as one of the greatest American humorists.
- 4. Susan B. Anthony one of the first leaders of the campaign for women's rights worked tirelessly during her lifetime to gain the right to vote for women.

\diamond PRACTICE 16. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Combine the sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective phrase.

- 1. Louisville was founded in 1778. It is the largest city in Kentucky. → Louisville, the largest city in Kentucky, was founded in 1778.
- 2. John Quincy Adams was born on July 11, 1767. He was the sixth president of the United States.
- 3. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are used in Helsinki. It is the capital of Finland.
- 4. The Washington National Monument is a famous landmark in the nation's capital. It is a towering obelisk made of white marble.
- 5. Honolulu has consistently pleasant weather. It is best known to the traveler for Waikiki Beach.
- 6. Libya is a leading producer of oil. It is a country in North Africa.

\diamond PRACTICE 17. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Change all of the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.

- 1. None of the pedestrians who were walking up and down the busy street stopped to help or even inquire about the elderly man who was slumped in the doorway of an apparently unoccupied building.
 - \rightarrow None of the pedestrians walking up and down the busy street stopped to help or even inquire about the elderly man slumped in the doorway of an apparently unoccupied building.
- 2. Food that passes from the mouth to the stomach goes through a tube which is called the esophagus.
- 3. Animals that are born in a zoo generally adjust to captivity better than those that are captured in the wild.
- 4. The children attended a special movie program that consisted of cartoons that featured Donald Duck and Mickey Mouse.
- 5. One of the most important foodstuffs in the world is flour, which is a fine powder that is made by grinding wheat or other grains.
- 6. Nero, who was Emperor of Rome from A.D. 54 to 68, is believed to have murdered both his mother and his wife.
- 7. The conclusion which is presented in that book states that most of the automobiles which are produced by American industry in the 1960s and '70s had some defect.
- 8. Pictures that showed the brutality of war entered the living rooms of millions of TV watchers on the nightly news.
- 9. The Indians who lived in Peru before the discovery of the New World by Europeans belonged to the Incan culture.
- 10. My uncle Elias, who is a restaurant owner, often buys fish and shellfish from boats that are docked at the local pier. Customers come from miles around to dine on a seafood feast that is considered to be the best in all of the northeastern United States.
- 11. Hundreds of volunteers went to a northern village yesterday to reinforce firefighters who are trying to save a settlement which is threatened by a forest fire. The fire started when a cigarette ignited oil which was leaking from a machine which is used to cut timber.
- 12. Researchers have developed a way to mark genes so that they glow in the dark, which is a technique that scientists can use to follow specific genetic activity of cells which are within plants and animals. This development, which was announced by the National Science Foundation, which is the sponsor of the research, should prove useful to scientists who study the basic functions of organisms.

- ◇ PRACTICE 18. Error analysis: adjective clauses and phrases. (Charts 13-2 → 13-15) Directions: All of the following sentences contain errors in adjective clauses, adjective phrases, or punctuation. Find the errors and correct them, using any appropriate form.
 - 1. When we walked past the theater, there were a lot of people waited in a long line outside the box office.
 - 2. Students who living on campus are close to their classrooms and the library.
 - 3. If you need any information, see the librarian sits at the central desk on the second floor.
 - 4. My oldest sister is Anna is 21 years old.
 - 5. Hiroko was born in Sapporo that is a city in Japan.
 - 6. Patrick who is my oldest brother. He is married and has one child.
 - 7. The person sits next to me is someone I've never met him.
 - 8. My favorite place in the world is a small city is located on the southern coast of Brazil.
 - 9. Last Saturday I attended a party giving by one of my friends. My friend, who his apartment is in another town, was very glad I could come.
 - 10. Dr. Darnell was the only person to whom I wanted to see.
 - 11. There are eighty students, are from all over the world, study English at this school.
 - 12. The people who we met them on our trip last May are going to visit us in October.
 - 13. Dianne Jones that used to teach Spanish has organized a tour of Central America for senior citizens.
 - 14. I've met many people since I came here who some of them are from my country.
 - 15. People can speak English can be understood in many countries.

♦ PRACTICE 19. TEST A: Adjective clauses. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Exc	ample: Friends are peo A. who is	ople <u>B</u> close to u B. who are		D. which are
1.	"Who is eligible for the "Anyonesche A. who has a	olastic record is above	average can apply for C. who's a	_
2.				e much confidence in him 1 confidence
3.	"Is April twenty-first "No, the twenty-second. A. you'll arrive the	nd."	C. on that you'll arr	ive
	B. when you'll arri	ve	D. when you'll arrive	e on
4.	The severe drought _	occurred last su	ummer ruined the cor	n crop.
	A. that it	B. which it	C. it	D. that
5	Florida the	Sunshine State, attract	e many tourists every	ueo r
Э.	A. is	B. known as		D. that is known as
6.	The new shopping m about anything you m	all is gigantic. It's adve night want to buy.	ertised as a place	you can find just
	A. where	B. which	C. in where	D. in that
7.	A. that she hardly	een arranged by her fa knows him ly knows him	C. she hardly knows	
8.	People who exercise f	requently have greater	physical endurance th	an those
0.	A. who doesn't		C. which don't	
0	"To this the address to) you want the	notron cont?"	
9.	A. where	B. that	C. which	D. whom
10.	-	ne advertising agency, _	-	
	A. which	B. that	C. who	D. that it
11.	That book is by a fan years.	nous anthropologist. It	's about the people in	Samoa for two
	A. that she lived		C. among whom she	
	B. that she lived ar	nong them	D. where she lived a	mong them
12.	The missing man's fa activities.	mily is desperately seel	xing anyone i	nformation about his
	A. has	B. having	C. who have	D. have

13.	The publishers expect in Latin Ame		hy of Simon Bolivar will be bought by people				
	A. who are intereste	d	C. interested				
	B. are interested		D. they are interested	Ł			
14.	I have always wanted t	o visit Paris,	of France.				
	A. is the capital		C. that is the capital				
	B. which the capital	is	D. the capital				
15.	The chemistry book _	was a little exg	pensive.				
	A. that I bought it	B. I bought that	C. what I bought	D. I bought			
16.	"Have you ever met th "No. Who is he?"	e man over t	here?"				
	A. stands		C. is standing				
	B. standing		D. who he is standin	g			
17.	"Do you have the bool	k the teacher	?"				
	"Yes, I do."						
	A. that it belongs to	i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	C. to which belongs				
	B. to which belongs	to	D. that belongs to				
18.	The voters were overw taxes.	helmingly against the	candidate pro	oposals called for higher			
	A. who his	B. whose	C. whom he had	D. that his			
19.	"Do you remember M "I certainly do."	rs. Goddard,	taught us English con	nposition?"			
	A, who	B. whom	C. that	D. which			
20.	I have three brothers,	are businessr	nen.				
	A. that all of them		C. all of whom				
	B. who they all		D. who all of them				



♦ PRACTICE 20. TEST B: Adjective clauses. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

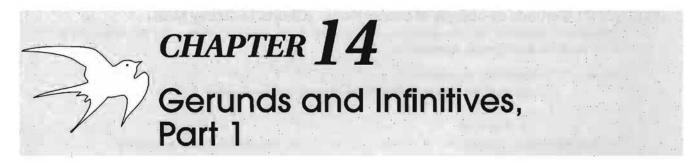
Exc	<i>ample:</i> Friends are pe	ople <u>B</u> close t	o us.	
		B. who are		D. which are
1.	"Were you able to lo "Luckily, yes."	cate the person	wallet you found?"	
	A. which	B. that his	C. whose	D. that's
2.	Some fish is frozen,	but is best.		
	A. fish is fresh		C. fish fresh	
	B. fresh fish		D. fresh fish is cau	ght
3.	"Why do you get up "Because it's the onl		out being interrupted."	
	A. when I can wo		C. when I can wor	•
	B. when I can wor	rk on my book at	D. at when I can w	vork on my book
4.	"You seem so happy	today."		
		ng at a person		ted into medical school!"
	A. who	B. who she	C. whom she	D. whom
5.	"The movie" "What's it about?"	last night was terrif	ic."	
	A. I went	B. I went to it	C. I went to	D. that I went
6.	Many people lost the shelters to care for the			ent needs to establish more
	A. who doesn't	B. who don't	C. which doesn't	D. which don't
7.	The problem	never occurred.		
	A. I hadn't expect		C. that I had expe	cted it
	B. who I had expe		D. I had expected	
8	I had to drive to the	factory to pick up m	y brother, car	wouldn't start
0.	A. who his	B. who	C. who's	D. whose
				
9.	I read a book about	-	0 1 0 1	• . •
	A. is a Spanish pa		C. who a Spanish	-
	B. a Spanish pain	ler	D. that is a Spanis	n panner
10.	outstretched hands of	of his partner and fell	l to his death.	ified when he missed the
	A. watched	B. watch	C. watching	D. were watching
11.	"My writing has imp "Mine has, too. All			
	A. whom Mr. Day	ris teaches them	C. that Mr. Davis	teaches them
	B. which Mr. Dav	is teaches	D. Mr. Davis teach	nes

12.	 "Have you seen the place the graduation ceremony will be held?" "Yes. It's big enough to hold 5,000 people." 						
	A. in that	B. where	C. is where that	D. which			
13.	"How's your class this "Great. I have sevented		speak English	very well."			
	A. who	B. those	C. whom	D. which			
14.	"Will everyone like the "No. Only people		hropology."				
	A. are	B. who are	C. in whom are	D. that is			
15.	"How did you enjoy yo "It was boring. He tal			us to sleep."			
	A. which	B. that	C. who	D. that he			
16.	My grandfather,	The relative study are stated as a second second second	e and here a filler and here and an and a second				
	A. is	B. that is	C. who is	D. who he is			
17.	"Is Dr. Brown the per-	son you wish	to speak?"				
	A. that	B. whom	C. to that	D. to whom			
18.	In the movie, a teenag strong-willed father.	er to pursue	a singing career meets	resistance from his			
	A. wants	B. wanted	C. wanting	D. who want			
19.	"Excuse me, but there "Certainly."	is something about _	immediately."				
	A. which I must spe	eak to you	C. that I must speak to you about				
	B. which I must spe	eak to you about it	D. that I must speak	to you			
20.	Little Women,	in 1868, is my sister's	favorite book.				
	A. is a novel publish	ned	C. a novel was public	shed			

B. a novel published

D. was a novel published

WWW.P.C. OHUHSHIM



O PRACTICE 1. Gerunds as objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions followed by gerunds. Use the verbs in the given list. Use each verb only once.

√ ask	have	make	see
break	kill	open	talk
finish	lock	practice	wash

- 1. Instead <u>of asking</u> for help on each arithmetic problem, you should use your book and try to figure out the answers yourself.
- 2. I look forward ______ you next time I'm in town. I'll be sure to let you know ahead of time so that we can plan to get together.
- 3. Alice told us that she was tired ______ the dishes every night.
- 4. The four-year-old was blamed ______ the glass candy dish.
- 5. Because of the bomb scare, no one was allowed in the building. People were prevented _______ the front door by a guard who was stationed there.
- You should listen to other people instead ______ about yourself all the time.
- 7. What do you feel ______ for dinner? Does chicken and rice sound good?
- Frank is an environmentalist who believes animals should be protected from hunters. He objects _______ wild animals for sport.
- 9. Please don't argue ______ your homework. Just do it.
- Marie is responsible ______ all the doors and windows and ______ sure all the lights are turned off before she leaves work in the evening.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Gerunds as objects of prepositions. (Charts 14-2 and 14-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences in column A with the ideas in column B. Be sure to link them with an appropriate preposition.

Example: I thanked my classmate

 \rightarrow I thanked my classmate for helping me with my homework.

Column A

- 1. I thanked my classmate
- 2. The treasurer is responsible
- 3. The students complained . . .
- 4. I apologized
- 5. A bodybuilder is capable
- 6. A teacher is used*
- 7. The rainy weather prevented us . . .
- 8. All of the children participated
- 9. Unauthorized persons are prohibited
- 10. The little girl was excited
- 11. I thanked the flight attendant . . .
- 12. The employees objected

Column B

- A. answer students' questions
- B. get a new doll for her birthday
- \checkmark C. help me with my homework
 - D. lift heavy weights
 - E. get me a pillow
 - F. step on my friend's toe
 - G. enter a military base
 - H. balance the checkbook
 - I. be forced to work overtime
 - J. go on a picnic
 - K. have too many tests
 - L. make decorations for their classroom

\diamond PRACTICE 3. Verbs followed by gerunds. (Charts 14-4 and 14-5)

Directions: Make sentences using the given verbs.

Examples: enjoy + watch \rightarrow Do you enjoy watching old movies on television? mind + have to be \rightarrow I don't mind having to be in class at 8:00 A.M. put off + pack \rightarrow Dan usually puts off packing his suitcase until the very last minute.

- 1. enjoy + take
- 2. avoid + eat
- 3. go + jog
- 4. finish + do
- 5. suggest + change
- 6. consider + go + swim
- 7. stop + cry
- 8. discuss + go + shop
- 9. mention + have to go
- 10. delay + put
- 11. mind + take
- 12. keep + ask
- 13. quit + worry about
- 14. postpone + take
- *COMPARE:

Mary is used to living in a cold climate. = Mary is accustomed to living in a cold climate. Used + to + simple form (infinitive) expresses habitual past activities.

Used + to + -ing means "accustomed to doing something."

Jack used to live in Chicago. = Jack lived in Chicago in the past, but now he doesn't.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Special expressions followed by *-ing.* (Chart 14-6)

Directions: Combine the given ideas into one sentence.

- play soccer . . . spend . . . all yesterday afternoon . . . we
 We spent all yesterday afternoon playing soccer.
- 2. a really good time . . . all of us . . . have . . . play soccer in the park . . . yesterday
- 3. find ... have trouble ... Omar ... my house ... last night
- 4. my bicycle . . . my mother . . . try to steal . . . catch . . . some neighborhood kids . . . yesterday
- 5. at the window . . . stand . . . when the boss walked into the office . . . all of the employees . . . watch the parade on the street below
- 6. my father always said, "... read novels ... your time ... from other kinds of books ... when you could be learning something worthwhile ... don't waste"
- 7. when Mrs. Smith checked on the children last night . . . play a game . . . find . . . instead of sleeping . . . them . . . she
- 8. Susan . . . find . . . when I opened the door . . . I . . . on her bed . . . cry . . . lie

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-1 \rightarrow 14-7)

Directions: Select the correct answer for each sentence.

- 1. Whenever we met, Jack avoided <u>B</u> at me. A. to look B. looking
- Most people enjoy _____ to different parts of the world.
 A. to travel
 B. traveling
- Marjorie needs ______ another job. Her present company is going out of business.
 A. to find B. finding
- 4. May I change the TV channel, or do you want _____ more of this program?A. to watch B. watching
- 5. Joan is considering _____ her major from pre-med studies to psychology.A. to change B. changing
- 6. Although Joe slammed on his brakes, he couldn't avoid ______ the small dog that suddenly darted out in front of his car.
 A. to hit B. hitting
- 7. I hope _____ my autobiography before I die. Do you think anyone would read it?
 A. to write B. writing
- 8. Joyce thanked us for ______ them to dinner and said that they wanted to have us over for dinner next week.
 - A. to invite B. inviting
- 9. If you delay _____ your bills, you will only incur more and more interest charges.
 A. to pay B. paying
- 10. My lawyer advised me not _____ anything further about the accident.A. to say B. saying

11. A procrastinator is one who habitually postpones _____ things — especially tasks that are unpleasant.

A. to do B. doing

- 12. You should plan ______ at the stadium early or you won't be able to get good seats.A. to arrive B. arriving
- 13. My mom asked me _____ up some eggs at the supermarket on my way home from work.A. to pick B. picking
- 14. Nobody has offered ______ the house next door, so I think they're going to lower the price.A. to buy B. buying
- 15. The highway patrol advises ______ the old route through the city because the interstate highway is under major repairs.A. to take B. taking
- 16. Would you mind ______ that apple for me? My arthritis is acting up in my right hand.A. to peel B. peeling
- 17. Stop _____ me! I'll get everything finished before I go to bed. A. to nag B. nagging
- 18. When the university suggested ______ the tuition again, the student senate protested vigorously.
 - A. to raise B. raising
- 19. Are we permitted ______ guests to the ceremony? I'd like to invite my friend to join us.A. to bring B. bringing
- 20. The city council agreed _____ the architect's proposed design for a new parking garage.A. to accept B. accepting

◇ PRACTICE 6. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-7)

Directions: Restate the given sentences. Choose the most appropriate reporting verb in parentheses. Make it active or passive as appropriate. Include an infinitive in the completion and any other necessary words.

- The teacher said to Jim, "Would you give your book to Mary, please?" (ask, tell, order)
 → The teacher _____asked jim to give _____his book to Mary.
- 2. The sign said, "No parking in this area. Violators will be towed away." (invite, warn, force)
 → Drivers were warned not to park in the area.
- Before Bobby went to bed, his father said, "Don't forget to brush your teeth."
 (invite, allow, remind)
 → Before Bobby went to bed, his father ______ his teeth.
- 4. Under the law, drivers and all passengers must wear seat belts while in a moving vehicle. *(encourage, require, permit)*
 - → Drivers and passengers ______ seat belts while in a moving vehicle.

5.	When I asked	the nurse	about my	/ skin	rash,	she	said,	"You	should	consult	a dermat	ologist."
	(ask, permit, ad	dvise)										
	\rightarrow The nurse _							a d	lermato	logist.		

- 6. The fire chief said, "Everyone must leave the building immediately." (order, remind, allow)
 → Everyone _______ the building immediately.
- 7. The instructor said to the students, "You will have exactly one hour to complete the exam." (order, expect, warn)
 - \rightarrow The students _____ the exam in one hour.
- 8. Because he forgot last year, I told my husband several times that he should buy some flowers for his mother on Mother's Day. *(remind, require, allow)*
 - (remind, require, allow) \rightarrow I ______ some flowers for his mother on Mother's Day.
- 9. My garage mechanic said, "You should get a tune-up every 5,000 miles." (ask, order, advise)
 → My garage mechanic ______ a tune-up every 5,000
 - miles.
- 10. The factory manager said to the employees, "Do not come late. If you do, you will lose your jobs."

late.

(ask, warn, encourage) → The employees _____

11. The sign on the side door says, "Do not enter," so we have to use a different door. (ask, permit, force)

- \rightarrow Nobody ______ the side door.
- 12. The little girl said to her father, "Daddy, I really like this tricycle. Can we buy it?" (require, ask, advise)
 - \rightarrow The little girl ______ the tricycle for her.
- 13. We often told our grandfather, "Your experiences as a sailor in the navy were fascinating. You should write a book about them." (remind, encourage, require)
 → We ______ a book about his experiences in the navy.
- 14. The judge said to the defendant, "You must not shout in the courtroom again." (ask, order, encourage)

(ask, order, encourage) \rightarrow The defendant _____ in the courtroom again.

\diamond PRACTICE 7. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-7)

Directions: Report what the speakers say by using a verb from the following list and an infinitive phrase. Use each verb in the list only once. Make your sentence passive if the speaker is not specifically identified.

- opening -	advise	√ ask	invite	remind
10000000	allow	encourage	order	warn

- 1. During the water shortage, someone in authority said to the public, "Curtail your use of water as much as possible."
 - \rightarrow During the water shortage, the public was asked to curtail its use of water as much as possible.
- 2. Laura said to her roommate, "Don't forget to set your alarm clock for 6:00."

- 3. Mrs. Jones said to the children, "Each of you may have one piece of candy."
- 4. The doctor said to my father, "It would be best if you limited your sugar consumption."
- 5. My parents often said to me, "Good for you! It's good to be independent!"
- 6. Someone said to the children, "Don't swim in the lake without an adult present."
- 7. The police officer shouted to the reckless driver, "Pull over!"
- 8. Rose said to Jerry, "I'd like you to come to my house Sunday night to meet my parents."

\diamond PRACTICE 8. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Chart 14-8)

Directions: Choose the best answer or answers. In some cases, BOTH answers are correct.

- 1. John was trying <u>B</u> the door with the wrong key. A. unlocking B. to unlock
- 2. The audience began A, B before the curtains closed. A. clapping B. to clap
- The soccer teams continued ______ even though it began to snow.
 A. playing B. to play
- 4. We like _____ outside when the weather is warm and sunny. A. eating B. to eat
- 5. We began ______ to the news when we heard the Olympics mentioned. A. listening B. to listen
- 6. I was just beginning _____ asleep when the phone rang.A. falling B. to fall
- 7. I really hate _____ late for appointments. A. being B. to be
- 8. The cake was starting _____ when I took it out of the oven. A. burning B. to burn
- 9. She's so impatient! She can't stand _____ in line for anything.A. waiting B. to wait
- 10. I prefer _____ my bicycle to work because the automobile traffic is too heavy.

 A. riding
 B. to ride
- 11. Lillian prefers ______ to taking the bus.A. walking B. to walk
- 12. Tim prefers _____ than to jog for exercise. A. walking B. to walk
- 13. The baby loves _____ in the car. A. riding B. to ride
- 14. Near the end of the performance, the audience began ______ their feet on the floor.A. stamping B. to stamp

15. The audience began	to clap and their feet on the floor.			
A. stamping	B. (to) stamp			
-	clapping and their feet on the floor. B. (to) stamp			
•	rgets the stove when he is finished cooking. B. to turn off			
 Alex will never forget A. taking 	B. to take			
19. Would you please ren them?	nember away all the tapes when you're finished listening to			
A. putting	B. to put			
20. I remember	I remember them away when I finished with them last night.			
A. putting	B. to put			
21. I remember	Bolivia for the first time. It's a beautiful country.			
A. visiting	B. to visit			
22. What am I going to c today.	lo? I forgot my calculus text, and I need it for the review			
A. bringing	B. to bring			
23. My boss regrets	his secretary now that she is gone.			
	B. to fire			
24. The letter said, "I reg A. informing	ret you that your application has been denied." B. to inform			
her a letter.	get in touch with Shannon. I tried her. Then I tried I tried her. Then I tried			
Nothing worked. A. calling writi	ng leaving B. to call to write to leave			
	my bills on time, but sometimes I'm a little late. B. to pay			

\diamond PRACTICE 9. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Work with another person. One of you should read the beginning of the sentence, and the other, without looking at the book, should supply the correct response: to do it or doing it. (If you are studying alone, cover up the answers in parentheses and check yourself as you go.)

Example: A: I enjoy B: doing it

D doing it.	
1. I dislike	(doing it.)
2. She was ordered	(to do it.)
3. I urged my friend	(to do it.)
4. Can he afford	(to do it?)

5.	We all discussed	(doing it.)
6.	The institute requires us	(to do it.)
7.	We will eventually complete	(doing it.)
8.	The whole class practiced	(doing it.)
9.	I really don't care	(to do it.)
10.	My friend recommended not	(doing it.)
11.	She was expected	(to do it.)
12.	Bill resented his roommate	(doing it.)
13.	Did the criminal admit	(doing it?)
14.	Please allow us	(to do it.)
15.	The whole family anticipated	(doing it.)
16.	No one recollected	(doing it.)
17.	Did you risk	(doing it?)
18.	Did they recall	(doing it?)
19.	My friend challenged me	(to do it.)
20.	The teacher postponed	(doing it.)
21.	Do you mind	(doing it?)
22.	Why did he pretend	(to do it?)
23.	The teacher arranged	(to do it.)
24.	The regulations permit us	(to do it.)
25.	The dentist wanted to delay	(doing it.)
26.	Can anyone learn	(to do it?)
27.	Did your roommate offer	(to do it?)
	He doesn't deny	(doing it.)
	Somehow, the dog managed	(to do it.)
30.	Everyone avoided	(doing it.)
	The boy dared Al	(to do it.)
	Our teacher threatened	(to do it.)
33.	The contestant practiced	(doing it.)
	My friend consented	(to do it.)
35.	I miss	(doing it.)

\diamond PRACTICE 10. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-2 \rightarrow 14-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, using the words in parentheses.

- 1. The store offered <u>to refund</u> the money I paid for the book I returned. (refund)
- 2. Don't pretend <u>to be</u> what you aren't. (be)
- 3. I persuaded my brother-in-law not ______ that old car. (buy)
- 4. Annie denied ______ the brick through the window. (throw)
- 5. My father expects me _____ high marks in school. (get)
- 7. We are planning ______ several historical sites in Moscow. (visit)

- 8. There appears ______ no way to change our reservation for the play at this late date. (be)
- 9. For some strange reason, I keep ______ today is Saturday. (think)
- 10. All of the members agreed ______ the emergency meeting. (attend)
- 11. I've arranged ______ work early tomorrow. (leave)
- 12. Even though Anna had never cut anyone's hair before, she readily consented______ her husband's hair. (cut)



- 13. Mary decided ______ her friend's critical remarks. (ignore)
- 14. My roommate says I have a terrible voice, so I stopped ______ in the shower. (sing)
- 15. Did the doctor mention _____ any foods in particular? (avoid)
- 16. The cashier always remembers ______ the money in her cash register each day before she leaves work. *(count)*
- 17. Let's hurry! We must finish ______ the office before 3:00 today. (paint)
- 18. The student with the highest average deserves _____ an "A." (get)
- 19. I appreciate your ______ for my dinner. I'll buy next time. (pay)
- 20. The physically handicapped child struggled ______ up with the other children on the playground, but she couldn't. (*keep*)
- 21. Janice misses ______ walks with her father in the evening now that she has moved away from home. (take)

- 22. The customs official demanded ______ what was inside the gift-wrapped box. (know)
- 23. We've discussed ______ to New York in the fall, but I'm worried about our children having to adjust to a new school system and new friends. *(move)*
- 24. Children shouldn't be allowed ______ violent programs on TV. (watch)
- 25. In a fit of anger, I ordered my neighbor _____ his mule off my property. (keep)

\diamond PRACTICE 11. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-2 \rightarrow 14-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, using the words in parentheses.

- 1. The doctor was forced <u>to operate</u> immediately to save the patient's life. (operate)
- 2. The newspaper hired Bill ______ pictures of the championship match between the two boxers. *(shoot)*
- 3. Most passengers dislike ______ to sit in small, uncomfortable seats on transoceanic flights. (have)
- 4. I choose ______ to Stanford University for my undergraduate studies. (go)
- 5. I must drive more carefully. I can't risk ______ another speeding ticket. (get)
- 6. All of the members agreed ______ the emergency meeting. (attend)
- 7. Jack promised ______ to the meeting. (come)
- 8. The sign warns you not ______ right on a red light. (turn)
- 9. Did Dick mean ______ Sue about the surprise party, or did it slip out accidentally? *(tell)*
- 10. You must keep ______ on the computer until you understand how to use all of the programs. *(practice)*
- 11. Our class volunteered ______ the classroom during the maintenance workers' strike. *(clean)*
- 12. When you get through ______ the newspaper, I could use your help in the kitchen. (read)
- 13. I think we should delay ______ these reports to the main office. (send)
- 14. The judge demanded ______ the original document, not the photocopy. (see)
- 15. After hearing the weather report, I advise you not _______ skiing this afternoon. (go)
- 16. George is interested in _____ an art class. (take)
- 17. I was furious. I threatened never ______ to him again. (speak)
- 18. My parents appreciated ______ the thank-you note you sent them. (receive)

- 19. The committee is planning ______ next Friday. (meet)
- 20. If I don't leave on the 15th, I will miss ______ home in time for my mother's birthday party. (get)

21. I know you're anxious to get out of here and get back home, but you should seriously consider ______ in the hospital a few more days. (stay)

- 22. Alex refused ______ for his rude behavior. (apologize)
- 23. When I was in the army, I had to swear _____ my senior officers' orders. (obey)
- 24. I don't recall ______ your dictionary anywhere in the apartment. Maybe you left it in the classroom. *(see)*
- 25. Mrs. Lind required the children ______ off their muddy boots before they came into the house. *(take)*

◇ PRACTICE 12. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

- 1. The groom anticipated <u>A</u> the wedding ceremony. A. enjoying B. to enjoy
- The department store agreed _____ back the damaged radio.
 A. taking B. to take
- Would the doctor mind _____ some time talking to me after the examination?
 A. spending B. to spend
- We miss _____ Professor Sanders in Asian history this quarter.
 A. having B. to have
- 5. Dan failed _____ the firefighter's examination and was quite upset.A. passing B. to pass
- 6. The travelers anticipated _____ safely at their destination.A. arriving B. to arrive
- 7. She expects _____ her baby at the new hospital.A. delivering B. to deliver
- 8. The bad weather caused us _____ our connecting flight to Rome.A. missing B. to miss
- 9. We dislike _____ dinner at 9:00 P.M. A. eating B. to eat
- 10. Most of the students completed ______ their research papers on time.A. writing B. to write
- 11. My niece hopes _____ with me to Disneyland next April.A. traveling B. to travel

- This note will remind me _____ the chicken for dinner tomorrow night.
 A. defrosting B. to defrost
- 13. Willy denied ______ a whole bag of chocolate chip cookies before lunch.A. eating B. to eat
- 14. You must swear _____ the truth in a court of law.A. telling B. to tell
- 15. I didn't mean _____ him. A. interrupting B. to interrupt

O PRACTICE 13. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Create sentences from the following verb combinations. Select any tense for the first verb, but use a gerund or infinitive for the second verb. Include a (PRO)NOUN OBJECT if necessary.

Examples: can't afford + buy \rightarrow I can't afford to buy a new car for at least another year. dare + dive \rightarrow My friends dared me to dive into the pool.

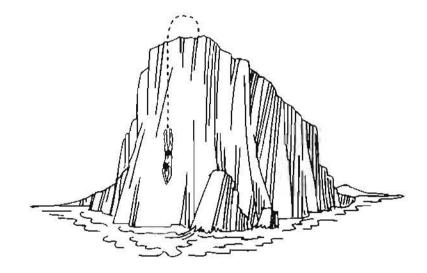
- 1. keep + play
- 2. direct + save
- 3. regret + tell
- 4. manage + get
- 5. remind + take
- 6. be used to + stay
- 7. persuade + not buy
- 8. mention + give
- 9. suggest + go
- 10. can't imagine + travel
- 11. recommend + take
- 12. convince + go + swim
- 13. miss + be
- 14. not appreciate + hear
- 15. fail + tell
- 16. resent + be
- 17. resist + eat
- 18. claim + know
- 19. deserve + get
- 20. not recall + say
- 21. look forward to + see
- 22. beg + give
- 23. agree + hire + work
- 24. remember + tell + be
- 25. urge + practice + speak
- 26. tell + keep + try + call



\bigcirc PRACTICE 14. Using *it* + infinitive. (Chart 14-11)

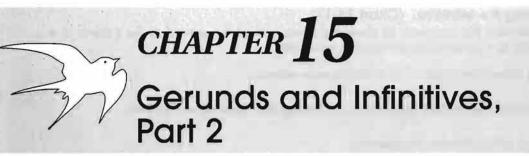
Directions: Restate the sentences by changing a sentence with a gerund as the subject to a sentence with it + an infinitive phrase, and vice-versa.

- 1. Teasing animals is cruel. \rightarrow It is cruel to tease animals.
- 2. It wasn't difficult to find their house. \rightarrow Finding their house wasn't difficult.
- 3. Voting in every election is important.
- 4. It was exciting to meet the king and queen.
- 5. Hearing the other side of the story would be interesting.
- 6. It is unusual to see Joan awake early in the morning.
- 7. If you know how, it is easy to float in the water for a long time.
- 8. Mastering a second language takes time and patience.
- 9. Driving to Atlanta will take us ten hours.
- 10. It takes courage to dive into the sea from a high cliff.



Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1 163

SHARMOULT



◇ PRACTICE 1. In order to. (Chart 15-1)

Directions: Add in order if possible. If nothing should be added, write Ø.

- 1. Emily likes $\cancel{\emptyset}$ to go ice skating every weekend.
- 2. Please open the door _____ in order___ to let some fresh air in.
- Elizabeth has to practice at least four hours every day ______ to be ready for her piano recital next month.
- Shelley sent me an e-mail ______ to inform me that the meeting had been canceled.
- 5. We've decided _____ not to take a vacation this year.
- 6. Did you remember ______ to call Mr. Johnson?
- After dinner we drove to the top of a hill outside the city ______ to watch the sunset.
- The children were making so much noise that I had to shout at them ______ to get their attention.
- Jane is so disgusted by politics and politicians these days that she refuses ______ to
 vote in either local or national elections.
- We waded across the mountain stream ______ to continue our hike to Wall's Meadow.
- We stopped briefly on the other side of the stream ______ to rest before beginning one of the steepest parts of the climb.
- 12. One of the climbers hesitated ______ to continue because of a painful blister on his right heel. He tried ______ to keep up with the rest of us, but finally stopped climbing with us because of the pain.

\diamond PRACTICE 2. Adjectives followed by infinitives. (Chart 15-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with infinitives.

- 1. I was glad <u>to get</u> a letter from you.
- 2. I was relieved <u>to find out</u> that I had passed the exam.
- 3. Sue is lucky ______ alive after the accident.
- 4. The soldiers were prepared ______.
- 5. The children are anxious ______ to the circus.
- Dick didn't feel like going anywhere. He was content ______ home and ______ a book.
- 7. The teacher is always willing ______ us.
- 8. The students are motivated _____ English.
- 9. Be careful not ______ on the icy sidewalks!
- 10. Tom was hesitant _____ home alone on the dark street.
- 11. Sally is afraid _____ home alone.
- 12. Ann is proud ______ the top student in her class.
- 13. I was surprised _____ Mr. Yamamoto at the meeting.
- 14. We were sorry _____ the bad news.

O PRACTICE 3. Too vs. very. (Chart 15-3)

Directions: Add too or very to the sentences as appropriate.

- 1. The box is <u>very</u> heavy, but I can lift it.
- 2. John dropped his physics course because it was <u>too</u> difficult for him.
- 3. I think it's _____ late to get tickets to the concert. I heard they were all sold.
- 4. It's _____ cold today, but I'm still going to take my daily walk.
- 5. Our cat is fourteen years old. Now he's _____ old to catch mice in the field across the street.
- 6. It's _____ dark to see in here. Please turn on the lights.
- 7. She was _____ ill. Nevertheless, she came to the family reunion.
- 8. The boys were _____ busy to help me clean out the garage, so I did it myself.
- 9. Learning a second language is _____ difficult, but most of the students are doing well.
- 10. We enjoyed our dinner at the restaurant last night. It was _____ good.

- 11. Professor Andrews is always _____ interesting, but I'm _____ tired to go to the lecture tonight.
- 12. He's _____ young to understand. He'll understand when he's older.
- 13. The meal was _____ good. I enjoyed every morsel.
- 14. I'm ______ sleepy to watch the rest of the TV movie. Let me know how it turns out.
- 15. Sally was running _____ fast for me to keep up with her, so I lagged behind.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Using too and enough. (Chart 15-3)

Directions: Combine the given ideas into one sentence. Add to when an infinitive is required.

- 1. my work ... yesterday ... finish ... enough ... not ... time ... have $\rightarrow I$ didn't have enough time* to finish my work yesterday.
- 2. enough . . . not . . . well . . . go back to work . . . is . . . Linda
- 3. use . . . scissors . . . too . . . are . . . for . . . sharp . . . very young children
- 4. narrow ... are ... two-way traffic ... the streets in the old part of the city ... too ... for
- 5. old . . . Jimmy . . . enough . . . not . . . ride on the bus by himself . . . is
- 6. many . . . in grammar and spelling in the first one . . . careless mistakes . . . Jules . . . because he had made . . . had to rewrite his composition . . . too
- 7. everyone assigned to this class . . . there . . . seats in the classroom . . . are . . . enough . . . not . . . for
- 8. we couldn't go . . . too . . . call the box office for tickets . . . because we waited . . . long . . . to the musical

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Passive infinitives. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

- When I told Tim the news, he seemed _____.
 A. to surprise B. to be surprised
- The children agreed _____ the candy equally.
 A. to divide B. to be divided
- 3. Janice is going to fill out an application. She wants _____ for the job.A. to consider B. to be considered
- 4. The mail is supposed _____ at noon. A. to deliver B. to be delivered
- 5. I expect _____ at the airport by my uncle. A. to meet B. to be met

^{*}Also possible: time enough. In everyday English, enough usually precedes the noun.

6. Mr. Steinberg offered _____ us to the train station. A. to drive B. to be driven

7. The children appear _____ about the trip.A. to excite B. to be excited

◇ PRACTICE 6. Passive gerunds. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

- I don't appreciate _____ when I'm speaking.
 A. interrupting B. being interrupted
- 2. Avoid _____ your houseplants too much water. A. giving B. being given
- The mountain climbers are in danger of _____ by an avalanche.
 A. killing B. being killed
- 4. Does Dr. Johnson mind _____ at home if his patients need his help?A. calling B. being called
- 5. I'm interested in _____ my communication skills. A. improving B. being improved
- 6. Mrs. Gates appreciated _____ breakfast in bed when she wasn't feeling well.A. serving B. being served
- 7. Sally's low test scores kept her from _____ to the university.A. admitting B. being admitted
- Mr. Miller gave no indication of _____ his mind.
 A. changing B. being changed

\diamond PRACTICE 7. Passive infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

A. opening

- 1. Instead of _____ about the good news, Tom seemed to be indifferent.
 - A. exciting C. to excite
 - B. being excited D. to be excited
- 2. The new students hope _____ in many of the school's social activities.
 - A. including C. to include
 - B. being included D. to be included
- 3. The owner of the building supply store doesn't mind _____ his customers discounts when they buy in large quantities.
 - A. giving C. to give
 - B. being given D. to be given
- 4. Jack got into trouble when he refused _____ his briefcase for the customs officer.
 - C. to open
 - B. being opened D. to be opened

5.	Barbara didn't mention about her p	progress report at work, but I'm sure she is.			
	A. concerning	C. to concern			
	B. being concerned	D. to be concerned			
6.	The City Parks Department is putting in sev have said that they enjoy on them.	veral miles of new trails because so many people			
	A. walking	C. to walk			
	B. being walked	D. to be walked			
7.	y. You can't count on by your parents				
	A. rescuing	C. to rescue			
	B. being rescued	D. to be rescued			
8.	8. Please forgive me. I didn't mean you.				
	A. upsetting	C. to upset			
	B. being upset	D. to be upset			
9.	9. I don't remember of the decision to change the company policy on vacations. When was it decided?				
	A. telling	C. to tell			
	B. being told	D. to be told			
10.	Ms. Drake expects about any revision	ons to her manuscript before it is printed.			
	A. consulting	C. to consult			
	B. being consulted	D. to be consulted			
11	-	t regist loudly when she finished			
11.	Sally gave such a good speech that I couldn'				
	A. applauding	C. to applaud			
	B. being applauded	D. to be applauded			
12. Tommy admitted the rock through the window.					
	A. throwing	C. to throw			
	B. being thrown	D. to be thrown			
13. If you want to develop inner tranquility, you have to stop by every little thir happens.					
	A. bothering	C. to bother			
	B. being bothered	D. to be bothered			
14. Paul really didn't mind by the party to celebrate his fortieth birthday, alth told his friends that they shouldn't have done it.					
	A. surprising	C. to surprise			
	B. being surprised	D. to be surprised			
15.	Anne hopes to join the private club there.	. She could make important business contacts			
	A. inviting	C. to invite			
	B. being invited	D. to be invited			

◇ PRACTICE 8. Past and past-passive infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4) Directions: Choose the correct answer.

	1. Are you sure you told me? I don't recal	ll about it.
	A. having told	C. to have told
	B. having been told	D. to have been told
	2. Tom made a bad mistake at work, but h chance.	nis boss didn't fire him. He's lucky a second
	A. having given	C. to have given
	B. having been given	D. to have been given
	3. Dr. Wilson is a brilliant and dedicated s director of the institute. She was very s	cientist who had expected to be selected as the urprised not the position.
	A. having offered	C. to have offered
	B. having been offered	D. to have been offered
	4. By the time their baby arrives, the Johnsnursery.	sons hope painting and decorating the new
	A. having finished	C. to have finished
	B. having been finished	D. to have been finished
	5. The stockbroker denied of the	secret business deal.
	A. having informed	C. to have informed
	B. having been informed	D. to have been informed
	 6. The Smiths wanted to give their son even him by providing too many material pose. A. having spoiled B. having been spoiled 	ery advantage. However, they now regret ssessions. C. to have spoiled D. to have been spoiled
		^
	7. The spy admitted some highly	
	A. having given	C. to have given
	B. having been given	D. to have been given
♦ PRACE	CTICE 9. Past and past-passive infinitive Directions: Supply an appropriate form for e	each verb in parentheses.
	1. Sharon wants us to tell her the news as	soon as we hear anything. If we find out anything
	about the problem, she wants (tell)	about it immediately.
	2. Yesterday Anna wrote a check for fifty c	lollars, but when she wrote it she knew she didn't
	have enough money in the bank to cove	er it. Today she is very worried about (write)
	that ch	eck. She has to find a way to put some money in her
	account right away.	
	3. A: What's the difference between "burr	up" and "burn down"?
		ion. I don't recall ever (ask)

_____ that question before.

- 5. Martha doesn't like to have her picture taken. She avoids (photograph) ______
- 6. A: It's been nice talking to you. I really have enjoyed our conversation, but I have to leave now. I'm very happy (*have*) _______ this opportunity to meet you and talk with you. Let's try to get together again soon.
 - B: I'd like that.
- 7. A: This letter needs (send) ______ immediately. Will you take care of it?
 B: Right away.
- 8. Sally is very quick. You have to tell her how to do something only once. She doesn't need *(tell)* _______ twice.
- 9. A: I thought Sam was sick.
 - B: So did I. But he seems (recover) ______ very quickly. He certainly doesn't seem (be) ______ sick now.
- 10. Last year I studied abroad. I appreciate (*have*) ______ the opportunity to live and study in a foreign country.

\diamond PRACTICE 10. Using a possessive to modify a gerund. (Chart 15-6)

Directions: Combine the following. Change that fact to a gerund phrase. Use formal English.

- Example: We answered all of the exam questions correctly. The teacher was pleased with that fact.
 → The teacher was pleased with our answering (OR: having answered) all of the exam questions correctly.
- 1. I lost my new watch. My mother was angry about that fact.
- 2. They are going to spend their vacation with us. We look forward to that fact.
- 3. Tony failed the economics test even though he studied hard. No one can understand that fact.
- 4. The students are required to pay an extra fee to use the laboratory. I am upset about that fact.
- 5. Mary worked late to finish the project. The supervisor appreciated that fact.

\diamond PRACTICE 11. Review: gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 14-1 \rightarrow 15-6)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. Alice didn't expect	to Bill's party.		
A. asking	B. being asked	C. to ask	D. to be asked
2. I finally finished	at 7:00 р.м. and	served dinner.	
A. cooking	B. being cooked	C. to cook	D. to be cooked
3. Sam always remem	bers in the gar	age so that the driv	eway is free for other car

 3. Sam always remembers ______ in the garage so that the driveway is free for other cars.

 A. parking
 B. being parked
 C. to park
 D. to be parked

4.	The nurse suggested _	two aspirin.		
	A. taking	B. being taken	C. to take	D. to be taken
5.	Would you mind not _	the radio until	l I've finished with this	s phone call?
	A. turning on		C. to turn on	
	B. being turned on		D. to be turned on	
6.	They were fortunate _	from the fire b	efore the building col	lapsed.
	A. rescuing	B. to have rescued	C. to rescue	D. to have been rescued
7.	The mouse family avo two cats were outside.	ided by comi	ng out only when the	house was empty and the
	A. catching		C. to have been caug	ght
	B. being caught		D. to be caught	
8.	The baby continued _ A. being crying		was picked up. C. to cry	D. having been crying
0	Arthur pretended not	hurt when hi	s vounger eister hit hi	m
9.	A. having	B. be	C. to have	D. to have been
	ri. naving	B . 00	C. to have	D. to have been
10.	We were shocked to he	ear the news of your $_$		
	A. having fired		C. to be fired	
	B. having been fired	i	D. to have been fired	l
11.	Even though she was n the game they were pla		e other children, Alexi	s demanded in
	A. including	B. being including	C. to include	D. to be included
12.	Our mechanic said that	at he expects	the brakes on the car	before we pick it up.
	A. fixing	B. being fixed		D. to have been fixed
13	Marge's children are u	used to after s	chool every day. They	don't have to walk home.
	A. picking up	B. being picked up		D. pick up
14	The bus driver was so	tired of the s	ame route every day t	hat he asked for a transfer.
	A. to drive	B. being driven	C. driving	D. drive
15.	I'm sure it's not my fa		ut what we were plann	ning. I don't remember
	A. having told	B. being told	C. to tell	D. to be told

Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2 171

♦ PRACTICE 12. Using verbs of perception. (Chart 15-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in the list. Use each word only once. Use the SIMPLE form or the -ing form, whichever seems better to you.

arrive	emerge	perform	prevent
chirp	explain	✓ practice	voin
climb	melt		

- 1. Whenever I have free time, I like to watch the basketball team _practice .
- 2. A few years ago, I saw a dog ______ a child from wandering into a busy street by standing in front of her and not letting her get by.
- 3. It was a thrill to see my brother ______ the chess tournament last year.
- 4. I was amazed to see the firefighters _____ so soon after my call.
- 5. The boy watched the butterfly ______ from its cocoon.



6. It is educational for children to observe adults ______ their daily tasks.

- When I look at my gym teacher ______ the rope, it looks easy, but when I try it, it is hard.
- 8. Hearing the birds ______ tells us that spring has indeed arrived.
- 9. I listened to the teacher _____ how to solve the math problem.
- I held out my hand and watched each snowflake ______ as soon as it touched my skin.

	E 13. Let, help, and a rections: Choose the corr		Charts 15-8 and 15-	9)
1.	Instead of buying a ne A. repair	w pair of shoes, I had B. to repair	my old ones <u>C</u> . C. repaired	
2.	I helped my daughter A. finish	A.B. her homewor B. to finish	k. C. finished	
3.	I made my son A. wash	_ the windows before B. to wash	he could go outside t C. washed	o play with his friends.
4.	Maria had her landlor A. fix	d the broken B. to fix	window before winter C. fixed	
5.	To please my daughter A. paint	r, I had her old bicycle B. to paint	c bright red. C. painted	
6.	Sam was reluctant, bu A. play	t we finally got him B. to play	his guitar for u C. played	s.
7.	When I had to make a A. use	n emergency phone ca B. to use	all, the secretary let m C. used	e her phone.
8.	Jack, could you help m A. dig	ne a place in t B. to dig	the garden to plant so C. dug	me tomatoes?
9.	Before we leave, let's h A. draw	ave Shelley a B. to draw	n map for us so we wo C. drawn	n't get lost.
10.	Are you going to let m A. eat	B. to eat	ece of blueberry pie? C. eaten	
	E 14. Verb form revie rections: Choose the corr	-	15-9)	
1.	I enjoy to the	park on summer ever	nings.	
	A. to go	-	C. being gone	D. go
2.	Don't forget]	home as soon as you a	urrive at your destinati	on.
	A. to call	B. calling	C. having called	
3.	When I kept getting un The process			and had my phone number
	A. change	B. changed	C. to change	D. changing
4.	Jean should seriously o A. to become	consider an a B. become	ctress. She is a very ta C. becoming	alented performer. D. will become
5.		he exclusion of all oth	er activities is not a h	ealthy habit for a growing
	child. A. To be watched	B. Being watched	C. Watching	D. Watch

6,	After their children ha the city. They've neve		Mrs. Sills decided	to a condominium in
		_	C. move	D. to move
7.	I truly appreciated the honor because of a			ut I wasn't able to accept
		B. to have asked		D. having been asked
8.	called the police. The	y discovered that it ha	money from the ca d been going on for a C. to have sneaked	-
9.	My roommate's handy	writing is very bad, so	he had me hi	is paper for him last night.
	A. to type	B. type	C. to have typed	D. typed
10.	The municipal author A. to boil	ities advised B. to be boiled		ing the emergency. D. boil
11.	If we leave now for ou	r trip, we can drive ha	alf the distance before	we stop lunch.
	A. having	B. to have	C. having had	D. for having
12.	Our schedule is not w as though we're gettin			daily routine. I don't feel
	A. changing	B. to change	C. to have changed	D. being changed
13.	I can't recall A. having seen			ago. D. having been seen
14.	Our school basketball five seconds. It was the			two points in the last
	A. being scored	B. to score	C. scoring	D. score
15.	The flight attendants : A. to buckle B. to have buckled	made all the passenge	rs their seat b C. buckling D. buckle	elts during the turbulence.
16.	It has become necessa drought.	ry water in t	he metropolitan area b	ecause of the severe
	A. rationing	B. ration	C. to have rationed	D. to ration
17.	You can't blame Ralpl	h for to eat th	nat dessert. It looked o	delicious.
	A. to be tempted	B. tempted	C. be tempted	D. having been tempted
18.	Let's leave early so we traffic during rush how		sh of commuters. We c	can't risk in heavy
	A. holding up	B. being held up	C. having held up	D. to hold up
19.	It is always interesting A. being observed	people in ai	rports while you're wa C. to have observed	iting for a flight.
	B. observe		D. to observe	
20.	I got everyone in the f A. sign	family Jane's B. signed	birthday card before I C. to sign	sent it to her. D. having signed
	Vagaa	are organized		- maring organou

\diamond PRACTICE 15. Verb form review. (Charts 14-1 \rightarrow 15-9)

Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1. Bill decided (buy) <u>to buy</u> a new car rather than a used one.
- 2. We delayed (open) ______ the doors of the examination room until exactly 9:00.
- 3. I really dislike *(ask)* ______ to answer questions in class when I haven't prepared my lesson.
- 4. I certainly didn't anticipate (*have*) ______ to wait in line for three hours for tickets to the baseball game!
- 5. When I was younger, I used (*wear*) ______ mini-skirts and bright colors. Now I am accustomed to (*dress*) ______ more conservatively.
- 6. Skydivers must have nerves of steel. I can't imagine (jump) ______ out of a plane and (fall) ______ to the earth. What if the parachute didn't open?



7. We are looking forward to *(take)* ______ on a tour of Athens by our Greek friends.

hold our mail until we returned.

- The elderly man next door is just sitting in his rocking chair (gaze) ______ out the window. I wish there were something I could do (cheer) ______ him up.
- 10. I resent *(have)* ______ to work on this project with Fred. I know I'll end up with most of the work falling on my shoulders.
- 12. The power lines outside my house were dangerous. I finally got the power company (move)______ them to a safer place.
- 13. I wanted (help) ______ them (resolve) ______ their differences, but Sally persuaded me (interfere, not) ______.
- 14. Sara was encouraged by her teachers (*apply*) ______ for study at the Art Institute.
- 15. I was happy (learn) ______ of your new position in the company, but I was disappointed (discover) ______ that you had recommended (promote) ______ Carl to your old position instead of me.
- 16. I don't mind (remind) ______ you every day (lock) ______ the door when you leave the apartment, but I would appreciate your (try) ______ (remember) ______ on your own.
- 17. Now I remember your (ask) ______ me to bring sandwiches to the picnic. Your complaints about my (forget) ______ things seem justified. I'm sorry.
- 18. After our automobile accident, the insurance company had a stack of papers for us to sign, but our lawyer advised us (sign, not) ______ them until she had a chance to study them very carefully.
- 19. John was responsible for (notify) ________ everyone about the meeting, but he apparently failed (call) _______ several people. As a result, not enough people showed up, and we have to try to get everybody together again soon.
- 20. You shouldn't let children (play) _____ with matches.

21. Art smelled something (burn) ______. When he ran into the kitchen, he saw fire (come) _______ out of the oven and panicked. If Barbara hadn't come running in with the fire extinguisher, I don't know what would have happened.



- 22. I finally told him (be) ______ quiet for a minute and (listen) ______ to what I had to say.
- 23. Irene was lying in bed (think) ______ about what a wonderful time she'd had.
- 24. The illogic of his statements made me (tear) _____ my hair out.
- 25. Recently Jo has been spending most of her time (*do*) ______ research for a book on pioneer women.
- 26. Mary Beth suggested (go) _____ on a picnic.
- 27. Isabel expected (admit) ______ to the university, but she wasn't.
- 28. Jason wouldn't let them (take) _____ his picture.
- 30. No, that's not what I meant (say) ______. How can I make you (understand)
- 31. I have finally assembled enough information (begin) ______ writing my thesis.
- 32. It's a serious problem. Something needs (do) ______ about it soon.
- 33. I was terribly disappointed (discover) ______ that he had lied to me.

34.	I had the operator (put) the call through for me.
35.	No one could make Ted (feel) afraid. He refused (intimidate)
	by anyone.
36.	I don't see how she can possibly avoid (fail) the course.
37.	Do something! Don't just sit there (twiddle) your thumbs.
38.	I don't know how to get to Harry's house, so I had him (draw) a map for m
39.	Barbara has a wonderful sense of humor. She can always make me (laugh)
40.	The teacher had the class (open) their books to page 185.
41.	I found my roommate in the other room (sleep) on the floor in
	the middle of the day.
42.	They refused (pay) their taxes, so they were sent to jail.
43.	I admit (be) a little nervous about the job interview. I don't know what
	(expect)
44.	I found a coin <i>(lie)</i> on the sidewalk.
Dir	E 16. Verb form review. (Charts 14-1 → 15-9) rections: Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parentheses. After I decided (have) a garage (build) next to
	the house, I hired a carpenter (do) the work.
2.	The coach didn't let anyone (watch) the team (practice)
	before the championship game. He wanted to keep the opposing team from (find)
	out about the new plays he had devised.
3.	My son is playing in his first piano recital this evening. I'm looking forward to (hear)
3.	My son is playing in his first piano recital this evening. I'm looking forward to (hear) him (play), but I know he's worried about (forget)

told him just (relax) _____ and (enjoy) _____ himself.

4. There's not much point in (*waste*) ______ a lot of time and energy on that project. It's likely (*fail*) ______ no matter what we do. Spend your time (*do*) ______ something more worthwhile.

- 5. (Attend) ______ the dance proved to be an (embarrass) ______ experience for me, especially since I don't know how to dance. I felt like a fish out of water. I wanted (hide) ______ someplace or (get) _____ out of there, but my friend wouldn't let me (leave) ______.
- 6. I'm over sixty now, but I enjoy (recall) ______ my high-school days. I remember (choose) ______ by my classmates as "Most Likely to Succeed" when I was a senior. My best friend was chosen as "Least Likely to Succeed," and he is now the president of an electronics company. Once in a while when we get together, we have a good time (look) ______ through the high-school yearbook and (laugh) ______ at the way we looked then. We reminisce about (act) ______ in school dramas and (play) ______ on the basketball team. We remember (be) ______ serious young men who knew how to have fun. We congratulate ourselves for (achieve) ______ more than we had thought we could when we were eighteen.
- 7. Our house needs (clean) _______. The floors need (sweep) _______. The dishes need (wash) _______.
 The furniture needs (dust) _______. However, I think I'll read a book. (Read) _______ is a lot more interesting than (do) _______ housework.
- 8. As an adult, I very much appreciate (give) ________ the opportunity to travel extensively with my parents when I was a child. Those experiences were important in (form) ______ my view of the world. I learned (accept) ______ different customs and beliefs. At times, I would resist (go) ______ away on another trip, especially when I was a teenager. In the end, I always accompanied my parents, and I am grateful that I did. I didn't understand at that time how those trips would influence my later life. My (be) ______ a compassionate and caring adult is due in large part to my (expose) ______ to many different ways of life as a child.
- 9. (Find) ______ a cure for the common cold does not appear (be) ______ imminent. Colds are caused by hundreds of different viruses. You can possibly avoid (expose) ______ to the viruses by (stay) ______ away from those with colds, but it's almost impossible (avoid) ______ the viruses

completely. If you want (minimize)	the risk of (get)
a cold, it is prudent (get)	enough rest and (eat)
properly. Some people believe in (take)	Iarge amounts of Vitamin C.
In the long run, it is probably easier (pr	revent) (catch)
a cold than it is to cure one.	
. Modern cars have systems that protect t	us from (inconvenience)
or (huri)	by our own carelessness. In most cars,
when the keys are left in the ignition, a	buzz sounds in order (remind)
the driver (remove)	them. In some models, if the driver does not
remember (turn)	off the lights, it does not matter because the lights go
off automatically. In some cases, when	the seat belts are not buckled, the ignition does not
start, and then the driver is actually for	ced (buckle) up. Often when
the driver has failed (shut)	a door properly, another signal noise may
be given. A few cars emit sounds to wa	irn us (fill) the tank before it is
completely empty.	
It is easy (forget)	(do) many routine tasks in (drive)
a car. The autom	natic warning systems help drivers (avoid)
(make)	some common mistakes. While
some people may resent (instruct)	by their own automobiles
(perform) certain	procedures, many others do not mind at all (remind)

______ (carry) ______ out these easily

overlooked procedures.

WWW. BL. OHDISTINATION

$\diamond\,$ PRACTICE 17. TEST A: Gerunds and infinitives. (Chapters 14 and 15)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: The office staff of	decided C a reti	rement party for Dolo	res.
-	B. to have had		
1. I don't blame you for r			D to make a
A. wanting to go	B. wanting go	C. want to go	D. to want go
2. I think I hear someone	the back win	ndow. Do you hear it,	too?
A. trying open	B. trying to open	C. try opening	D. try to open
3. When Alan was question			out the embezzlement of
funds from his compar			
A. to be involved	B. involving	C. having involved	D. being involved
4. Mr. Lee was upset by	him the truth	1.	
A. our not having to	ld	C. we didn't tell	
B. us not tell		D. not to tell	
5. We considered	after work.		
		C. going to shop	D. to go to shop
(Testes (Cest		Y	
6. Jack offered c			Description
A. take	B. taking	C. to have taken	D. to take
7. Could you please come	e over? I need you	the refrigerator.	
A. help me moving		C. to help me move	
B. helping me to me	ove	D. help me to move	
8. I just heard that there's to get to the play on the	-		affic tied up. If we want
	B. take		D. taking
The maying taken	D. take	0. 10 take	D. taking
9. The painting was beau		-	
A. for admiring	B. being admired	C. admire	D. admiring
10. Jim should have asked	for help instead	to do it himself.	
A. of trying	B. to try	C. try	D. from trying
11. A plane with an engine could have been a terri		he runway v	vas frightening. There
A. Watch it landing		C. To watch it land	
B. Watching it land		D. Watching to land	it
12. The customs officer op the country.	pened the suitcase	if anything illega	l was being brought into
A. seeing	B. for seeing	C. see	D. to see
13. Sometimes very young dragons actually exist.	children have trouble	e fact from fic	tion and may believe that
A. to separate	B. separating	C. to be separated	D. for separating

14. Do you have an excuse late to class two days in a row?				
A. for to be	B. for being	C. to be	D. being	
15. Jack made me	him next week.			
A. to promise to c	all	C. promise to call		
B. to promise call	ing	D. promise calling		
16. I got Barbara	her car for the week	end.		
A. to let me to bo	rrow	C. to let me borrow	w	
B. let me borrow		D. let me to borrow	w	
17. I'll never forget	that race. What a	thrill!		
A. to win	B. win	C. being won	D. winning	
18. No one has better qu	ualifications. Carol is o	certain for th	e job.	
A. to choose	B. having chosen	C. to be chosen	D. being chosen	
19. I was enjoying my be	ook, but I stopped	a program on T	V.	
A. reading to wate	ch	C. to read for wate	ching	
B. to read to wate	'n	D. reading for to w	vatch	
20. Who is the woman t before.	alking to Mr. Quinn?	I don't recall	her around the office	
A. to have seen	B. seeing	C. to see	D. being seen	



\diamond PRACTICE 18. TEST B: Gerunds and infinitives. (Chapters 14 and 15)

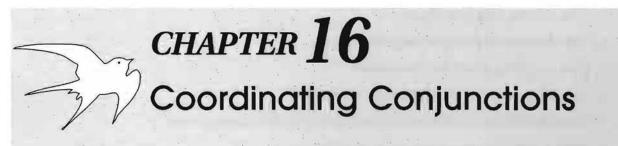
Directions: Choose the correct answer.

<i>Example:</i> The office staff decided a retirement party for Dolores.				
	-		C. to have	
1.	Roger proved that the favor.	accident wasn't his fa	ult by two w	itnesses who testified in his
	A. produce	B. produced	C. to produce	D. producing
2.	The front door is war	ped from the humidity	y. We have a difficult t	ime it.
	A. open	B. to open	C. having opened	D. opening
3.	I stood up at the mee opinion.	ting and demanded	At last, I got t	he chance to express my
	A. to be heard		C. having been hear	ď
	B. to hear		D. to have heard	
4.	Did you ever finish _	the office for th	nat new client of yours	?
	A. to design	B. designing	C. designed	D. having designed
5.	It's a beautiful day, ar	nd I have my brother's	boat. Would you like	to go?
	A. to sail	B. sailing	C. to sailing	D. for sailing
6.	I called a plumber	the kitchen sink		
	A. for repairing	B. for to repair	C. to repair	D. to be repaired
7.	I'm angry because yo	u didn't tell me the tru	uth. I don't like	•
	A. deceiving	B. to deceive	C. being deceived	D. having deceived
8.	A good teacher makes	s her students	the world from new p	perspectives.
	A. to view		C. view	
9.	Please remember	your hand during	g the test if you have a	question.
			C. having raised	
10.	It is important	care of your health.		
		B. to be taken		D. taken
11.	in restaurant	s as often as they do is	s very expensive.	
	A. Being eaten	5	C. Having been eati	ng
	B. Having eaten		D. Eating	
12.	I expect Mary	here early tonight.	She should arrive in th	ne next half hour.
	A. to come	B. coming	C. having come	D. to have come
13.	I advised my niece no	t at an early a	age.	
	A. marrying		C. to marry	
	B. being married		D. to have been man	rried
14.	Shhh! I hear someon	e in the dista	nce. Do you hear it, t	00?
	A. shout	B. shouted	C. to shout	D. shouting

15. I don't understand	your job so sud	ldenly. Why did you do	o that?
A. your quitting		C. to quit	
B. you to have quit		D. you quit	
16. Last night, we saw a m	eteor throug	gh the sky.	
A. streaked	B. to streak	C. streak	D. to have streaked
17. My parents wouldn't l	et me up late	e when I was a child.	
A. to be stay	B. staying	C. to stay	D. stay
18. Children should be en	couraged the	eir individual interests.	
A. develop	B. to be developed	C. to develop	D. developing
19. This room is too dark.	We need a	lighter shade.	
A. to have it painted	1	C. painting it	
B. to be painted		D. to have it paint	
20. I'm sorry I never grade	uated. I've always reg	gretted not co	llege.
A C	D C.1.1	0.0.0	DI . C.I.I

A. to finish B. finish C. finished D. having finished





♦ PRACTICE 1. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)

Directions: Write the words that are parallel in each of the sentences.

1.	These apples are fresh and sweet.	1.	(adjective)	and	sweet
			(adjective)	+	(adjective)
2.	These apples and pears are fresh.	2.	(noun)	and	
			(noun)	+	(noun)
3.	I washed and dried the apples.	3.	(verb)	and	
			(verb)	+	(verb)
4.	I am washing and drying the apples.	4.	(verb)	and	(work)
			(VEID)	τ.	(verb)
5.	We ate the fruit happily and quickly.	5.	(adverb)	and	(adverb)
			()		(2211010)
6.	I enjoy biting into a fresh apple and tasting the juicy sweetness.	6.	(gerund)	and .	(gerund)
7.	I like to bite into a fresh apple and taste the	7.	(infinitive)	and	(infinitive)
	juicy sweetness.				
8.	Those imported apples are delicious but expensive.	8.	(adjective)	but	(adjective)
9.	Apples, pears, and bananas are kinds of fruit.	9.	,,	(noun)	and + (noun)
10.	Those apples are red, ripe, and juicy.	10.	(adjective) (a	djective)	and(adjective)

O PRACTICE 2. Parallel structure: use of commas. (Chart 16-1)

Directions: Add commas as appropriate.

- 1. Jack was calm and quiet. (no commas)
- 2. Jack was calm quiet and serene.
 - → Jack was calm, quiet, * and serene.

^{*}The comma before and in a series is optional. See Chart 16-1.

- 3. The children sang and danced.
- 4. The children sang danced and played games.
- 5. Tom and Tariq joined the soccer game.
- 6. Tom Tariq and Francisco joined the soccer game.
- 7. I told the children to sit down be quiet and open their reading books.
- 8. I told the children to sit down and be quiet.
- 9. Did you know that the pupil* of your eye expands and contracts slightly with each heartbeat?
- 10. Our waitress's tray held two cups of coffee three glasses of water and one glass of orange juice.
- 11. My parents were strict but fair with their children.
- 12. Is a newborn blue whale smaller or larger than an adult elephant?

\diamond PRACTICE 3. Parallel structure. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

Directions: Write "C" if the parallel structure is CORRECT. Write "I" if the parallel structure is INCORRECT, and make any necessary corrections. <u>Underline</u> the parallel elements of the sentences.

honesty

- 1. ____ I admire him for his intelligence, cheerful disposition, and he is honest.
- 2. <u>C</u> Abraham Lincoln was a lawyer and a politician.
- 3. _____ The boat sailed across the lake smoothly and quiet.
- 4. _____ Barb studies each problem carefully and works out a solution.
- 5. _____ Aluminum is plentiful and relatively inexpensive.
- 6. _____ Many visitors to Los Angeles enjoy visiting Disneyland and to tour movie studios.
- 7. _____ Children are usually interested in but a little frightened by snakes.
- 8. _____ Either fainting can result from a lack of oxygen or a loss of blood.
- 9. _____ So far this term, the students in the writing class have learned how to write thesis statements, organize their material, and summarizing their conclusions.
- 10. _____ When I looked more closely, I saw that it was not coffee but chocolate on my necktie.
- 11. _____ Not only universities support medical research but also many government agencies.
- 12. _____ Physics explains why water freezes and how the sun produces heat.
- All plants need light, a suitable climate, and an ample supply of water and minerals from the soil.
- 14. _____ With their keen sight, fine hearing, and refined sense of smell, wolves hunt day or night in quest of elk, deer, moose, or caribou.

^{*}The pupil of one's eye is the dark center of the eye.

- 15. _____ The comedian made people laugh by telling jokes and make funny faces.
- 16. _____ Tina is always understanding, patient, and sensitive when helping her friends with their problems.
- 17. _____ Not only the post office but also all banks close on national holidays.
- 18. _____ Walking briskly for 30 minutes or to run for 15 minutes will burn an approximately equal number of calories.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)

Directions: Choose the letter of the phrase from the list that best completes each sentence. Use each phrase in the list only once.

- A. reliable health care E. provide quality education
- B. carefully F. responsible
- C. excellence in G. seeking practical solutions
- \checkmark D. in agriculture H. who finds a way to get the important jobs done
- 1. Mr. Turner has had wide experience. He has worked in business, in the news media, and D.
- 2. People want safe homes, good schools, and _____.
- 3. As a taxpayer, I want my money used wisely and _____.
- 4. Mrs. Adams is respected for researching issues and _____.
- 5. Ms. Hunter has established a record of effective and _____ leadership in government.
- 6. She has worked hard to control excess government spending, protect our environment, and
- 7. Carol is a hard-working personnel manager who welcomes challenges and ______.
- 8. I will continue to fight for adequate funding of and ______ education.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Paired conjunctions: subject-verb agreement. (Chart 16-2)

Directions: Supply the correct present tense form of the verb in parentheses.

- 1. (know) Neither the students nor the teacher <u>knows</u> the answer.
- 2. (know) Neither the teacher nor the students <u>know</u> the answer.
- 3. (know) Not only the students but also the teacher ______ the answer.
- 4. (know) Not only the teacher but also the students ______ the answer.
- 5. (know) Both the teacher and the students ______ the answer.
- 6. (want) Neither Alan nor Carol ______ to go skiing this weekend.
- 7. (like) Both John and Ted _____ to go cross-country skiing.
- 8. (have) Either Jack or Alice ______ the information you need.
- 9. (agree) Neither my parents nor my brother _____ with my decision.

- 10. (be)
 Both intelligence and skill ______ essential to good teaching.

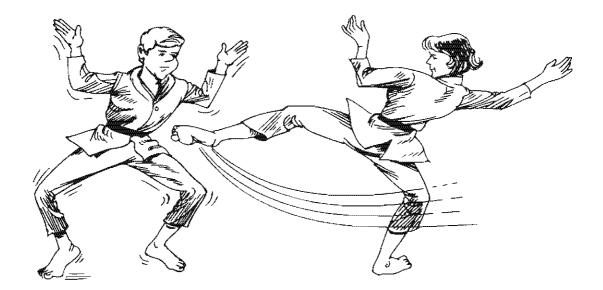
 11. (realize)
 Neither my classmates nor my teacher ______ that I have no idea
- 12. (think) Not only Laura's husband but also her children ______ she should return to school and finish her graduate degree.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Paired conjunctions. (Chart 16-2)

what's going on in class.

Directions: Combine the following into sentences which contain parallel structure. Use the paired conjunctions in parentheses. Pay special attention to the exact place you put the paired conjunctions in the combined sentence.

- 1. Many people don't drink coffee. Many people don't drink alcohol. (*neither* . . . *nor*) \rightarrow Many people drink neither coffee nor alcohol.
- 2. Barbara is fluent in Chinese. She is also fluent in Japanese. (not only ... but also)
- 3. I'm sorry to say that Paul has no patience. He has no sensitivity to others. (neither . . . nor)
- 4. She can sing. She can dance. (both ... and)
- 5. If you want to change your class schedule, you should talk to your teacher, or you should talk to your academic counselor. *(either . . . or)*
- 6. Diana is intelligent. She is very creative. (both ... and)
- 7. You may begin working tomorrow or you may begin next week. (either ... or)
- 8. Michael didn't tell his mother about the trouble he had gotten into. He didn't tell his father about the trouble he had gotten into. (neither . . . nor)
- 9. Success in karate requires balance and skill. Success in karate requires concentration and mental alertness. (not only . . . but also)



PRACTICE 7. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas. (Charts 16-1 and 16-3)

Directions: Punctuate these sentences by adding periods (.) or commas (,) as necessary. Do not add any words. Capitalize letters where necessary. Some sentences need no changes.

- 1. I like French cooking my wife prefers Italian cooking.
 - \rightarrow I like French cooking. My wife prefers Italian cooking.
- 2. I like French cooking but my wife prefers Italian cooking. \rightarrow I like French cooking, but my wife prefers Italian cooking. (optional comma)
- 3. I've read that book it's very good.
- 4. I've read that book but I didn't like it.
- 5. I opened the door and asked my friend to come in.
- 6. I opened the door my sister answered the phone.
- 7. I opened the door and my sister answered the phone.
- 8. Minerals are common materials they are found in rocks and soil.
- 9. The most common solid materials on earth are minerals they are found in rocks soil and water.
- 10. You can travel to England by plane or you can go by ship if you prefer.
- 11. You can travel to England by plane or by ship.
- 12. Jason was going to study all night so he declined our invitation to dinner.
- 13. Jason declined our invitation to dinner he needed to stay home and study.
- 14. The wind was howling outside yet it was warm and comfortable indoors.
- 15. I hurried to answer the phone for I didn't want the children to wake up.
- 16. Last weekend we went camping it rained the entire time.
- 17. The highway was under construction so we had to take a different route to work.
- 18. No one thought we would win the championship yet our team won by a large margin.
- 19. We arrived at the theater late but the play had not yet begun we were quite surprised.
- 20. A central heating system provides heat for an entire building from one central place most central heating systems service only one building but some systems heat a group of buildings, such as those at a military base a campus or an apartment complex.

PRACTICE 8. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas. (Charts 16-1 and 16-3)

Directions: Find and correct the errors in punctuation and capitalization.

I spent yesterday with my brother. Wwe had a really good time he's visiting me for a couple of days so I decided not to go to work yesterday we spent the day in the city first I

took him to the waterfront we went to the aquarium, where we saw fearsome sharks some wonderfully funny marine mammals and all kinds of tropical fish after the aquarium, we went downtown to a big mall and went shopping my brother doesn't like to shop as much as I do so we didn't stay there long.

I had trouble thinking of a place to take him for lunch for he's a strict vegetarian luckily I finally remembered a restaurant that has vegan food so we went there and had a wonderful lunch of fresh vegetables and whole grains I'm not a vegetarian yet I must say that I really enjoyed the meal.

In the afternoon it started raining so we went to a movie it was pretty good but had too much violence for me I felt tense when we left the theater I prefer comedies or dramas my brother loved the movie.

We ended the day with a good home-cooked meal and some good talk in my living room it was a good day I like spending time with my brother.

PRACTICE 9. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas. (Charts 16-1 and 16-3)

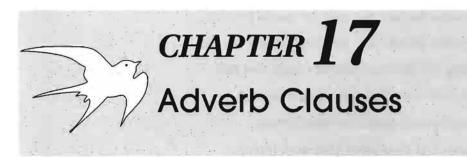
Directions: Find and correct the errors in punctuation and capitalization.

Some of the most interesting working women of the American West in the nineteenth century were African-American women Mary Fields was one of them she had been born a slave in the mid-1800s in the South but moved west to the Rocky Mountains as a free woman in 1884 her first job was hauling freight she drove a wagon and delivered freight in the valleys and mountains of Montana she was tall strong and fast on the draw* she didn't hesitate to protect her wagon of goods with her gun.

She drove a freight wagon for many years then in her late fifties she opened a restaurant but her business failed so in her sixties she became a stagecoach driver carrying the U.S. mail because of outlaws, driving a mailcoach was dangerous yet her mailcoach always arrived safely in her seventies she opened her own laundry business she continued successfully in that business until her death in 1914.

Mary Fields deserves our respect and can be seen as a role model by young women everywhere for she rose above unfortunate circumstances and became a determined hardworking and successful businesswoman

^{*&}quot;Fast on the draw" means that she could pull her gun out of her belt or holster and shoot fast.



♦ PRACTICE 1. Adverb Clauses. (Chart 17-1)

Directions: Change the position of the adverb clause in the sentence. <u>Underline</u> the adverb clause in the given sentence, and <u>underline</u> the adverb clause in the new sentence. Punctuate carefully.

Example: Sue dropped a carton of eggs as she was leaving the store. \rightarrow As Sue was leaving the store, she dropped a carton of eggs.*

- 1. We'll all take a walk in the park after Dad finishes working on the car.
- 2. Since Douglas fell off his bicycle last week, he has had to use crutches to walk.
- 3. Because I already had my boarding pass, I didn't have to stand in line at the airline counter.
- 4. Productivity in a factory increases if the workplace is made pleasant.
- 5. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, the country's name was changed to Sri Lanka.
- 6. Ms. Johnson regularly returns her e-mail messages as soon as she has some free time from her principal duties.
- Tarik will be able to work more efficiently once he becomes familiar with the new computer program.
- 8. When the flooding river raced down the valley, it destroyed everything in its path.

O PRACTICE 2. Periods and commas. (Charts 16-1, 16-3, and 17-1)

Directions: Add periods and commas as necessary. Do not change, add, or omit any words. Capitalize as necessary.

- 1. The lake was calm Tom went fishing.
 - \rightarrow The lake was calm. Tom went fishing.
- 2. Because the lake was calm Tom went fishing.
 - \rightarrow Because the lake was calm, Tom went fishing.

^{*}Also possible: As she was leaving the store, Sue dropped a carton of eggs.

- 3. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm he caught two fish.
- 4. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm and caught two fish.
- 5. When Tom went fishing the lake was calm he caught two fish.
- 6. The lake was calm so Tom went fishing he caught two fish.
- 7. Because the lake was calm and quiet Tom went fishing.
- 8. The lake was calm quiet and clear when Tom went fishing.
- 9. Mr. Hood is admired because he dedicated his life to helping the poor he is well known for his work on behalf of homeless people.
- 10. Microscopes automobile dashboards and cameras are awkward for left-handed people to use they are designed for right-handed people when "lefties" use these items they have to use their right hand to do the things that they would normally do with their left hand.

◇ PRACTICE 3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time. (Chapter 5 and Chart 17-1)

Directions: Choose the letter of the correct answer.

~

	 After Marco <u>C</u> his degree, he plans to A. will finish B. will have finished 		seek employment in an engineering firm. C. finishes D. is finishing			
•		• •	the budget repor C. will have finished			
	hen my aunt A. will get		orrow, I'll be at work, so C. will have gotten	I can't pick her up. D. gets		
sav	w it, she		lown to discover a kitten			
	-	B. had smiled eping a job. By the tin	C. smiled ne Ahmed was thirty, he	D. smiles eight different		
jol	bs. A. had	B. was having	C. had had	D. had been having		
6. M	5. Maria waits until her husband Al to work before she calls her friends on the phone.					
	A. will go	B. went	C. will have gone	D. goes		
7. I v	7. I went to an opera at Lincoln Center the last time I to New York City.					
	A. go	B. went	C. had gone	D. have gone		
	8. When the police arrived, the building was empty. The thieves and escaped throug an unlocked window.					
	A. will have entered		C. have entered			
	B. had entered		D. entered			
9. It	seems that whenever	I try to take some qu	iet time for myself, the j	phone		
	A. has been ringing		C. rings			
	B. is ringing		D. has rung			

10. I'll invite the Thor	npsons to the potlucl	the next time I	them.
A. see	B. will see	C. will have seen	D. have seen
11. I hard to	help support my fam	ily ever since I was a child	1.
A. worked	B. work	C. am working	D. have worked
12. A small animal rat	n across the path in fi		rough the woods.

A. was walking B. had walked C. am walking D. had been walking

PRACTICE 4. Using adverb clauses to show cause-and-effect relationships. (Chart 17-2) Directions: Combine the sentences, using the word or phrase in parentheses. Add commas where necessary. Make two sentences for each, showing the two possible positions of the adverb clause. <u>Underline</u> the adverb clause.

Example: Our flight was delayed. We decided to take a long walk around the terminal. (since) $\rightarrow \underline{Since \ our \ flight \ was \ delayed}$, we decided to take a long walk around the terminal. $\rightarrow We$ decided to take a long walk around the terminal <u>since our flight was \ delayed</u>.

- 1. My registration was canceled. I didn't pay my fees on time. (because)
- 2. Erica has qualified for the Olympics in speedskating. She must train even more vigorously. (now that)
- 3. We decided not to buy the house on Fourth Street. It's directly below flight patterns from the nearby international airport. (since)

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Using even though vs. because. (Charts 17-2 and 17-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with even though or because.

- 1. I put on my raincoat <u>even though</u> it was a bright, sunny day.
- 2. I put on my raincoat <u>because</u> it was raining.
- 3. _____ Sue is a good student, she received a scholarship.
- 4 _____ Ann is a good student, she didn't receive a scholarship.
- 5. ______ it was raining, we went for a walk.
- 6. _____ it was raining, we didn't go for a walk.
- 7. This letter was delivered ______ it didn't have enough postage.
- 8. That letter was returned to the sender ______ it didn't have enough postage.
- I'm going horseback riding with Judy this afternoon ______ I'm afraid of horses.
- 10. I'm going horseback riding with Judy this afternoon _____ I enjoy it.
- 11. _____ you've made it clear that you don't want any help, I have to at least offer to help you.

- I knew that I should get some sleep, but I just couldn't put my book down ______
 I was really enjoying it.
- 13. _____ Tom didn't know how to dance, he wanted to go to the school dance
 _____ he felt lonely sitting at home and staring blankly at the TV while all of his friends were having fun together.
- 14. My hair stylist subscribes to three different fashion magazines _______ she's not interested in clothes. She subscribes to them _______ her customers like them.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Direct contrast: while and whereas. (Chart 17-4)

Directions: Write "C" if the sentence (including punctuation) is CORRECT. Write "I" if the sentence is INCORRECT.

- 1. ____ While some chairs are soft, others are hard.
- 2. _____ While some chairs are hard, others are soft.
- 3. _____ Some chairs are soft, while others are hard.
- 4. _____ Some chairs are hard, while others are soft.
- 5. _____ Whereas some chairs are soft, others are hard.
- 6. _____ Some chairs are hard, whereas others are soft.
- 7. _____ Some chairs are soft, whereas others are hard.
- 8. _____ Whereas some chairs are hard, others are soft.
- 9. _____ While some chairs are soft, others are comfortable.

◇ PRACTICE 7. If-clauses. (Chart 17-5)

Directions: Underline the if-clause. Correct any errors in verb forms.

rains

- 1. Let's not go to the park if it will rain tomorrow.
- 2. If my car doesn't start tomorrow morning, I'll take the bus to work. (no change)
- 3. If I have free time during my work day, I send e-mail messages to friends.
- 4. I'll send you an e-mail if I will have some free time tomorrow.
- 5. If we don't leave within the next ten minutes, we are late to the theater.
- 6. If we will leave within the next two minutes, we will make it to the theater on time.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Using whether or not and even if. (Chart 17-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences, using the given information.

 Tom is going to go to the horse races no matter what. He doesn't care if his wife approves. In other words, Tom is going to go to the horse races even if his wife <u>doesn't approve</u>. He's going to go whether his wife <u>approves</u> or not. 2. Fatima is determined to buy an expensive car. It doesn't matter to her if she can't afford it. In other words, Fatima is going to buy an expensive car whether she

_____ it or not. She's going to buy one even if she ______ it.

- 4. Some students don't understand what the teacher is saying, but still they smile and nod. In other words, even if they ______ what the teacher is saying, they smile and nod. They smile and nod whether they ______ what the teacher is saying or not.

\diamond PRACTICE 9. Using in case and in the event that. (Chart 17-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using *in case*. Decide if it goes in the first blank or in the second blank. Add necessary punctuation and capitalization.

PART I.

- 1. <u>In case</u> you need to get in touch with me, I'll be in my office until late this evening.
- 2. \underline{W} we'll be at the Swan Hotel <u>in case</u> you need to call us.
- Mary is willing to work with you on your design project. ______ you find that you need help with it ______ she'll be back in town next Monday and can meet with you then.
- 4 _____ my boss has to stay near a phone all weekend _____
 - the company wants him to go to London to close the deal they've been working on all month.
- 5. _____ I'm not back in time to make dinner _____ I put the phone number for carry-out Chinese food on the refrigerator. You can call and order the food for yourself.

PART II. Complete the sentences using in the event that.

- 6. <u>In the event that</u> Janet is late for work again tomorrow, she will be fired.
- 7. Are you sure you're taking enough money with you? ______ you'd better take a credit card with you ______ you run out of cash.
- 9. Just to be on the safe side, ______ I always take a change of clothes in my carry-on bag ______ the airline loses my luggage.

\diamond PRACTICE 10. Using unless vs. if and only if. (Charts 17-8 and 17-9)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

- I'll give you a hand <u>B</u> you need it, but I hope I don't hurt my back.
 A. unless B. if
- I can't buy a car _____ I save enough money. A. unless B. only if
- Our kids are allowed to watch television after dinner _____ they have finished their homework. Homework must come first.
 A. unless
 B. only if
- 4. There can be peace in the world _____ all nations sincerely lend their energy to that effort.
 - A. unless B. only if
- 5. I'm afraid the battery is dead. _____ I buy a new one, the car won't start.A. UnlessB. If
- 6. Let's plan on an old-fashioned sit-down dinner with the whole family at the table at once.I'll prepare a really special dinner _____ you all promise to be home on time this evening.A. unlessB. only if

\diamond PRACTICE 11. Adverb clauses of condition. (Charts 17-5 \rightarrow 17-9)

Directions: Choose the correct words in *italics* so that the sentences make sense.

- 1. I'll pass the course only if I(pass,) don't pass the final examination.
- 2. I'm going to go, not going to go to the park unless the weather is nice.
- 3. I'm going to the park unless it rains, doesn't rain.
- 4. Tom doesn't like to work. He'll get a job unless, only if he has to.
- 5. I always eat, never eat breakfast unless I get up late and don't have enough time.
- 6. I always finish my homework even if, only if I'm sleepy and want to go to bed.
- 7. You will, won't learn to play the violin well unless you practice every day.
- 8. Even if the president calls, *wake*, *don't wake* me up. I don't want to talk to anyone. I want to sleep.
- 9. Jack is going to come to the game with us today if, unless his boss gives him the afternoon off.
- 10. Borrow, Don't borrow money from your friends unless you absolutely must.

♦ PRACTICE 12. Using only if vs. if: subject-verb inversion. (Chart 17-9)

Directions: Change the position of the adverb clause to the front of the sentence. Make any necessary changes in the verb of the main clause.

- 1. I can finish this work on time only if you help me. \rightarrow Only if you help me can I finish this work on time.
- 2. I can finish this work on time if you help me. \rightarrow If you help me, I can finish this work on time.
- 3. I will go only if I am invited.
- 4. I will go if I am invited.
- 5. I eat only if I am hungry.
- 6. I usually eat some fruit if I am hungry during the morning.
- 7. You will be considered for that job only if you know both Arabic and Spanish.
- 8. John goes to the market only if the refrigerator is empty.
- 9. I will tell you the truth about what happened only if you promise not to get angry.
- 10. I won't marry you if you can't learn to communicate your feelings.

O PRACTICE 13. Summary: abverb clauses. (Chapter 17)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

1. Alice will tutor you in math you promise to do everything she says.					
A. unless	B. only if	C. whereas	D. even though		
2. Oscar won't pass his math course he gets a tutor.					
A. because	B. in the event that	C. unless	D. only if		
3. Most people you meet will be polite to you you are polite to them.					
A. in case	B. only if	C. unless	D. if		
4. I'm glad that my mother made me take piano lessons when I was a child I hated it at the time. Now, I play the piano every day.					
A. even though	B. because	C. unless	D. if		
5. Chicken eggs will not hatch they are kept at the proper temperature.					
A. because	B. unless	C. only if	D. even though		
6. You'd better take your raincoat with you the weather changes. It could rain before you get home again.					
A. now that	B. even if	C. in case	D. only if		

7.	Ms. Jackson was assigned the fifth-grade science class she has the best qualifications among the available faculty.					
	A. although	B. whereas	C. if	D. since		
8.	8. My sister can fall asleep under any conditions, but I can't get to sleep the light is off and the room is perfectly quiet.					
	A. if	B. unless	C. in case	D. now that		
9.	9. The majority will of the people rules in a democracy, in a dictatorship, power is in the hands of a single person.					
	A. because	B. even though	C. while	D. unless		
10.	10. The cheapest way to get from an airport to a hotel is to take an airport bus, but I'm not sure if River City has one there is no airport bus, you can always take a taxi.					
	A. Unless	B. Now that	C. In the event that	D. Even though		
11.	 my country has a new democractic government, the people at last have more freedom. 					
	A. Even though	B. Even if	C. In the event that	D. Now that		
12.	12. Parents love and support their children the children misbehave or do foolish things.					
	A. even if	B. since	C. if	D. only if		



CHAPTER 18

Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases

♦ PRACTICE 1. Reduction of adverb clauses to modifying phrases. (Charts $18-1 \rightarrow 18-3$) Directions: Change the adverb clause to a modifying phrase.

opening

- 1. Since he opened his new business, Bob has been working 16 hours a day.
- 2. I shut off the lights before I left the room
- 3. While he was herding his goats in the mountains, an Ethiopian named Kaldi discovered the coffee plant more than 1200 years ago.
- 4. Before they marched into battle, ancient Ethiopian soldiers ate a mixture of raw coffee beans and fat for extra energy.
- 5. After I had met the movie star in person, I understood why she was so popular.
- 6. I found my keys after I searched through all my pockets.
- 7. When it was first brought to Europe, the tomato was thought to be poisonous.
- 8. Since it was first imported into Australia many years ago, the rabbit has become a serious pest because it has no natural enemies there.

\Diamond PRACTICE 2. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 \rightarrow 18-3)

Directions: <u>Underline</u> the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause. Change the adverb clauses to modifying phrases, if possible.

- 1. While <u>Sam</u> was driving to work in the rain, <u>his car</u> got a flat tire. \rightarrow (no change)
- While <u>Sam</u> was driving to work, <u>he</u> had a flat tire.
 → While driving to work, Sam had a flat tire.
- 3. Before Nick left on his trip, his son gave him a big hug and a kiss.
- 4. Before Nick left on his trip, he gave his itinerary to his secretary.
- 5. After Tom had worked hard in the garden all afternoon, he took a shower and then went to the movies with his friends.
- 6. After Sunita had made a delicious chicken curry for her friends, they wanted the recipe.
- 7. Before a friend tries to do something hard, an American may say "Break a leg!" to wish him or her good luck.
- 8. Emily always straightens her desk before she leaves the office at the end of the day.

- \diamond PRACTICE 3. Verb forms in adverb clauses and modifying phrases. (Charls 18-1 \rightarrow 18-3) Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses.
 - 1. a. Before (leave) <u>leaving</u> on his trip, Tom renewed his passport.
 - b. Before Tom (leave) _____ left____ on his trip, he renewed his passport.
 - 2. a. After Thomas Edison (invent) <u>invented/had invented</u> the light bulb, he went on to create many other useful inventions.
 - b. After (*invent*) <u>inventing/having invented</u> the light bulb, Thomas Edison went on to create many other useful inventions.
 - 3. a. While (work) ______ with uranium ore, Marie Curie discovered two new elements, radium and polonium.
 - b. While she (work) ______ with uranium ore, Marie Curie discovered two new elements, radium and polonium.
 - 4. a. Before an astronaut (fly) ______ on a space mission, s/he will have undergone thousands of hours of training.
 - b. Before (*fly*) ______ on a space mission, an astronaut will have undergone thousands of hours of training.
 - 5. a. After they (study) ______ the stars, the ancient Mayans in Central America developed a very accurate solar calendar.
 - b. After (study) ______ the stars, the ancient Mayans in Central America developed a very accurate solar calendar.
 - 6. a. Since *(learn)* ______ that cigarettes cause cancer, many people have stopped smoking.
 - b. Since they (*learn*) ______ that cigarettes cause cancer, many people have stopped smoking.
 - 7. a. Aspirin can be poisonous when it *(take)* ______ in excessive amounts.
 - b. Aspirin can be poisonous when *(take)* ______ in excessive amounts.
 - 8. a. When *(take)* ______ aspirin, you should be sure to follow the directions on the bottle.
 - b. When you *(take)* ______ aspirin, you should be sure to follow the directions on the bottle.
 - 9. a. I took a wrong turn while I (*drive*) ______ to my uncle's house and ended up back where I started.
 - b. I took a wrong turn while (*drive*) ______ to my uncle's house and ended up back where I started.

PRACTICE 4. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Directions: Combine the two sentences, making a modifying phrase out of the first sentence, if possible.

- 1. Larry didn't want to disturb his sleeping wife. He tiptoed out of the room.
 - → Not wanting to disturb his sleeping wife, Larry tiptoed out of the room.
- 2. Larry didn't want to disturb his sleeping wife. She needed to catch up on her sleep.
 * (no change)
- 3. I misunderstood the directions to the hotel. I arrived one hour late for the dinner party.
- 4. I misunderstood the directions to the hotel. The taxi driver didn't know how to get there either.
- 5. The taxi driver misunderstood my directions to the hotel. He took me to the wrong place.
- 6. Ann remembered that she hadn't turned off the oven. She went directly home.
- 7. I met Gina after work. She suggested playing tennis.
- 8. My family and I live in the Pacific Northwest, where it rains a great deal. We are accustomed to cool, damp weather.

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 \rightarrow 18-5)

Directions: Make sentences that combine a modifying phrase with a main clause. Write the capital letter of the most logical main clause to complete the sentence. Use each capital letter only once.

Modifying phrases

- 1. Trying to understand the physics problem, E
- 2. Since injuring my arm, _____
- 3. Fighting for her life, _____
- 4. Wanting to ask a question, _____
- 5. Exhausted after washing the windows, _____
- 6. Not wanting to disturb the manager, _____
- Upon hearing the announcement that their plane was delayed, _____
- 8. Talking with the employees after work, ____
- 9. Attempting to enter the freeway, _____
- 10. Currently selling at record-low prices, _____
- 11. Stepping onto the platform to receive their medals, _____
- 12. Before turning in your exam paper, _____

Main clauses

- A. the desperate woman grasped a floating log after the boat capsized.
- B. I collapsed in my chair for a rest.
- C. the taxi driver caused a multiple-car accident.
- D. carefully proofread all your answers.
- \checkmark E. the students repeated the experiment.
 - F. the athletes waved to the cheering crowd.
 - G. the little girl raised her hand.
 - H. the manager learned of their dissatisfaction with their jobs.
 - I. the passengers angrily walked back to the ticket counter.
 - J. I haven't been able to play tennis.
 - K. gold is considered a good investment.
 - L. the worker in charge of Section B of the assembly line told the assistant manager about the problem.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Modifying phrases with upon. (Chart 18-5)

Directions: Write completions using the ideas in the given list.

She learned the problem was not at all serious. She was told she got it. He heard these words. He investigated the cause. \checkmark I arrived at the airport. I reached the other side of the lake.

- 1. It had been a long, uncomfortable trip. Upon ____avriving at the airport____, I quickly unfastened my seat belt and stood in the aisle waiting my turn to disembark.
- 2. I rented a small fishing boat last weekend, but I ended up doing more rowing than fishing. The motor died halfway across the lake, so I had to row to shore. It was a long distance away. Upon ______ _____, I was exhausted.
- 3. At first, we thought the fire had been caused by lightning. However, upon _____ _____, the fire chief determined it had been caused by faulty electrical wiring.

- 4. Amy felt terrible. She was sure she had some dread disease, so she went to the doctor for some tests. Upon ______, she was extremely relieved.
- 5. Janet wanted that scholarship with all her heart and soul. Upon ______

, she jumped straight up in the air and let out a scream of happiness.

\diamond PRACTICE 7. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 \rightarrow 18-5)

Directions: Write "I" if the sentence is INCORRECT. Write "C" if the sentence is CORRECT. Reminder: A modifying phrase must modify the subject of the sentence.

- 1. ____ While taking a trip across Europe this summer, Jane's camera suddenly quit working.
- 2. ____ When using a microwave oven for the first time, read the instructions carefully about the kind of dish you can use.
- 3. _____ Having been given their instructions, the teacher told her students to begin working on the test.
- 4. _____ After receiving the Nobel Peace Prize in 1979, Mother Teresa returned to Calcutta, India, to work and live among the poor, the sick, and the dying.
- 5. _____ Having studied Greek for several years, Sarah's pronunciation was easy to understand.

- 6. _____ Since returning to her country after graduation, Maria's parents have enjoyed having all their children home again.
- 7. _____ While bicycling across the United States, the wheels on my bike had to be replaced several times.
- 8. _____ When told he would have to have surgery, the doctor reassured Bob that he wouldn't have to miss more than a week of work.
- 9. _____ Upon hearing the bad news, tears began to flow from her eyes.
- 10. _____ Before driving across a desert, be sure that your car has good tires as well as enough oil, water, and gas to last the trip.

ADHSA MAROUN

		www.ez-english	.narod.ru			
	CE 8. TEST A: Connec Directions: Choose the cor		ers 16 → 18)			
Ĺ	Example: <u>B</u> I get a A. Until	ngry and upset, I try t B. Whenever	to take ten deep breat C. Whereas	hs. D. For		
	1 Paul brings t A. Since	he money for our lund B. As soon as	ch, we'll go right dow C. Now that	n to the cafeteria. D. Until		
		- I	ater, I sank to the bottom like a rock ut the water, but I still can't swim well. C. When D. Now that			
	 A. As soon as It's obvious that neith 					
	A. nor the manager	rintend	C. nor the manager intends			
	B. intend nor the n		D. intend nor the n			
	4 I heard the te	elephone ring, I didn'i	t answer it.			
	A. Because	B. Only if	C. Even though	D. So		
	5. After to 45 n	ninutes of an extremel	y boring speech, I fou	und myself nodding off.		
	A. was listening	B. listen	C. listening	D. having listen		
	I am in that	Why did I stay until the end? I am never going to stay and watch a bad movie again! I am in that situation, I'm going to leave the theater immediately.				
	A. The next time	B. Now that	C. After	D. Until		
 7. "Why aren't you ready to go?" "I am ready." "How can that be? It's freezing outside, you're wearing shorts and 				sharts and a T shirt!"		
	A. for	B. so	C. because	D. yet		
	8. Erin likes to swim, jog	r and tennis				
	A. plays	B. play	C. to play	D. playing		
	9. Since to a war A. upon moving	armer and less humid B. I moving	climate, I've had no t C. moving	rouble with my asthma. D. I move		
10. While to help Tim with his math, I got impatient because he wouldn't pay at to what I was saying.				se he wouldn't pay attention		
	A. I am trying	B. having tried	C. I try	D. trying		
1	1. We're going to lose th A. if	is game our t B. unless	eam doesn't start pla C. although	ying better soon. D. whereas		
	A A & AA		o, and onger			
1	2. Some fish can survive A. since	only in salt water, B. unless	C. if	an live only in fresh water. D. whereas		
1	13. Joe seemed to be in a good mood, he snapped at me angrily when I asked him to join us.			grily when I asked him to		
	A. for	B. so	C. yet	D. and		
14 Jan arrives, we will have finished this group project.						
*	A. By the time	B. Until	C. Now that	D. Since		

15. For the most part, y A. they sleep		·····································	ing, and a lot. D. they are sleeping
16 I get back	from my next busine	ss trip, I'm taking a fev	v days off. I'm worn out!
A. Every time	B. Since	C. Now that	D. Once
17 unprepare	d for the exam, I felt	sure I would get a low	score.
A. Having	B. Being	C. Because	D. Upon
18. Ever since	Ted the bad news, h	e's been avoiding me.	
A. I told	B. told	C. telling	D. having told
19 my daught	ter reaches the age of	sixteen, she will be abl	le to drive.
A. Having	B. Since	C. Once	D. Because
20. Matt will enjoy skii lessons.	ng more the next tim	e he goes to the Alps _	he has had skiing
A. unless	B. before	C. now that	D. and

-2-OHBHSHIM

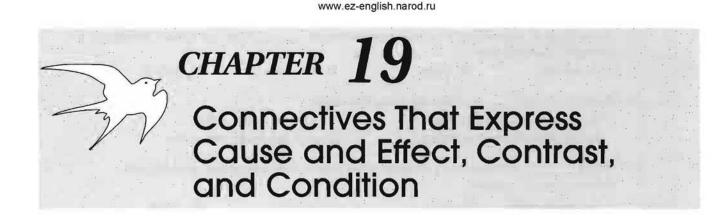
\diamond PRACTICE 9. TEST B: Connecting ideas. (Chapters 16 \rightarrow 18)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Directions. Choose the con	lieut allswei.		
Example: <u>B</u> I get a A. Until	ngry and upset, I try t B. Whenever		s. D. For
whole family to be su		e able to adjust to the	
A. accept		C. having been acce	pted
B. accepted		D. accepting	
2. The flowers will soon get warmer.	start to bloom	_ winter is gone and t	he weather is beginning to
A. even if	B. now that	C. so	D. even though
3. Only if you promise t	o study hard	to futor you	
	B. agree I		D. L. will agree
A. will I agree	D. agree 1	C. I agree	D. I will agree
4. Great white sharks ar	e dangerous to	_ will attack without v	varning.
A. humans, they		C. humans. Becaus	e they
B. humans		D. humans. They	
5 the need to f next few days.	inish this project soon	, I want you to work o	n this overtime for the
A. Because	B. Despite	C. Because of	D. Even though
	-		-
		ained inside Asia, Euro terious material to be l	opeans were forced to pay prought overland to
-	B. Only if	C. Since	D. Until
7. Jack insisted that he d	lidn't need any help.	I helped him a	nyway
A. and	B. so	C. for	D. but
4 k . 6411.4	D . 30	0. 101	D. Out
8 by the swim	ning pool, I realized I	was getting sunburned	1.
A. Because		C. While I am lying	
B. Lying		D. Even though I wa	as lying
9 it was a form	al dinner narty. James	wore his blue ieans	
A. Since	iai unifici parti, james	C. In the event that	
B. Even though		D. Until	
D. Lych blough		D. Onth	
10. Ancient Egyptians mu Peruvians mummified extremely dry desert	l their dead through n	arough the use of chem atural processes by put	
A. whereas	B. because	C. even though	D. whether or not
11. Mr. Jackson hopes to convinced that it is ab		l not agree to the oper	ation he is
A. in the event that	t	C. if	
B. unless		D. only if	
		-	

12.	Some English words h example, dear and deer		ciation they an	re spelled differently, for
	A. unless	B. since	C. even though	D. only if
13.	Both my books	from my room last	night.	
	A. were stolen and	my wallet	C. and my wallet sto	len
	B. and my wallet w	ere stolen	D. and my wallet wa	s stolen
14.	When a dictiant abbreviations it contains		able to understand the	e symbols and
	A. having used	B. use	C. to use	D. using
15.	shouldn't exceed the s	peed limit yo	ou are an experienced	
	A. even if	B. only if	C. if	D. in the event that
16.	My nose got sunburne A. if	ed I wore a h B. since		
	11. 11	D. Shiec	O. Decadoe	
17.	Do you like jazz? You	should go to the jazz	festival you li	ke that kind of music.
	A. if	B. unless	C. although	D. while
18.	Only if you get to the performance.	theater early	a chance to get a ticke	et for tonight's
	A. you will have	B. have	C. will you have	D. you have
19.	The bread was old an	d stale, Marti	ha ate it anyway.	
	A. and	B. so	C. for	D. but
20.	you're better organization?	at numbers than I am	i, why don't you take o	over as treasurer of the
	No. Company and the second sec	B. Only if	C. For that	D. Unless

-onuisn.maron.nu



♦ PRACTICE 1. Because vs. because of. (Charts 17-2 and 19-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with either because or because of.

- 1. We delayed our trip <u>because of</u> the bad weather.
- 2. Sue's eyes were red <u>because</u> she had been crying.
- 3. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink _____ pollution.
- 4. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink ______ it is polluted.
- Some people think Harry succeeded in business ______ his charming personality rather than his business skills.
- 6. You can't enter this secured area _____ you don't have an official permit.
- 7. My lecture notes were incomplete ______ the instructor talked too fast.
- 8. It's unsafe to travel in that country ______ the ongoing civil war.

♦ PRACTICE 2. Because vs. therefore. (Charts 17-2, 19-1, and 19-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with either because or therefore.

- 1. Matt didn't go to work yesterday <u>because</u> he didn't feel well.
- 2. Matt didn't feel well. ______, he didn't go to work yesterday.
- Sharon hid her feelings from everyone. _____, no one suspected the deep emotional pain she was suffering.
- No one ever knows what's going on inside of Sharon ______ she hides her feelings behind a mask of smiles.
- young Joseph was an inquisitive student, he was always liked by his teachers.
- 6. The television broadcast was interrupted in the middle of the eighth inning;

_____, most of the audience missed the conclusion of the baseball game.

\diamond PRACTICE 3. Showing cause and effect. (Charts 17-2, 19-1, and 19-2)

PART I. Complete the sentences with **because of, because**, or **therefore**. Add any necessary punctuation and capitalization.

- 1. <u>Because</u> it rained, we stayed home.
- 2. It rained <u>. Therefore</u>, we stayed home.
- 3. We stayed home <u>because of</u> the bad weather.
- 5. The residents moved inland ______ the hurricane.
- 6. _____ the hurricane was moving directly toward the town all residents were advised to move inland.
- Piranhas, which are found in the Amazon River, are ferocious and bloodthirsty fish. When they attack in great numbers, they can devour an entire cow in several minutes
 ______ their extremely sharp teeth.

PART II. Complete the sentence with *due to, since,* or *consequently*. Add any necessary punctuation and capitalization.

- 8. _____ his poor eyesight John has to sit in the front row in class.
- 9. _____ John has poor eyesight he has to sit in the front row.
- 10. John has poor eyesight ______ he has to sit in the front row.
- 11. Sarah is afraid of heights ______ she will not walk across a bridge.
- 12. Sarah will not walk across a bridge _____ her fear of heights.
- 13. Mark is overweight ______ his doctor has advised him to exercise regularly.
- 14. _____ a diamond is extremely hard it can be used to cut glass.

◇ PRACTICE 4. Periods and commas. (Charts 16-3 and 19-3)

Directions: Punctuate the sentences properly, using periods and commas. Capitalize as appropriate.

- 1. Edward missed the final exam. T therefore, he failed the course.*
- 2. Edward failed the course because he missed the final exam. (no change)
- 3. Edward missed the final exam. $\mathbf{H}_{\mathbf{h}}$ e simply forgot to go to it.**

^{*}The use of a semicolon is also possible: *Edward missed the final exam; therefore, he failed the course.* **The use of a semicolon is also possible:

Edward missed the final exam; he simply forgot to go to it.

- 4. Because we forgot to make a reservation we couldn't get a table at our favorite restaurant last night.
- 5. The waitress kept dropping trays full of dishes therefore she was fired.
- 6. The waiter kept forgetting customers' orders so he was fired.
- 7. Ron is an unpleasant dinner companion because of his uncouth table manners.
- 8. The needle has been around since prehistoric times the button was invented about 2000 years ago the zipper wasn't invented until 1890.
- 9. It is possible for wildlife observers to identify individual zebras because the patterns of stripes on each zebra are unique no two zebras are alike.
- 10. When students are learning to type, they often practice the sentence "The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" because it contains all the letters of the alphabet.

\diamond PRACTICE 5. Such ... that and so ... that. (Chart 19-4)

Directions: Add such or so to the following sentences.

- 1. It was <u>such</u> a hot day that we canceled our tennis game.
- 2. The test was <u>so</u> easy that everyone got a high score.
- 3. The movie was _____ bad that we left early.
- 4. It was _____ a bad movie that we left early.
- 5. Professor James is ______ a stern taskmaster that lazy students won't take his class.
- The restaurant patron at the table near us was ______ belligerent that we all felt embarrassed, especially when he swept everything off the table and demanded his money back.
- 7. The intricate metal lacework on the Eiffel Tower in Paris was ______ complicated that the structure took more than two and a half years to complete.
- 8. Charles and his brother are _____ hard-working carpenters that I'm sure they'll make a success of their new business.
- 9. The children had _____ much fun at the carnival that they begged to go again.
- 10. I feel like I have _____ little energy that I wonder if I'm getting sick.

\diamond PRACTICE 6. Such ... that and so ... that. (Chart 19-4)

Directions: Combine the sentences by using so ... that or such ... that.

- We took a walk. It was a nice day.
 It was such a nice day that we took a walk.
- 2. The weather was hot. You could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
- 3. I couldn't understand her. She talked too fast.

- 4. It was an expensive car. We couldn't afford to buy it.
- 5. I don't feel like going to class. We're having beautiful weather.
- 6. Grandpa held me tightly when he hugged me. I couldn't breathe for a moment.
- 7. There were few people at the meeting. It was canceled.
- 8. The classroom has comfortable chairs. The students find it easy to fall asleep.
- 9. Ted couldn't get to sleep last night. He was worried about the exam.
- 10. Jerry got angry. He put his fist through the wall.
- 11. I have many problems. I can use all the help you can give me.
- 12. The tornado struck with great force. It lifted automobiles off the ground.
- 13. I can't figure out what this sentence says. His handwriting is illegible.
- 14. David has too many girlfriends. He can't remember all of their names.
- 15. Too many people came to the meeting. There were not enough seats for everyone.

◇ PRACTICE 7. So that. (Chart 19-5)

Directions: Combine the ideas using so that.

- Rachel wanted to watch the news. She turned on the TV.
 * Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.
- 2. Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment. He didn't want to forget to go.
 Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment so that he wouldn't forget to go.
- 3. Nancy is carrying extra courses every semester. She wants to graduate early.
- 4. Jason wants to travel in Europe. He's tired of work and school and is planning to take a semester off.
- 5. Suzanne didn't want to disturb her roommate. She lowered the volume on the TV set.
- 6. Whenever we are planning a vacation, we call a travel agent. We are able to get expert advice on our itinerary.
- 7. It's a good idea for you to learn how to type. You'll be able to type your own papers when you go to the university.
- 8. Lynn wanted to make sure that she didn't forget to take her book back to the library. She tied a string around her finger.
- 9. Ed took some change from his pocket. He wanted to buy a newspaper.
- 10. I wanted to listen to the news while I was making dinner. I turned on the TV.
- 11. I unplugged the phone. I didn't want to be interrupted while I was working.
- 12. Yesterday Linda was driving on the highway when her car started making strange noises. After she pulled over to the side of the road, she raised the hood of her car in order to make sure that other drivers knew that she had car trouble.

		www.ez-english	.narod.ru	
	E 8. Cause and effe		7-2, and 19-1 → 19-	5)
Ex	ample: <u>B</u> I was ti	ired. I went to bed.		
	A. Because of	B. Since	C. For	D. Due to
1.	The workers have gon	e on strike,	all production has cea	sed.
	A. Because	B. So that	C. Now that	D. Therefore
2.	A small fish needs can	nouflage to hide itself	its enemies c	annot find it.
	A. so that	B. because	C. therefore	D. due to
3.	Our apartment buildir an extra lock on the d			I'm going to put
	A. now that	B. so that	C. so	D. since
4,	The Chippewas are N the world, it a			ne of the most complex in
	A. consequently	B. so	C. so that	D. for
5.	the bad greas company arrived.	e stain on the carpet,	we had to rearrange t	he furniture before the
	A. Because	B. Now that	C. For	D. Because of
б.	The price of airline tic people are flying than		ecently the t	ickets cost less, more
	A. Consequently	B. Because of	C. Because	D. For
7.	Let's ask our teacher h	now to solve this probl	lem we can't	agree on the answer.
	A. since	B. because of	C. consequently	D. so
8.	The fire raged out of	control. It got	_ bad that more firefig	ghters had to be called in.
	A. such	B. therefore	C. so	D. so that
9.	Dolphins are sometim swim in schools with o			nets they often
	A. due to	B. because	C. so	D. therefore
10.	We can finally afford t been waiting for.	to trade in the old car	for a new one	_ I've gotten the raise I've
	A. so that	B. consequently	C. now that	D. so
11.	Two of the factories ir	n our small town have	closed, une	mployment is high.
	A. Consequently	B. Because	C. So that	D. For
12.	I had nothing	g for lunch but an app	le, I ate dinner early.	
	A. For	B. Since	C. Due to	D. Therefore

13. I needed to finish the marathon race ______ I could prove that I had the strength and stamina to do it. I didn't care whether I won or not.
A. because of B. so that C. for D. therefore

- 14. The Eskimo* way of life changed dramatically during the 1800s ______ the introduction of firearms and the influx of large numbers of European whalers and fur traders.
 A. because B. for C. due to D. so
- 15. During extremely hot weather, elephants require both mud and water to keep their skin cool ______ they have no sweat glands.
 - A. and B. because of C. so D. due to the fact that

◇ PRACTICE 9. Showing contrast: punctuation. (Chart 19-6)

Directions: Add commas, periods, and capital letters as necessary. Do not add or omit any words. Do not change the order of the words.

- 1. Annie told the truth, but no one believed her.
- 2. Annie told the truth. **H** however, no one believed her.**
- 3. Even though Annie told the truth no one believed her.
- 4. No one believed Annie even though she told the truth.
- 5. Annie told the truth yet no one believed her.
- 6. Annie told the truth nevertheless no one believed her.
- 7. In spite of the fact that Annie told the truth no one believed her.
- 8. No one believed Annie despite the fact that she told the truth.
- 9. Even though all of my family friends have advised me not to travel abroad during this time of political turmoil I'm leaving next week to begin a trip around the world.
- 10. Some people think great strides have been made in cleaning up the environment in much of the world however others think the situation is much worse than it was twenty years ago.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Despite/in spite of vs. even though/although. (Chart 19-6)

Directions: Choose the correct completions.

- 1. a. *Even though, Despite* her doctor warned her, Carol has continued to smoke nearly three packs of cigarettes a day.
 - b. Even though, Despite her doctor's warnings, Carol has continued to smoke nearly three packs of cigarettes a day.
 - c. Even though, Despite the warnings her doctor gave her, Carol continues to smoke.
 - d. *Even though, Despite* the fact that her doctor warned her of dangers to her health, Carol continues to smoke.
 - e. Even though, Despite she has been warned about the dangers of smoking by her doctor, Carol continues to smoke.

^{*}Eskimos are people who live in the Arctic regions of northern Alaska, northern Canada, and Greenland.

^{**}Also possible: Annie told the truth; however, no one believed her.

- 2. a. *Although, In spite of an approaching storm, the two climbers continued their trek up the mountain.*
 - b. Although, In spite of a storm was approaching, the two climbers continued their trek.
 - c. Although, In spite of there was an approaching storm, the two climbers continued up the mountain.
 - d. Although, In spite of the storm that was approaching the mountain area, the two climbers continued their trek.
 - e. Although, In spite of the fact that a storm was approaching the mountain area, the two climbers continued their trek.
- 3. a. Although, Despite his many hours of practice, George failed his driving test for the third time.
 - b. Although, Despite he had practiced for many hours, George failed his driving test for the third time.
 - c. Although, Despite practicing for many hours, George failed his driving test again.
 - d. *Although, Despite* his mother and father spent hours with him in the car trying to teach him how to drive, George failed his driving test repeatedly.
 - e. *Although, Despite* his mother and father's efforts to teach him how to drive, George failed his driving test.



- 4. a. *Even though, In spite of* repeated crop failures due to drought, the villagers are refusing to leave their traditional homeland for resettlement in other areas.
 - b. *Even though, In spite of* their crops have failed repeatedly due to drought, the villagers are refusing to leave their traditional homeland for resettlement in other areas.

- c. The villagers refuse to leave even though, in spite of the drought.
- d. The villagers refuse to leave even though, in spite of the drought seriously threatens their food supply.
- e. The villagers refuse to leave *even though, in spite of* the threat to their food supply because of the continued drought.
- f. The villagers refuse to leave *even though, in spite of* the threat to their food supply is serious because of the continued drought.
- g. The villagers refuse to leave even though, in spite of their food supply is threatened.
- h. The villagers refuse to leave even though, in spite of their threatened food supply.
- PRACTICE 11. Using in spite of/despite and even though/though/although. (Chart 19-6) Directions: Choose the phrase from the list that best completes each sentence. Use each completion only once.

A. its many benefits

- ✓B. its inherent dangers
- C. it has been shown to be safe
- D. it has been shown to cause birth defects and sometimes death
- E. his fear of heights
- F. he is afraid of heights
- G. he is normally quite shy and sometimes inarticulate
- H. an inability to communicate well in any language besides English
- I. having excellent skills in the job category they were trying to fill
- J. he had the necessary qualifications
- 1. In spite of \underline{B} , nuclear energy is a clean and potentially inexhaustible source of energy.
- 2. In spite of _____, Carl enjoyed his helicopter trip over the Grand Canyon in Arizona.
- 3. Because of his age, John was not hired even though _____.
- 4. Although ______, Mark rode an elevator to the top of the World Trade Center in New York for the magnificent view.
- 5. Although _____, many people avoid using a microwave oven for fear of its rays.
- 6. Jack usually has little trouble making new friends in another country despite _____.
- 7. In spite of _____, the use of chemotherapy to treat cancer has many severe side effects.
- 8. Though _____, Bob managed to give an excellent presentation at the board meeting.
- 9. Jerry continued to be denied a promotion despite _____.
- 10. DDT is still used in many countries as a primary insecticide even though _____.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Direct contrast. (Chart 19-7)

Directions: Connect the given ideas, using the words in parentheses. Add commas, periods, semicolons, and capital letters as necessary.

- 1. (while) red is bright and lively gray is a dull color
 - \rightarrow Red is bright and lively, while gray is a dull color. OR
 - \rightarrow While red is bright and lively, gray is a dull color.
- 2. (on the other hand) Jane is insecure and unsure of herself her sister is full of self-confidence
- 3. (while) a rock is heavy a feather is light
- 4. (whereas) some children are unruly others are quiet and obedient
- 5. (on the other hand) language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex math and science courses are difficult for him
- 6. (however) strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy
- ◇ PRACTICE 13. Cause and effect; showing contrast. (Charts 16-3, 17-2, and 19-1 → 19-7) Directions: Show the relationship between the ideas by adding any of the following expressions, as appropriate. There may be more than one possible completion.

because	because of	while/whereas	on the other hand
since	due to	nevertheless	in spite of
now that	even though	however	despite
therefore	although		

- 1. It was still hot in the room _____ even though/although___ I had turned on the air conditioner.
- 2. Several people in the crowd became ill and fainted <u>due to/because of</u> the extreme heat.
- 3. The gardener trimmed the branches on the cherry tree _____ I asked him not to.
- 4. The meat of the puffer fish can cause paralysis or even death if it is improperly prepared.

_____, it remains a delicacy in Japan for brave diners.

- 5. _____ everyone disagreed with him, Brian went ahead with his original plan for the company.
- The first mention of the game of chess appears in an Indian text written almost 1500 years ago. _______ its ancient beginnings, it remains one of the most widely played games in the world today.
- Alice heard a siren and saw the flashing lights of a police car in her rear-view mirror.
 _______, she quickly pulled over to the side of the road and stopped.

- Most adults carry around certain attitudes and prejudices about the world around them. Most children, ______, enter new situations without such preconceived notions.
- 10. _____ paper was first developed by the ancient Chinese, its English name comes from the word *papyrus*, the name of an Egyptian water plant.
- 12. ______ aspirin is relatively safe for most adults, it should be administered very carefully to children, if at all. It can be dangerous to children's health.
- 13. The peanut is used today to make everything from cosmetics to explosives
 _______ the pioneering scientific work of George Washington Carver in the 1910s and 1920s.
- 14. In ancient China, yellow was considered to be an imperial color. ______, only the emperor was allowed to wear it. No one else could have yellow clothing of any kind.
- 15. ______ the abacus had been in use in Asia since ancient times, many in the Western world credited 19-year-old Blaise Pascal, a Frenchman, with inventing the first calculating machine in 1642.
- 16. ______ she thought she heard the telephone ringing, Marge turned the TV down—only to discover it had been a telephone on the show she was watching.

◇ PRACTICE 14. Using otherwise. (Chart 19-8)

Directions: Make two sentences. Show the relationship between them by using **otherwise**. In the first sentence, use a modal auxiliary or phrasal modal: **should**, **had better**, **have to**, **must**, etc.

- If you don't eat less and get more exercise, you won't lose weight.
 You should (had better/have to/must) eat less and get more exercise. Otherwise, you won't lose weight.
- 2. The children can watch TV tonight only if they finish all of their chores.
 - The children have to (had better/should/must) finish all of their chores. Otherwise, they cannot watch TV tonight.
- 3. Unless you speak up now, the boss will go ahead without knowing that you don't agree.
- 4. If you don't stop at the store on your way home from work, we won't have anything to eat for dinner tonight.
- 5. Unless you think it through very carefully, you won't come up with the right answer.
- 6. If we don't catch any fish this morning, we're going to have beans for dinner again.

- 7. It's going to be very difficult to finish on time if you don't get someone to help you.
- 8. Maria is probably going to lose her job unless she finds a way to convince the boss that the error was unavoidable.

\diamond PRACTICE 15. Expressing conditions. (Charts 17-6 \rightarrow 17-9 and 19-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate form of the verb pass.

- 1. Keith will graduate if he <u>PASSES</u> all of his courses.
- 2. Sam won't graduate if he <u>doesn't pass</u> all of his courses.
- 3. Ed won't graduate unless he ______ all of his courses.
- 4. Sue will graduate only if she ______ all of her courses.
- 5. Jessica will graduate even if she ______ all of her courses.
- 6. Alex won't graduate even if he _____ all of his courses.
- 7. Jennifer will graduate unless she ______ all of her courses.
- 8. Amy won't graduate in the event that she ______ all of her courses.
- 9. Jerry ______ all of his courses. Otherwise, he won't graduate.
- 10. Carolyn ______ all of her courses, or else she won't graduate.

WWW. R.C. OINSISSING MARINE

\diamond PRACTICE 16. TEST A: Connecting ideas. (Chapters $16 \rightarrow 19$) Directions: Choose the best completion.

	I have to eat breakfast break.	in the morning.	, I get grouchy and	hungry before my lunch
	A. Consequently	B. And	C. Otherwise	D. However
2.	My mouth is burning! A. such	This is spicy B. so	food that I don't thin C. very	k I can finish it. D. too
3.	I couldn't use the pay	phone, I didr	i't have any coins with	me.
	A. yet	B. despite	C. for	D. even though
4.	Bats are fascinating	have many inter	resting and amazing q	ualities.
		re, they		
	B. animals, they		D. animals. Because	they
5.	I need to find an apart so, I will move to Chic			l one in the next week or
	A. If	B. Even if	C. Whether	D. Only if
6.	Sam and I would love can find a babysitter.	to meet you at a resta	urant tonight, but we d	can do that we
	A. if	B. unless	C. only if	D. even if
7.	want to take a to fly to Mexico City f	-	ern Canada, but my ti	raveling companion wants
	A. Although I		C. I	D. Despite I
8.	Timmy doesn't do wel longer than a minute of		s inability to concentra	ate on any one thing for
	A. as	B. because of	C. because	D. therefore
9.	A. as Tony spent m soft drink or candy bas	oney buying movie tic		
9.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bar	oney buying movie tic	kets that he didn't hav	
	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bas A. such You should learn how	toney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of	kets that he didn't hav C. too much	e enough left to buy a
	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bas A. such	toney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of	kets that he didn't hav C. too much	e enough left to buy a D. so much
10.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bar A. such You should learn how situation if necessary. A. so that Cars have become mu	toney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of to change a tire on yo B. if	ekets that he didn't hav C. too much ur car you can C. for that	e enough left to buy a D. so much n handle an emergency
10.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bas A. such You should learn how situation if necessary. A. so that	toney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of to change a tire on yo B. if	ekets that he didn't hav C. too much ur car you can C. for that	ve enough left to buy a D. so much n handle an emergency D. therefore
10.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bar A. such You should learn how situation if necessary. A. so that Cars have become mu the past.	toney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of to change a tire on yo B. if ch more complicated. B. Therefore	ekets that he didn't hav C. too much ur car you can C. for that , mechanics r C. So that	 D. so much n handle an emergency D. therefore need more training than in D. For
10.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bar A. such You should learn how situation if necessary. A. so that Cars have become mu the past. A. Because	toney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of to change a tire on yo B. if ch more complicated. B. Therefore	ekets that he didn't hav C. too much ur car you can C. for that , mechanics r C. So that	 ve enough left to buy a D. so much n handle an emergency D. therefore need more training than in D. For
10 <i>.</i> 11. 12.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bas A. such You should learn how situation if necessary. A. so that Cars have become mu the past. A. Because Not wanting to be late	noney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of to change a tire on yo B. if ch more complicated. B. Therefore my first day of class, B. because I ran	Exerts that he didn't have C. too much ur car you can C. for that , mechanics r C. So that to school afte C. I ran	D. so much D. so much n handle an emergency D. therefore need more training than in D. For r I missed my bus.
10 <i>.</i> 11. 12.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bar A. such You should learn how situation if necessary. A. so that Cars have become mu the past. A. Because Not wanting to be late A. so I ran It was raining	noney buying movie tic r. B. a lot of to change a tire on yo B. if ch more complicated. B. Therefore my first day of class, B. because I ran	Exerts that he didn't have C. too much ur car you can C. for that , mechanics r C. So that to school afte C. I ran	D. so much D. so much n handle an emergency D. therefore need more training than in D. For r I missed my bus.
10 <i>.</i> 11. 12.	Tony spent m soft drink or candy bar A. such You should learn how situation if necessary. A. so that Cars have become mu the past. A. Because Not wanting to be late A. so I ran It was raining	 a lot of b. a lot of c. b. a lot of could a tire on yo b. if ch more complicated. b. Therefore my first day of class, b. because I ran I couldn't go outside. B. so hard that 	 ckets that he didn't hav C. too much ur car you can C. for that , mechanics r C. So that to school after C. I ran C. so that 	 be enough left to buy a D. so much n handle an emergency D. therefore need more training than in D. For r I missed my bus. D. therefore, I ran D. too hard that

			cation can improve her life.
A. therefore	B. because of	C. because	D. so
16. Sonia broke her leg i three months.	n two places.	, she had to wear a ca	ast and use crutches for
A. Nevertheless	B. Consequently	C. For that	D. Because
17. Carol showed up for	the meeting	I asked her not to be	there.
A. even though	B. despite	C. because of	D. because
18. Peter works hard at a	everything he does. H	is brother,, se	eldom puts out much effort.
A. on the other ha	ind	C. even though	
B. otherwise		D. consequently	
		<u> </u>	
19. The road will remain			7
A. as long as	B. unless	C. if	D. since
20 I can't mak for me.	e the presentation mys	elf, I've asked my assi	stant to be prepared to do it
A. For		C. Only if	
B. In the event th	at	D. On the other ha	and
21. I have to go to the m	neeting I want	to or not.	
A. because	B. whether	C. even though	D. only if
22. Looked Appeals to my	n the office while Pro-	rono Throw	I can depend on her
22. I asked Angela to ru		-	
A. unless	B. since	C. Although	D. so that
23. I think I did okay in	my speech last night	I'd had almos	t no sleep for 24 hours.
A. in spite of	• • •	C. so that	D. despite the fact that
24. I talked to Anna thro	bughout the evening, $_{-}$	nothing I said	changed her opinion.
A. yet	B. and	C. otherwise	D. so that
05 Albert coming bases f			
25. After getting home f			
	es with the children's	•	-
	the children at the from		
C. the children ha	ve an hour to play bef	ore they begin their h	omework

D. the school bus drops the children at the corner near their house

\diamond PRACTICE 17. TEST B: Connecting ideas. (Chapters $16 \rightarrow 19$) Directions: Choose the best completion.

1 the extreme trip across the moun		mountains, my frien	ds decided not to cancel their
A. Because of	B. In spite of	C. Even if	D. Even though
2. Even though a duck prevents water from	-	dry the oil	on its feathers, which
A. because of	B. since	C. because	D. for
-	himself clearly and co oves his language skill	• •	le will never advance in his
A. otherwise	B. if	C. only if	D. unless
4 there was n	o electricity, I was abl	e to read because I h	ad a candle.
A. Unless	B. Even though	C. Even	D. Only if
5. A fire must have a re			, it will stop burning.
A. Consequently	B. Therefore	C. Otherwise	D. However
when I was traveling			trouble talking with people
A. Therefore		C. Otherwise	
B. On the other h	and	D. Nonetheless	
	ided not to go with us be enough room on tl		it you change your
A. even		C. in the event th	nat
B. nevertheless		D. although	
-	ndows open at night n oom with all windows		gets. My wife,,
A. nevertheless		C. on the other h	and
B. consequently		D. whereas	
9. You must lend me th	ne money for the trip.	, I won't be	able to go.
A. Consequently	B. Nevertheless	C. Otherwise	D. Although
		Mr. Morrow doesn't	seem to like me. He never made to be friendly and
smiles at me or spea		Mr. Morrow doesn't	seem to like me. He never
smiles at me or spea neighborly.	ks to me the B. in spite of neets my expectations,	Mr. Morrow doesn't many efforts I have 1 C. for	seem to like me. He never made to be friendly and D. so
smiles at me or spea neighborly. A. because of	ks to me the B. in spite of	Mr. Morrow doesn't many efforts I have 1 C. for	seem to like me. He never made to be friendly and D. so
smiles at me or speat neighborly. A. because of 11 the salary m A. Due to 12. Camels have either of	ks to me the B. in spite of neets my expectations, B. Even if	Mr. Morrow doesn't many efforts I have r C. for I will accept the job C. If	seem to like me. He never made to be friendly and D. so offer. D. Unless

15.	Ms. Moore, the schoo problems, s herself.		-	aling with student hat she cannot handle by
	A. Therefore	B. Nevertheless	C. Otherwise	D. On the other hand
14.	Right now all the seat you.	s on that flight are tak	ken, sir ther	e is a cancelation, I will call
	A. In the event that	t	C. Unless	
	B. Nevertheless		D. Even if	
15.	A newborn baby can minutes of birth.	neither walk nor craw	l. A newborn antelop	e,, can run within
	A. however	B. nevertheless	C. otherwise	D. even though
16.	Jason has become	famous that he		iends. He shouldn't do that.
	A. such	B. so	C. so much	D. too
17.	Joan worked in a vine	yard last summer	money for schoo	ol expenses.
	A. because to earn		C. for she earned	
	B. so she earns		D. so that she could	d earn
10	B. one of the kitesC. I thought of theD. it looked like a l	times long ago when ot of fun	I did the same thing	she never paid me
19.	back my last loan.		·	-
		D umlana	C. or else	D only if
	A. even though	D. unless	C. Of clise	D. only if
20.	Hundreds of species of		ave become extinct or	rare extensive land
20.	Hundreds of species of	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats.	ave become extinct or	
	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to	ave become extinct or C. because	rare extensive land D. for
	Hundreds of species of development and the	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic	rare extensive land D. for
21.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go A. despite	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet
21.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet
21. 22.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go A. despite The professor told mo A. so	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of e that I was doing well B. therefore	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though l, my final gr C. in spite of	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet rade was awful.
21. 22.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go A. despite The professor told mo A. so Beth has a n	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of e that I was doing well B. therefore	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though l, my final gr C. in spite of	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet rade was awful. D. yet
21. 22. 23.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go A. despite The professor told mo A. so Beth has a n work every day.	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of e that I was doing well B. therefore ew car, she no longer B. While	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though l, my final gr C. in spite of takes the commuter t C. Although	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet rade was awful. D. yet rain to work. She drives to D. In case
21. 22. 23.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go A. despite The professor told mo A. so Beth has a n work every day. A. Now that	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of e that I was doing well B. therefore ew car, she no longer B. While	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though l, my final gr C. in spite of takes the commuter t C. Although	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet rade was awful. D. yet rain to work. She drives to D. In case
21.22.23.24.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go A. despite The professor told mo A. so Beth has a n work every day. A. Now that Our village had	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of e that I was doing well B. therefore ew car, she no longer B. While money available for B. such little	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though l, my final gr C. in spite of takes the commuter t C. Although or education that the s C. so much	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet ade was awful. D. yet rain to work. She drives to D. In case schools had to close. D. such much
21.22.23.24.	Hundreds of species of development and the A. now that It looks like they're go A. despite The professor told mo A. so Beth has a n work every day. A. Now that Our village had A. so little	of Hawaiian flowers ha grazing of wild goats. B. due to bing to succeed B. because of e that I was doing well B. therefore ew car, she no longer B. While money available for B. such little	ave become extinct or C. because their present diffic C. even though l, my final gr C. in spite of takes the commuter t C. Although or education that the s C. so much	rare extensive land D. for ulties. D. yet ade was awful. D. yet rain to work. She drives to D. In case schools had to close. D. such much

CHAPTER 20 Conditional Sentences and Wishes

\diamond PRACTICE 1. Conditional sentences: present/future. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-3) Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Some of the sentences are contrary to fact, and some are not. 1. I am not an astronaut. If I (be) were were an astronaut, I (take) would take my camera with me on the rocket ship next month. 2. That sounds like a good job offer. I (accept) _____ it if I (be) _____ you. 3. Don't throw aerosol cans into a fire. An aerosol can (explode) ______ if you (throw) ______ it into a fire. 4. It is expensive to call across the ocean. However, if transoceanic telephone calls (be) _____ cheap, I (call) _____ my family every day and (talk) _____ for hours. 5. The teacher was absent today, so class was canceled. If she (be) _____ absent again tomorrow, class (cancel) _____ tomorrow, too. 6. Sea water is salty. If the oceans (consist) ______ of fresh water, there _____ plenty of water to irrigate all of the deserts in the world to (be) _____ provide an abundant food supply for the entire population of the earth. O PRACTICE 2. Conditional sentences: past time. (Chart 20-4) Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. All of the sentences to complete are contrary to fact. 1. I'm sorry you had to take a cab to the airport. I didn't know you needed a ride. If you (tell) had told me, I (give) would have given you a ride gladly. 2. I got wet because I didn't take my umbrella. However, I (get, not) _____ _____ wet if I (remember) _____ to take my umbrella with me yesterday. 3. Many people were not satisfied with the leader after he took office. If they (know) _____ more about his planned economic program, they (vote, not)

______ for him.

4	. You made a lot of unnecessary mistakes in your composition. You (get)
	a better grade if you (use) either a dictionary or
	the spell checker on your computer to check your spelling.
5	A: Oh, no! I've lost it!
	B: Lost what?
	A: The address for my job interview this afternoon. I wrote it on a match book.
	B: A match book! If you (write) the address in your
	appointment book where it belongs, you (lose, not)
	it. When are you going to get organized?
6	. A: Ann, (you, take) that job if you (know)
	that you had to work nights?
	B: No way. I had no idea I'd have to work the late night hours they've had me working.
PRACTIC	CE 3. Conditional sentences: present/future and past time. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4)
	irections: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.
1	. If I (have) wings, I (have to, not) take
	an airplane to fly home.
2	. (people, be) able to fly if they (have)
	feathers instead of hair?
3	. This box has got to be in Chicago tomorrow. I'm going to send it by express mail. I'm sure
	if I (send) it today by overnight express, it (arrive)
	in time.
4	. I didn't know the Newtons were going to bring two other people to dinner last night. If
	anyone else (bring) an extra guest, we (have, not)
	enough seats at the table.
5	. A: I don't understand anything in this class. It's boring. And I'm getting a failing grade.
	B: If I (feel) the way you do about it, I (drop)
	the class as soon as possible.
6	. I've never understood why people build houses on flood plains. If we (have)
	heavy rains in the spring, the river through my hometown (rise, always)
	above its banks and (flood) the
	low-lying areas of the town. Some houses have been flooded a half-dozen times in the last
	20 years.
	-

- 7. A: I'm exhausted, and we're no closer to a solution to this problem after nine hours of work.
 - B: Why don't you go home and get some sleep, and I'll keep working. If I (discover)

_____ a solution before morning, I (call) ______

you immediately. I promise.

- 8. A: I can't believe that you haven't finished that report. What will I use in the committee meeting at noon today?
 - B: I'm really sorry. If I (know) _____ you needed it today, I (stay)

_____ up all night last night and (finish)

_____ it.

\diamond PRACTICE 4. Conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4)

Directions: Using the given information, create conditional sentences. Use if.

- I was sick yesterday, so I didn't go to class.
 → If I hadn't been sick yesterday, I would have gone to class.
- Because Alan never eats breakfast, he always overeats at lunch.
 → If Alan ate breakfast, he wouldn't overeat at lunch.
- 3. Kostas was late to his own wedding because his watch was slow.
- 4. I don't ride the bus to work every morning because it's always so crowded.
- 5. Sara didn't know that highway 57 was closed, so she didn't take an alternative route.
- 6. Camille couldn't finish unloading the truck because no one was there to help her.

PRACTICE 5. Using progressive forms and "mixed time" in conditional sentences. (Charts 20-5 and 20-6)

Directions: Using the given information, complete the conditional sentences.

- 1. It is raining, so we won't finish the game.
 - \rightarrow If it <u>weren't raining</u>, we <u>would finish</u> the game.
- 2. I didn't eat lunch, and now I'm hungry.
 - → If I had eaten lunch, I wouldn't be hungry now.
- 3. Bob left his wallet at home this morning, and now he doesn't have any money for lunch.

 \rightarrow If Bob ______ his wallet at home this morning, he ______

______ some money for lunch now.

4. Carol didn't answer the phone because she was studying.

→ Carol ______ the phone if she ______

- 5. The sun was shining, so we went to the beach yesterday.
 - → If the sun ______, we ______ to the beach yesterday.

6.	Every muscle in my body aches today because I played basketball for three hours last night.
	→ Every muscle in my body today if I
	basketball for three hours last night.
7.	Barry stops to shake everyone's hand because he's running for political office.
	→ Barry to shake everyone's hand if he
	for political office.
8.	We didn't eat all of the turkey at dinner last night, so we have to have turkey again tonight.
	\rightarrow If we all of the turkey at dinner last night, we
	turkey again tonight.
9.	The music was playing loudly at the restaurant, so I didn't hear everything Mr. Lee said during
	dinner.
	-> If the music so loudly, I
	everything Mr. Lee said during dinner.
10.	The library is closing now, so Abdul will have to leave before finishing his research.
	· • If the library now, Abdul
	before finishing his research.
PRACTIC	E 6. Using progressive forms and "mixed time" in conditional sentences. (Charts 20-5 and 20-6)
Dir	rections: Using the given information, make conditional sentences. Use if.
1.	The wind is blowing hard, so I won't take the boat out for a ride.
	ightarrow If the wind weren't blowing hard, I would take the boat out for a ride.
2.	I feel better now because you talked to me about my problems last night.
	\rightarrow I wouldn't feel better now if you hadn't talked to me about my problems last night.
3.	Ann carried heavy furniture when she helped her friend move. Her back hurts now.
4.	Paulo is working on two jobs right now, so he doesn't have time to help you with your
	remodeling.
5.	I wasn't working at the restaurant last night. I didn't wait on your table.
6.	Because Diane asked questions every time she didn't understand a problem, she has a good
	understanding of geometry now.
7.	A fallen tree was blocking the road, so we didn't arrive on time.
8.	Rita is exhausted today because she didn't get any sleep last night.
9.	Olga and Ivan weren't paying attention, so they didn't see the sign marking their exit from
	the highway.
10.	The doctor doesn't really care about his patients. He didn't explain the medical procedure
	to me before surgery.

 \Diamond

◇ PRACTICE 7. Omitting if. (Chart 20-7)

Directions: Make sentences with the same meaning by omitting if.

1. If you should need my help, please call.

 \rightarrow <u>Should you need</u> my help, please call.

2. If I were you, I wouldn't go there.

 \rightarrow ______ you, I wouldn't go there.

- 3. If I had been offered a job at the law office, I would have gladly accepted.
 - \rightarrow ______ a job at the law office, I would have gladly accepted.
- 4. If anyone should call, would you please take a message?

 \rightarrow ______, would you please take a message?

5. If I were your doctor, I'd insist that you stop smoking.

→ _____ your doctor, I'd insist you stop smoking.

- 6. They wouldn't have visited her house if they had known about her illness.
 - \rightarrow They wouldn't have visited her house ______ about her illness.
- 7. I would start giving my sister driving lessons if she were just a little older.
 - → I would start giving my sister driving lessons ______ just a little older.
- 8. If I had not opened the door when I did, I wouldn't have seen you walk by.
 - \rightarrow ________ the door when I did, I wouldn't have seen you walk by.

◇ PRACTICE 8. Omilting if. (Chart 20-7)

Directions: Make sentences with the same meaning by omitting if.

- If I were your age, I'd do things differently.
 Were I your age, I'd do things differently.
- 2. If Bob should show up while I'm away, please give him my message.
- 3. If my uncle had stood up to sing, I'd have been embarrassed.
- 4. If she were ever in trouble, I'd do anything I could to help her.
- 5. If the manager should question these figures, have her talk to the bookkeeper.
- 6. I wouldn't have known about your new job if I hadn't talked to your mother.

♦ PRACTICE 9. Implied conditions. (Chart 20-8)

Directions: Notice the conditional verbs in the sentences. Then, using the given information, complete the implied *if*-clauses.

- 1. Sara's dad would have picked her up, but I forgot to tell him that she needed a ride.
 - > Sara's dad would have picked her up if ___ I hadn't forgotten to tell him that

she needed a ride.

WWW.	ez-e	nali	sh i	naroc	l ru

2.	I couldn't have mad	e it without your helf	D.	
	\rightarrow I couldn't have made	le it if		
3.	I opened the door slowly.	Otherwise, I could	have hit someone.	
	→ If			, I could have hit someone.
4.	Doug would have go	ne with me, but he co	uldn't get time off from v	vork.
	→ Doug would have g	one with me if		
5.	. Carol: Why didn't Osc	ar tell his boss about t	the problem?	
	Alice: He would hav	e gotten into a lot oj	f trouble.	
	→ Oscar would have g	otten into a lot of tr	ouble if	
		lienel sentences	(Charle 20, 1, 5, 20	0)
	E 10. Review: condition rections: Choose the corrections:			8)
1.	. If I could speak Spanis A. will spend	sn, I next y	C. had spent	h.
	B. would have spen	t	D. would spend	
	<i>a</i>		-	
2.	. It would have been a r	nuch more serious a		t the time.
	A. was she driving		C. she had driven	
	B. had she been dri	ving	D. if she drove	
3.	. "Can I borrow your ca "Sure, but Nora's usin borrow it."		ne it back in ti	me, you're welcome to
	A. brought	B. would bring	C. will bring	D. brings
4.	. I didn't get home unti	l well after midnight	t last night. Otherwise.	Your call.
	A. returned	B. had returned	1	D. would have returned
5	If an army in a	mancive and unlimit	ted many things in the	world would be different.
	A. is	B. will be	C. were	D. would be
				D. Would be
6.	. We the game	if we'd had a few m		
	A. could have won		C. had won	
	B. won		D. will win	
7.	. I William wit	h me if I had known	n you and he didn't get	along with each other.
	A. hadn't brought		C. wouldn't have b	rought
	B. didn't bring		D. won't bring	
8.	. The lecturer last night I would have listened		ne was talking about, b	ut if Dr. Mason,
	A. lectured		C. was lecturing	
	B. had been lecturi	ng	D. would lecture	
٥	. If you to my	advice in the first n	ace, you wouldn't be it	this mess right now
<i>.</i> ,	A. listen	B. will listen	C. had listened	D. listened

10.	interested ir A. If I am	n that subject, I would t B. Should I	try to learn more abo C. I was	ut it. D. Were I
11.	If I the same as you have.	e problems you had as	a child, I might not h	nave succeeded in life as well
	A. have	B. would have	C. had had	D. should have
12.	I you soone	r had someone told me	you were in the hosp	bital.
	A. would have visi	ted	C. had visited	
	B. visited		D. visit	
13.	more help, l	I could call my neighbo	or.	
	A. Needed	B. Should I need	C. I have needed	D. I should need
14.	then what I the years.	know today, I would h	ave saved myself a lot	t of time and trouble over
	A. If I know	B. If I would know	C. Did I know	D. Had I known
15.	Do you think there v language?	vould be less conflict in	the world if all peop	le the same
	A. speak	B. will speak	C. spoke	D. had spoken
16.	If you can give me of A. I don't mentior		r acting like this, C. I never mention	this incident again.
	B. I will never me		D. will I never men	
17.		ere asleep. Otherwise,		oise when I came in.
	A. didn't make B. wouldn't have i	made	C. won't make D. don't make	
	D. Wouldn't nave i	maue	D. CON L MARC	
18.		all of my questions, I c		
	A. answered	B. answer	C. would answer	D. are answering
19.	Had you told me tha	it this was going to hap	pen, I it.	
	A. would never ha	ve believed	C. hadn't believed	
	B. don't believe		D. can't believe	
20.	If Jake to go	o on the trip, would you	1 have gone?	
	A. doesn't agree			D. wouldn't agree
Di	rections: Complete the	fitional sentences. (sentences with the wor	ds in parentheses.	
1.				I money now II I
	(spend, not)		so much yesterday.	
2.	That child had a nar	row escape. She (hit)		by a car if her
	mother (pull, not)		her out of the	street.
3	A: Why were you lat	e for the meeting?		
3.	A: Why were you lat		there on time have	I had a flat tire on the way.

	A: Did you know that Bob got 100% on the test?
	B: Really? That surprises me. If I didn't know better, I (think)
	he cheated.
5.	A: How did you do on the test?
	B: Not so well. I (do) much better, but I misread the
	directions for the last section.
6.	A: Do you really mean it?
	B: Of course! I (say, not) it unless I (mean)
	it.
7.	A: When did Mark graduate?
	B: He didn't.
	A: Oh?
	B: He had to quit school because of some trouble at home. Otherwise, he (graduate)
	last June.
8.	A: I hear Dorothy had an accident. Was it serious?
	B: No. Luckily, she wasn't driving fast at the time of the accident. If she (drive)
	fast, I'm sure it (be)
	a more serious accident.
9	Tom's hobby is collecting stamps from all over the world. If he <i>(travel)</i>
2.	
	to a new country, he (spend, always)
	to a new country, he <i>(spend, always)</i> time looking for new stamps. That's how he has acquired such a large
	to a new country, he (spend, always)
	to a new country, he <i>(spend, always)</i> time looking for new stamps. That's how he has acquired such a large
PRACTIC	 to a new country, he (spend, always) time looking for new stamps. That's how he has acquired such a large collection of valuable stamps. E 12. As if/as though. (Chart 20-9)
PRACTIC Di	 to a new country, he (spend, always) time looking for new stamps. That's how he has acquired such a large collection of valuable stamps. E 12. As if/as though. (Chart 20-9) rections: Using the information in parentheses, complete the sentences.
PRACTIC Di	 to a new country, he (spend, always) time looking for new stamps. That's how he has acquired such a large collection of valuable stamps. E 12. As if/as though. (Chart 20-9)
PRACTIC Di 1.	 to a new country, he (spend, always) time looking for new stamps. That's how he has acquired such a large collection of valuable stamps. E 12. As if/as though. (Chart 20-9) rections: Using the information in parentheses, complete the sentences.
PRACTIC Di 1. 2.	 to a new country, he (spend, always)
PRACTIC Di 1. 2.	
PRACTIC Di 1. 2. 3.	
PRACTIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	to a new country, he (spend, always)
PRACTIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4.	<pre> to a new country, he (spend, always)</pre>
PRACTIC <i>Di</i> 1. 2. 3. 4. 5.	to a new country, he (spend, always)

7.	He looked right through me as if I		(Truth: I exist.)
8	Craig bumped the other car and then con (Truth: Something happened.)	ntinued as though not	hing
9	A: Have Joe and Diane ever met? B: I don't think so. Why?		
	A: He came in and started talking to her (Truth: They aren't old friends.)	as if they	old friends.
10	I can hear his voice so clearly that it's as (Truth: He isn't here in this room; he's next		here in this room.
11	It was so quiet that it seemed as if the ea didn't stop.)	rth	(Truth: The earth
12	I turned, and there she was. It was as the (Truth: She didn't appear out of nowhere.)	ough she	out of nowhere.
	E 13. Using wish. (Charts 20-10 and <i>rections:</i> Using the information in parenthe		tences.
1	. (The sun isn't shining.) I wish the sun	were shining	_ right now.

- 2. (I wanted you to go.) I wish you <u>had gone</u> with us to the concert last night.
- 3. *(Spiro didn't drive.)* I wish Spiro ______ to work. I'd ask him for a ride home.
- 4. (I can't swim.) I wish I ______ so I would feel safe in a boat.
- 5. (I want you to stop fighting.) I wish you ______ fighting and try to work things out.
- 6. (I wanted to win.) I wish we _____ the game last night.
- 7. (Bill didn't get the promotion.) I wish Bill ______ the promotion. He feels bad.
- 8. (I quit my job.) I wish I _____ my job until I'd found another one.
- 9. (It isn't winter.) I wish it _____ winter so that I could go skiing.
- 10. (I want Al to sing.) I wish Al _____ a couple of songs. He has a good voice.
- 11. (Natasha can't bring her children.) I wish Natasha ______ her children with her tomorrow. They would be good company for mine.
- 12. (No one offered to help.) I wish someone ______ to help us find our way when we got lost in the middle of the city.

\diamond PRACTICE 14. Using wish. (Charts 20-10 and 20-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

- 1. Pedro's in trouble with the teacher. Now he wishes he (miss, not) <u>hadn't missed</u> class three times this week.
- 2. A: It's raining. I wish it (stop) would stop.
 B: Me too. I wish the sun (shine) were shining so that we could go swimming.
- Heinrich doesn't like his job as a house painter. He wishes he (go) ______ to art school when he was younger. He wishes he (can paint) ______ canvasses instead of houses for a living.
- 4. I wish I (move, not) ______ to this town. I can't seem to make any friends, and everything is so congested. I wish I (take) ______ the job I was offered in the small town near here.
- 5. I know I should quit smoking. I wish you *(stop)* ______ nagging me about it.
- 6. A: Did you get your car back from the garage?
 - B: Yes, and it still isn't fixed. I wish I (pay, not) ______ them in full when I picked up the car. I should have waited to be sure that everything was all right.
- 7. A: I wish you (hurry) _____! We're going to be late.
 - B: I wish you (relax) _____. We've got plenty of time.
- 8. I wish my husband *(invite, not)* ______ the neighbors over for dinner when he talked to them this afternoon. I don't feel like cooking a big dinner.
- 9. A: How do you like the new president of our association?
 - B: Not much. I wish she (elect, not) ______. I never should have voted for her.
 - A: Oh, really? Then you probably wish I (vote, not) ______ for her. If you recall, she won by only one vote. You and I could have changed the outcome of the election if we'd known then what we know now.
- 10. A: I wish we (buy) ______ everything we wanted all the time.
 B: In that case, you probably wish money (grow) ______ on trees. We'd plant
 - some in the back yard, and just go out and pick a little from the branches every morning.
- 11. A: My thirteen-year-old daughter wishes she (be, not) ______ so tall and that her hair (be) ______ black and straight.
 - B: Really? My daughter wishes she (be) ______ taller and that her hair (be) ______ blond and curly.

- 12. A: I wish most world leaders (*meet*) ______ in the near future and reach some agreement on environmental issues. I'm worried the earth is running out of time.
 - B: I wish I (disagree) _____ with you and (prove) _____

_____ your fears groundless, but I'm afraid you might be right.

- 13. A: I can't go to the game with you this afternoon.
 - B: Really? That's too bad. But I wish you *(tell)* _____ me sooner so that I could have found someone else to go with.
- 14. A: How long have you been sick?
 - B: For over a week.
 - A: I wish you (go) ______ to see a doctor today. You should find out what's wrong with you.
 - B: Maybe I'll go tomorrow.

\diamond PRACTICE 15. Conditionals. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

BOB: Well, you (2. look) ______ this bad today, too, if you (3. have)

______ a day like mine yesterday. My car slid into a tree because the roads were icy.

TOM: Oh? I was driving on the icy roads yesterday, and I didn't slide into a tree. What happened?

- BOB: Well, I suppose if I (4. drive, not) ______ so fast, I (5. slide, not)
- TOM: Icy roads and speed don't mix. If drivers (6. step) ______ on the gas on ice, they're likely to spin their car in a circle.
- BOB: I know! And not only is my car a mess now, but I didn't have my driver's license with me, so now I'll have to pay an extra fine when I go to court next month.
- TOM: Why were you driving without your license?
- BOB: Well, I lost my wallet a few days ago. It slipped out of my pocket while I was riding the bus to work.
- TOM: What a tale of woe! If you (7. take not) ______ that bus, you (8. lose, not)

_____ your wallet. If you (9. lose, not) _____

your wallet, you (10. have) ______ your driver's license with you when

you hit a tree. If you (11. have)	your license with you, you
(12. have to pay, not)	a big fine when you go to court
next week. And of course, if you (13. drive, not)	too
fast, you (14. run into, not)	a tree, and you (15. be, not)
in this mess now. If I (16. be	e) you, I

home where you're safe and sound.

BOB: Enough about me! How about you?

share the driving.

- TOM: Well, things are really looking up for me. I'm planning to take off for Florida as soon as I finish my finals. I'm sick of all this cold, rainy weather we've been having. I (19. stay)
 ______ here for vacation if the weather (20. be, not) _______
 so bad. But I need some sun!
- BOB: I wish I (21. go) ______ with you. How are you planning on getting there?
- TOM: If I have enough money, I (22. fly) ______. Otherwise, I (23. take) _______ the bus. I wish I (24. drive) ______ my own car there because it (25. be) _______ nice to have it to drive around in once I get there, but it's such a long trip. I've been looking for a friend to go with me and
- BOB: Hey, I have a super idea! Why don't I go with you? I can share the driving. I'm a great driver!
- TOM: Didn't you just get through telling me that you'd wrapped your car around a tree?

MMM. BL. OILINST. MARDON. M

♦ PRACTICE 16. TEST A: Conditional sentences. (Chapter 20)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

~~~~	enons. Ghoose die eor	reet anomer.		
Exc	ample: If I <u>C</u> you A. am	a, I would get some rea B. could be	st before the game tom C. were	norrow. D. had been
1.	When I stopped talking	ig. Sam finished my se	ntence for me as thou	gh he my mind.
		B. had read		D. can read
2.	If you, I wou TV, but I didn't want		ends over to your hou	se this evening to watch
	A. had studied B. studied		C. hadn't been study D. didn't study	ving
3	I wish I you :	some money for your	ent but I'm broke mu	realf
5.	A. can lend	B. would lend		D. will lend
4.	If someone in	nto the store, smile and	t say, "May I help you	ç»
	A. comes		C. would come	
5.	"Are we lost?" "I think so I wish we	e a map with t	is today"	
		B. brought		D. would bring
6.	"Here's my phone nu "Thanks. I'll give you A. will need	mber." 1 a call if I son B. need	me help tomorrow." C. would need	D. needed
7	If I weren't working for	or an accounting firm	I in a hank	
1.	A. work		C. have worked	D. would be working
8.	Ed invested a lot of m having serious financi friends.	-	-	y all of it. Now he is he'd listened to some of his
	A. will be	B. wouldn't be	C. will be	D. hadn't been
9.	The world a about the earth's envi		known a hundred year	s ago what we know today
	A. will be		C. should be	D. might be
10.	The medicine made n A. were spinning	ne feel dizzy. I felt as t	though the room C. spins	around and around.
	B. will spin		D. would be spinning	g
11.	"I'm really sorry abou "It's okay. I'm sure ye	it what happened durin ou wouldn't have done		I had no choice."
	A. should have	B. had to	C. hadn't had to	D. have to
12.	you, I'd thinl A. If I had been	< twice about that deci B. Were I	sion. It could be a bac C. Should I be	d move. D. If I am
13.	"Was Pam seriously ir			
			e if she hadn't been w	earing her seat belt." D. were
		D. Would Have been	V. WAO	L. WOLC

14.	If my candidate had	won the election, I	happy now.		
	A. am	B. would be	C. was	D. can be	
15.	I wish Janet	to the meeting this aft	ernoon.		
	A. came	B. will come	C. can come	D. could come	
16.	I you to the	woman I was speaking	g with, but I couldn't th	hink of her name.	
	A. will introduce		C. would have introduced		
	B. would introduc	e	D. couldn't have int	roduced	
17.		y if you hadn't come h ig in extra hours at my			
	A. are you doing		C. will you be doing		
	B. can you do		D. would you be do	ing	
18.	Page 12 of the manu merchandise, contact		ppliance says, "	_ any problem with the	
	A. Do you have		C. Had you		
	B. Should you hav	ve	D. You have		
19.	Marge walked away f regret later.	from the discussion. C	therwise, she	something she would	
	A. will say	B. said	C. might say	D. might have said	
20.	I would never have en I'm sorry it's been so		o this field it w	vould be so stressful for you.	
	A. had I known	<ul> <li>Example construction of the desired of</li></ul>	C. should I know		
	B. and I have know	wn	D. but I knew		



### ♦ PRACTICE 17. TEST B: Conditional sentences. (Chapter 20)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Exc	ample: If I <u>C</u> you A. am	a, I would get some res B. could be	st before the game ton C. were	norrow. D. had been
1.	Please keep your voice will have to ask you to		of the library. If you _	to talk loudly, I
	•	B. could continue	C. will continue	D. continue
2.	Gloria never seems to	-		
	A. would have	B. have	C. have had	D. had
3.		fied. If he were, he	that promotion	last year."
	<ul><li>A. would have been</li><li>B. was given</li></ul>	given	C. would be given D. had been given	
4.	If I could find Rob's p somebody else will cal		him about the cha	nge in plans. Maybe
	A. called		C. could call	D. will call
5.	"How do you like you "The apartment itself street below."	-	used to the co	nstant noise from the
	A. got	B. could get	C. had gotten	D. am
6.	I was very engrossed i it was as though we			apes were so realistic that
	A. were	B. have been	C. are	D. will be
7.	If I following instead of running into		sely, I would have been	n able to stop in time
	A. wasn't	B. would have been	C. was	D. hadn't been
8.	"Why aren't you going "To be honest with yo		vith the rest of us next i't, I with you	
	A. would have gone		C. go	
	B. would go		D. will go	
9.	"Will you see Tom at I "I'm not going to lund		you to give him a mess m later, I'll give him ye	
	A. should see	B. will see	C. would see	D. could see
10.	I'm really sleepy today	v. I wish I Bo	b to the airport late la	ist night.
	A. didn't have to ta	ke	C. hadn't had to tak	e
	B. weren't taking		D. didn't take	
11.	Hurry! We've got to le ceremony.	eave the house immed	iately. Otherwise,	the opening
	A. we'd miss		C. we miss	
	B. we'd have missed	1	D. we're going to mi	\$\$

# APPENDIX Supplementary Grammar Units

#### ♦ PRACTICE 1. Subjects, verbs, and objects. (Chart A-1)

*Directions:* <u>Underline</u> and identify the subject (s), verb (v), and object of the verb (o) in each sentence.

s v o

- 1. Airplanes have wings.
- 2. The teacher explained the problem.
- 3. Children enjoy games.
- 4. Jack wore a blue suit.
- 5. Some animals eat plants. Some animals eat other animals.
- 6. According to an experienced waitress, you can carry full cups of coffee without spilling them

just by never looking at them.

#### ♦ PRACTICE 2. Transitive vs. intransitive verbs. (Chart A-1)

Directions: Underline and identify the verb in each sentence. Write VT if it is transitive. Write VI if it is intransitive.

#### VI

1. Alice arrived at six o'clock.

#### VT

- 2. We drank some tea.
- 3. I agree with you.
- 4. I waited for Sam at the airport for two hours.
- 5. They're staying at a resort hotel in San Antonio, Texas.
- 6. Chanchai is studying English.
- 7. The wind is blowing hard today.
- 8. I walked to the theater, but Janice rode her bicycle.
- 9. Amphibians hatch from eggs.
- 10. Rivers flow toward the sea.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 3. Identifying prepositions. (Chart A-2)

Directions: Underline the prepositions.

- 1. Jim came to class without his books.
- 2. We stayed at home during the storm.
- 3. Sonya walked across the bridge over the Cedar River.
- 4. When Alex walked through the door, his little sister ran toward him and put her arms around his neck.
- 5. The two of us need to talk to Tom, too.
- 6. Animals live in all parts of the world. Animals walk or crawl on land, fly in the air, and swim in the water.
- 7. Scientists divide living things into two main groups: the animal kingdom and the plant kingdom.
- 8. Asia extends from the Pacific Ocean in the east to Africa and Europe in the west.

#### O PRACTICE 4. Sentence elements. (Charts A-1 and A-2)

Directions: Underline and identify the subject (S), verb (V) object (O), and prepositional phrases (PP) in the following sentences.

- S V O PP
- 1. Jack put the letter in the mailbox.
- 2. The children walked to school.
- 3. Mary did her homework at the library.
- 4. Chinese printers created the first paper money in the world.
- 5. Dark clouds appeared on the horizon.
- 6. Mary filled the shelves of the cabinet with boxes of old books.

#### PRACTICE 5. Adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-3 and A-4)

Directions: Underline and identify the adjectives (ADJ) and adverbs (ADV) in these sentences.

ADJ ADV

- 1. Jack opened the heavy door slowly.
- 2. Chinese jewelers carved beautiful ornaments from jade.
- 3. The old man carves wooden figures skillfully.
- 4. A busy executive usually has short conversations on the telephone.
- 5. The young woman had a very good time at the picnic yesterday.

## $\diamond$ PRACTICE 6. Adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-3 and A-4)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct adjective or adverb.

1.	quick, quickly	We ate <u>quickly</u> and ran to the theater.
2.	quick, quickly	We had a <u>quick</u> dinner and ran to the theater.
3.	polite, politely	I've always found Fred to be a person.
4.	polite, politely	He responded to my question
5.	regular, regularly	Mr. Thomas comes to the store for cheese and
		bread.
6.	regular, regularly	He is a customer.
7.	usual, usually	The teacher arrived at the time.
8.	usual, usually	She comes to class five minutes before it begins.
9.	good, well	Jennifer Cooper paints
10.	good, well	She is a artist.
11.	gentle, gently	A breeze touched my face.
12.	gentle, gently	A breeze touched my face.
13.	annual, annually	Many birds migrate to a warm climate for the
		winter.
14.	annual, annually	Many birds fly long distances in their migration to
		a warm climate for the winter.
15.	bad, badly	The audience booed the actors' performance.
16.	bad, badly	The audience booed and whistled because the actors performed
		throughout the show.

### ◇ PRACTICE 7. Midsentence adverbs. (Chart A-4)

Directions: Put the adverb in parentheses in its usual midsentence position.

1. (always)	always Sue _n takes a walk in the morning.
2. (always)	Tim is a hard worker.
3. (always)	Beth has worked hard.
4. (always)	Jack works hard.
5. (always)	Do you work hard?
6. (usually)	Taxis are available at the airport.

.

- 7. (rarely) Youssef takes a taxi to his office.
- 8. (often) I have thought about quitting my job and sailing to Alaska.
- 9. (probably) Yuko needs some help.
- 10. (ever) Have you attended the show at the planetarium?
- 11. (seldom) Al goes out to eat at a restaurant.
- 12. (hardly ever) The students are late.
- 13. (usually) Do you finish your homework before dinner?
- 14. (generally) In India, the monsoon season begins in April.
- 15. (usually) During the monsoon season, Mr. Singh's hometown receives around610 centimeters (240 inches) of rain, which is an unusually large amount.

### $\diamond$ PRACTICE 8. Linking verbs. (Charts A-1 $\rightarrow$ A-6)

*Directions:* Some of the *italicized* words in the following are used as linking verbs. Identify which ones are linking verbs by <u>underlining</u> them. Also underline the adjective that follows the linking verb.

WWW. 82.80 Mailshington

- 1. Olga looked at the fruit. (no underline)
- 2. It looked fresh.
- 3. Dan noticed a scratch on the door of his car.
- 4. Morris tasted the candy.
- 5. It tasted good.
- 6. The crowd grew quiet as the official began her speech.
- 7. Felix grows tomatoes in his garden.
- 8. Sally grew up in Florida.
- 9. I can smell the chicken in the oven.
- 10. It smells delicious.
- 11. Barbara got a package in the mail.
- 12. Al got sleepy after dinner.
- 13. During the storm, the sea became rough.
- 14. Nicole became a doctor after many years of study.
- 15. Diana sounded her horn to warn the driver of the other car.
- 16. Helen sounded happy when I talked to her.

- 17. The weather *turns* hot in July.
- 18. When Bob entered the room, I turned around to look at him.
- 19. I turned a page in the book.
- 20. It appears certain that Mary Hanson will win the election.
- 21. Dick's story seems strange. Do you believe it?

# $\diamond$ PRACTICE 9. Linking verbs; adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-3 $\rightarrow$ A-6)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct adjective or adverb.

1. clean, cleanly	The floor looks <u>clean</u> .
2. slow, slowly	The bear climbed <u>slowly</u> up the tree.
3. safe, safely	The plane landed on the runway.
4. anxious, anxiously	When the wind started to blow, I grew
5. complete, completely	This list of names appears No more names need to be added.
6. wild, wildly	The crowd yelled when we scored a goal.
7. honest, honestly	The merchant looked, but she wasn't. I discovered when I got home that she had cheated me.
8. thoughtful, thoughtfully	Jane looked at her book before she answered the teacher's question.
9. good, well	Most of the students did on their tests.
10. fair, fairly	The contract offer sounded to me, so I accepted the job.
12/19 22/19	
11. terrible, terribly	Jim felt about forgetting his son's birthday.
<ol> <li>terrible, terribly</li> <li>good, well</li> </ol>	Jim felt about forgetting his son's birthday. A rose smells
8 2	
12. good, well	A rose smells
12. good, well 13. light, lightly	A rose smells As dawn approached, the sky became

Supplementary Grammar Units A5

# ♦ PRACTICE 10. Review: basic question forms. (Chart B-1)

Directions: From the underlined sentences, make questions for the given answers. Fill in the blank spaces with the appropriate words. If no word is needed, write  $\boldsymbol{O}$ .

Question word	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Main verb	Rest of question	$\rightarrow$	Answe
Ø	Can	Bob	live	there?	$\rightarrow$	Yes.
. <u>Where</u>	_ can_	Bob	live	Ø?	$\rightarrow$	Ther
Who	can	Ø	live	<u>there</u> ?	<b>→</b>	Bob.
Don is living	there.					
Question word	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Main verb	Rest of question	$\rightarrow$	Answe
Ø		8 <u></u> 9		there ?	$\rightarrow$	Yes.
. Where	·		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	$\rightarrow$	Ther
. <u>Who</u>		. <u> </u>		there?	<b>→</b>	Don.
Sue lives ther	<u>.e</u> .					
Question word	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Main verb	Rest of question	→	Answe
. <u>Ø</u>		3 <u></u> 2		there?	$\rightarrow$	Yes.
. <u>Where</u>	<u> </u>	2	<u> </u>	Ø?	$\rightarrow$	Ther
. <u>Who</u>		i <del>.</del> . S	10:	<u>there</u> ?	<b>→</b>	Sue.
<u>Ann will live</u>	<u>there</u> .					
Question word	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Main verb	Rest of question	$\rightarrow$	Answe
Ø		4. <u></u> 2		there?	-	Yes.
. Where	<u></u>	·	<u></u>	Ø ?	$\rightarrow$	Ther
Who				<u>there</u> ?	<b>→</b>	Ann.
Jack lived the	rre.					
Question word	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Main verb	Rest of question	-+	Answe
	15	¢. <del></del> %		there?	<b>→</b>	Yes.
),			<u> </u>	<u>Ø</u> ?	$\rightarrow$	There
•		:		<u>there</u> ?	<b>→</b>	Jack.
<u>Mary has live</u>		0			200	
Question word	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Main verb	Rest of question	<b>→</b>	Answe
				?	_ <b>→</b>	Yes.
o		0			$\langle \vec{\zeta} \rangle$	Ther
h:		(		3	7	Mary
				.4.81.81		
APPENDIX				Ab.		

# ♦ PRACTICE 11. Yes/no and information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Create questions to fit the dialogues. There are two speakers in each dialogue: A and B. Notice in the examples that in each dialogue there is a short answer and then in parentheses a long answer. Your questions should produce those answers.

1.	A:	When are you going to the zoo?
	B:	Tomorrow. (I'm going to the zoo tomorrow.)
2.		Are you going downtown later today?
	<b>B</b> :	Yes. (I'm going downtown later today.)
3.		
		Yes. (I live in an apartment.)
4.		
		In a condominium. (Sue lives in a condominium.)
5.		
		Jack. (Jack lives in that house.)
6.	A:	
	<b>B</b> :	Yes. (I can speak French.)
7.	A:	
	<b>B</b> :	Don. (Don can speak Arabic.)
8.	A:	
	8:	Two weeks ago. (Olga arrived two weeks ago.)
9.	A:	
	B:	Ali. (Ali arrived late.)
10.	A:	
	B:	The window. (Ann is opening the window.)
11.		
		Opening the window. (Ann is opening the window.)
12		
		Her book. (Mary opened her book.)
13.		
13.		Tom. (Tom opened the door.)
14		
14.		Yes. (The mail has arrived.)
15.		
1000		Yes. (I have a bicycle.)
16.		
	В:	A pen. (Alex has a pen in his hand.)

Supplementary Grammar Units A7

	17	A:
		B: Yes. (1 like ice cream.)
		A:
		B: Yes. (I would like an ice cream cone.)
	19.	A:
		B: A candy bar. (Joe would like a candy bar.)
	20.	A:
		B: Ann. (Ann would like a soft drink.)
		inaa maanaanaa ka k
01	Dir B.	E 12. Yes/no and information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2) ections: Create questions to fit the dialogues. There are two speakers in each dialogue: A and Notice in the examples that in each dialogue there is a short answer and then in parentheses ong answer. Your questions should produce those answers.
	1.	A: How long has Pierre been living here?
		B: Since last September. (Pierre has been living here since last September.)
	2.	A: I need some information. Maybe you can help me. <u>Which (city) is farther</u>
	202	north, London or Paris?
		B: London. (London is farther north than Paris.)
	3	A: Is that your umbrella?
	5.	B: No.
		A:
		B: Jane's. (It's Jane's.)
	4.	A: I haven't seen you for weeks. How are you?
		B: Going to school and studying hard. (I've been going to school and studying hard.)
	5	A: Did you call Sally?
	9.	B: Yes, but she wasn't in.
		A:
		B: Her roommate. (Her roommate answered the phone.)
	6.	A: Do the villagers have tractors in the rural areas?
	1000	B: No. They don't have any modern farm machinery.
		A:
		B: With oxen or water buffaloes. (They plow their fields with oxen or water buffaloes.)
	7.	A: I really like having my own computer.
		B:
		A: Since last December. (I've had it since last December.)
		-1 ⁻⁸
A <b>8</b>	APPENDIX	1. S .
		- aller
		20.

uite like it
)
visa.
ight.)
that silly
inai suiy
t

- 22. A: _
  - B: Twelve. (There are twelve edges on a cube.)
  - A: ______
  - B: Eight. (There are eight edges on a pyramid.)
- 23. A: I've never met Bob. _
  - B: He has dark hair, a mustache, wears glasses, and is about average height.
- 24. A: You know Ann Green, don't you?
  - B: She's energetic, bright, very friendly. A really nice person.

### $\diamond$ PRACTICE 13. Information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)

*Directions:* Create questions from these sentences. The *italicized* words in parentheses should be the answers to your questions.

- 1. I take my coffee (black).  $\rightarrow$  How do you take your coffee?
- 2. I have (an English-Spanish) dictionary.
- 3. He (runs a grocery store) for a living.
- 4. Margaret was talking to (her uncle).
- 5. (Only ten) people showed up for the meeting.
- 6. (Due to heavy fog), none of the planes could take off.
- 7. She was thinking about (her experiences as a rural doctor).
- 8. I was driving (sixty-five miles per hour) when the policeman stopped me.
- 9. I like (hot and spicy Mexican) food best.
- 10. (The) apartment (at the end of the hall on the second floor) is mine.
- 11. Oscar is (friendly, generous, and kindhearted).
- 12. Oscar is (tall and thin and has short black hair).
- 13. (Ann's) dictionary fell to the floor.
- 14. Abby isn't here (because she has a doctor's appointment).
- 15. All of the students in the class will be informed of their final grades (on Friday).
- 16. I feel (awful).
- 17. Of those three books, I preferred (the one by Tolstoy).
- 18. I like (rock) music.
- 19. The plane is expected to be (an hour) late.
- 20. The driver of the stalled car lit a flare (in order to warn oncoming cars).
- 21. I want (the felt-tip) pen, (not the ballpoint).
- 22. The weather is (hot and humid) in July.

- 23. I like my steak (medium rare).
- 24. I did (very well) on the test.
- 25. There are (31,536,000) seconds in a year.

### ♦ PRACTICE 14. Information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Create questions from the following sentences. The words in parentheses should be the answers to your questions.

- 1. I need (five dollars).  $\rightarrow$  How much money do you need?
- 2. Roberto was born (in Panama).
- 3. I go out to eat (at least once a week).
- 4. I'm waiting for (Maria).
- 5. (My sister) answered the phone.
- 6. I called (Benjamin).
- 7. (Benjamin) called.
- 8. She bought (twelve gallons of) gas.
- 9. "Deceitful" means ("dishonest").
- 10. An abyss is (a bouomless hole).
- 11. He went (this) way, (not that way).
- 12. These are (Jim's) books and papers.
- 13. They have (four) children.
- 14. He has been here (for two hours).
- 15. It is (two hundred miles) to New Orleans.
- 16. The doctor can see you (at three on Friday).
- 17. Her roommate is (Jane Peters).
- 18. Her roommates are (Jane Peters and Sue Lee).
- 19. My parents have been living there (for three years).
- 20. This is (Alice's) book.
- 21. (Fred and Jack) are coming over for dinner.
- 22. Ann's dress is (blue).
- 23. Anne's eyes are (brown).
- 24. (Bob) can't go on the picnic.
- 25. Bob can't go (because he is sick).
- 26. I didn't answer the phone (because I didn't hear it ring).
- 27. I like (classical) music.
- 28. I don't understand (the chart on page 50).

Supplementary Grammar Units A11

ADISH. Maroll. N

- 29. Janet is (studying) right now.
- 30. You spell "sitting" (with two "t's" S-I-T-T-I-N-G).
- 31. Tom (is about medium height and has red hair and freckles).
- 32. Tom is (very serious and hardworking).
- 33. Ron (works as a civil engineer for the railroad company).
- 34. Mexico is (eight hundred miles) from here.
- 35. I take my coffee (black with sugar).
- 36. Of Stockholm and Moscow, (Stockholm) is farther north.
- 37. (Fine.) I'm getting along (just fine).

### $\diamond$ PRACTICE 15. Negative questions. (Chart B-4)

*Directions:* In these dialogues, make negative questions from the words in parentheses, and determine the expected response.

- 1. A: Your infected finger looks terrible. (you, see, not) Haven't you seen a doctor yet?
  - B: <u>No</u>. But I'm going to. I don't want the infection to get any worse.
- 2. A: You look pale. What's the matter? (you, feel) _____ well?
  - B: _____. I think I might be coming down with something.
- 3. A: Did you see Mark at the meeting?
  - B: No, I didn't.
  - A: Really? (he, be, not) ______ there?
  - B: _____.
  - A: That's funny. I've never known him to miss a meeting before.
- 4. A: Why didn't you come to the meeting yesterday afternoon?
  - B: What meeting? I didn't know there was a meeting.
  - A: (Mary, tell, not) _____ you about it?
  - B: _____. No one said a word to me about it.

5. A: I have a package for Janet. (Janet and you, work, not) _________ in the same building?

- B: _____. I'd be happy to take the package to her tomorrow when I go to work.
- 6. A: Frank didn't report all of his income on his tax forms.
  - B: (that, be, not) _____ against the law?
  - A: _____. And that's why he's in a lot of legal trouble. He might even go to jail.
- 7. A: Did you give Linda my message when you went to class this morning?
  - B: No. I didn't see her.
  - A: Oh? (she, be) _____ in class?
  - B: _____. She didn't come today.

8. A: Do you see that woman over there, the one in the blue dress? (she, be) _____ Mrs. Robbins? B:_____. A: I thought so. I wonder what she is doing here. O PRACTICE 16. Tag guestions. (Chart B-5) Directions: Add tag questions to the following. 1. You live in an apartment, <u>don't you</u> ? 2. You've never been in Italy, have you ? 3. Sally turned in her report, _____? 4. There are more countries north of the equator than south of it, ______ 2 5. You've never met Jack Freeman, _____? 3 6. You have a ticket to the game, _____ 7. You'll be there, _____ ? 8. Tom knows Alice Reed, _____? 9. We should call Rita, _____? 10. Ostriches can't swim, _____? 11. These books aren't yours, _____ 12. That's Bob's, _____ ? 13. No one died in the accident, _____? 14. I'm right, _____? 15. This grammar is easy, _____?

### ♦ PRACTICE 17. Contractions. (Chart C)

*Directions:* Write the contraction of the pronoun and verb if appropriate. Write Ø if the pronoun and verb cannot be contracted.

- 1. He is (<u>He's</u>) in my class.
- 2. He was (  $\cancel{\varnothing}$  ) in my class.
- 3. He has (<u>He's</u>) been here since July.
- 4. He has ( ______ ) a Volvo.*

SR.Harod.H

^{*}NOTE: has, have and had are NOT contracted when they are used as main verbs. They are contracted only when they are used as helping verbs.

- 5. She had (_____) been there for a long time before we arrived.
- 6. She had (_____) a bad cold.
- 7. She would (_____) like to go to the zoo.
- 8. J did (_____) well on the test.
- 9. We will (_____) be there early.
- 10. They are (_____) in their seats over there.*
- 11. It is (_____) going to be hot tomorrow.
- 12. It has (_____) been a long time since I've seen him.
- 13. A bear is a large animal. It has (_____) four legs and brown hair.
- 14. We were (_____) on time.
- 15. We are (_____) always on time.
- 16. She has (_____) a good job.
- 17. She has (_____) been working there for a long time.
- 18. She had (______) opened the window before class began.
- 19. She would (_____) have helped us if we had (_____) asked her.
- 20. He could (_____) have helped us if he had (_____) been there.

### O PRACTICE 18. Using not and no. (Chart D-1)

Directions: Change each sentence into the negative in two ways: use not ... any in one sentence and no in the other.

WWW. R. O. M. H. S. Marout M

- 1. I have some problems.  $\rightarrow$  I don't have any problems. I have no problems.
- 2. There was some food on the shelf.
- 3. I received some letters from home.
- 4. I need some help.
- 5. We have some time to waste.
- 6. You should have given the beggar some money.
- 7. I trust someone.  $\rightarrow$  I don't trust anyone. I trust no one.**
- 8. I saw someone.
- 9. There was someone in his room.
- 10. She can find somebody who knows about it.

^{*}They're, their, and there all have the same pronunciation. **Also spelled with a hyphen in British English: no-one

### ◇ PRACTICE 19. Avoiding double negatives. (Chart D-2)

Directions: Correct the errors in these sentences, all of which contain double negatives.

1. We don't have no time to waste.

 $\rightarrow$  We have no time to waste. OR: We don't have any time to waste.

- 2. I didn't have no problems.
- 3. I can't do nothing about it.
- 4. You can't hardly ever understand her when she speaks.
- 5. I don't know neither Ann nor her husband.
- 6. Don't never drink water from that river without boiling it first.
- 7. Because I had to sit in the back row of the auditorium, I couldn't barely hear the speaker.

### $\diamond$ PRACTICE 20. Beginning a sentence with a negative word. (Chart D-3)

Directions: Change each sentence so that it begins with a negative word.

1. I had hardly stepped out of bed when the phone rang.

 $\rightarrow$  Hardly had I stepped out of bed when the phone rang.

- 2. I will never say that again.
- 3. I have scarcely ever enjoyed myself more than I did yesterday.
- 4. She rarely makes a mistake.
- 5. I will never trust him again because he lied to me.
- 6. It is hardly ever possible to get an appointment to see him.
- 7. I seldom skip breakfast.
- 8. I have never known a more generous person than Samantha.

### O PRACTICE 21. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

- 1. There is no excuse <u>for</u> lying to your friends.
- 2. The children are excited ______ their upcoming trip to the zoo.
- 3. I wasn't aware _____ any problems with the new design.
- 4. Are you satisfied _____ your accommodations?
- 5. Cubs are protected _____ danger by the mother bear.
- 6. Registration for the conference is limited ______ 300 participants.
- 7. I'm very fond _____ my nieces and nephews.
- 8. Do you regularly contribute _____ worthwhile causes?
- 9. We thanked the contributors ______ their donations.

- 10. The famous actor gladly answers questions that are relevant ______ her work.
- 11. She does not respond ______ questions about her personal life.
- 12. I am envious _____ no one.
- 13. Did Sara apologize _____ being late?
- 14. Lemonade is composed ______ lemon juice, water, and sugar.
- 15. Our apartment is furnished ______ kitchen appliances, but not a washer and dryer.

### ◇ PRACTICE 22. Proposition combinations. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

- 1. It's important to believe _____ yourself.
- 2. Would you be willing to fight _____ your ideals?
- 3. The spy was involved ______ a dangerous conspiracy.
- 4. For many people it's difficult to distinguish a dolphin ______ a porpoise.
- 5. Gandhi was committed ______ nonviolence.
- 6. He will be remembered throughout the ages _____ his commitment to nonviolence.
- 7. If you're done ______ your dictionary, could I borrow it for a minute?
- 8. Usually people will be polite _____ you if you are polite _____ them.
- 9. Oliver is grateful ______ his parents ______ giving him the opportunity for a good education.
- 10. Many people are very concerned _____ global warming.
- 11. It took Natasha almost a year to recover _____ her automobile accident.
- 12. The driver of the other car was accused ______ reckless driving.
- 13. I do not agree _____ your political views.
- 14. I refuse to argue _____ you _____ politics ever again.
- 15. My mother introduced me ______ classical music when I was quite young.

### ◇ PRACTICE 23. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

- 1. Susan took advantage ______ having a roommate from Chile by practicing speaking Spanish with her as often as she could.
- 2. The president is innocent ______ the charges leveled against him by his political opponents.

- 3. Under what circumstances, if any, would you be capable ______ killing another human being?
- 4. There is no substitute _____ good home cooking.
- 5. Showing that he was faithful ______ his campaign promises, the governor approved the building of ten new schools.
- 6. After studying the evidence, I am convinced _____ his innocence.
- 7. So you subscribe ______ the theory that the universe began as a Big Bang?
- I'd like to get a high-paying job, but I'm not qualified _____ much of anything. Maybe I'd better go back to school.
- 9. If you need me, I'll be there. You can count _____ me.
- 10. The brave firefighter rescued two small children ______ a burning building.
- 11. A locked gate prevented us ______ entering the park.
- 12. The bride wore white, and the bridesmaids were dressed _____ yellow silk.
- 13. Ms. Fields' office is cluttered ______ stacks and stacks of papers.
- 14. New computers are equipped ______ all sorts of things I don't understand and never use.
- 15. Professor Armsley was invited to participate ______ a panel discussion on the role of business in protecting the environment.

### ◇ PRACTICE 24. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

- 1. Would you approve ______ a law allowing 13-year-olds to drive?
- 2. I myself would be opposed ______ such a law.
- 3. Olga's heart was filled ______ happiness on her wedding day.
- 4. Please don't be upset _____ me. I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.
- 5. Would you be interested ______ joining a hiking club?
- 6. I know little about the ancient Greek philosophers. I'm not acquainted ______ the works of Plato.
- 7. Anna, who works twelve-hour days, is dedicated ______ her research into possible cures for cancer.
- 8. While we're all hoping ______ better weather, we don't expect it.
- 9. The nightly news on TV exposes watchers ______ acts of violence that leave them fearful and horrified.

- 10. Sam can't keep any secrets ______ his wife. Sometimes he even feels that she knows what he's thinking.
- 11. My uncle stopped my cousin _____ marrying the man she loves.
- 12. Larry started with one small store and now has twenty stores. He has succeeded ______ business.
- 13. Are you complaining ______ the neighbors' children again? Maybe we should move to another apartment.
- 14. Are you related ______ anyone famous?
- 15. Mr. Adams tried to hide his gambling losses _____ his wife, but she found out.

### ◇ PRACTICE 25. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

- 1. Would you vote ______ a woman to lead your country?
- 2. Stop staring _____ me! What are you doing? Is something wrong?
- 3. Mrs. Jefferson is known _____ her sharp intellect.

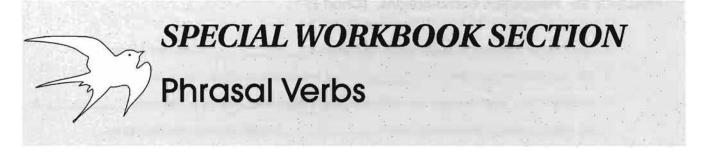
4. I look forward _____ meeting your parents.

- 5. The city of Kigali is located _____ Ruwanda.
- 6. This sentence consists ______ six words.
- 7. We are blessed ______ three healthy, happy, rambunctious children.
- 8. If you can't depend ______ your family to help you in times of trouble, who can you rely _____?
- 9. Don't blame other people _____ your own failures in life.
- 10. We have a date for tomorrow evening. You haven't forgotten ______ it, have you?
- 11. I think it's important to become familiar ______ cultures and customs different from our own.
- 12. We barely escaped ______ the war-torn country with our lives.
- 13. Do you believe that children should never be allowed to argue ______ adults ______ anything?
- 14. Your doctor can provide you ______ information about any health concerns you might have. Be sure to ask questions.
- 15. Some countries try to prohibit their citizens ______ traveling abroad.

# ♦ PRACTICE 26. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

- 1. My boss demanded to know why I was absent _____ work last Friday.
- 2. My neighbor takes care _____ my two children while I'm at work.
- 3. At first it was hard to leave my children with a babysitter, but now I'm used ______ it.
- 4. As a last resort, I covered my face ______ a scarf to keep the flies away.
- 5. I applied ______ several companies ______ positions in their accounting department.
- As soon as I was finished _____ my dessert, we paid the bill and left the restaurant.
- 7. Please forgive me _____ not getting back to you sooner.
- 8. Who is responsible ______ ordering supplies in the mail room?
- We arrived ______ Paris around noon, but we didn't arrive ______ our friends' apartment until well after three.
- 10. I'm not accustomed _____ drinking coffee. I'm a tea drinker.
- Siblings are often jealous ______ each other, but these jealousies usually decrease as the children mature.
- 12. I'm exhausted ______ all the hard work of the past week.
- 13. Would you object ______ watching a different station for the news tonight?
- 14. Please be patient _____ me. I'm trying very hard to understand what you're saying, but your meaning isn't clear to me yet.
- 15. It is good to be pleased ______ ourselves and proud ______ ourselves when we have done a good job.

Hist Haroth Supplementary Grammar Units A19



#### PHRASAL VERBS (TWO-WORD AND THREE-WORD VERBS)

The term *phrasal verb* refers to a verb and particle which together have a special meaning. For example, put + off means "postpone." Sometimes a phrasal verb consists of three parts. For example, put + up + with means "tolerate." Phrasal verbs are also called *two-word verbs* or *three-word verbs*.

<ul> <li>SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS</li> <li>(a) I handed my paper in yesterday.</li> <li>(b) I handed in my paper yesterday.</li> <li>(c) I handed it in yesterday. (INCORRECT: I handed in it yesterday.)</li> </ul>	A phrasal verb may be either <i>separable</i> or <i>nonseparable</i> . With a separable phrasal verb, a noun may come either between the verb and the preposition or after the preposition, as in (a) and (b). A pronoun comes between the verb and the preposition if the phrasal verb is separable, as in (c).
<ul> <li>NONSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS</li> <li>(d) I ran into an old friend yesterday.</li> <li>(e) I ran into her yesterday.</li> <li>(INCORRECT: I ran an old friend into.)</li> <li>(INCORRECT: I ran her into yesterday.)</li> </ul>	With a nonseparable phrasal verb, a noun or pronoun must follow the preposition, as in (d) and (e).

Phrasal verbs are especially common in informal English. Following is a list of common phrasal verbs and their usual meanings. This list contains only those phrasal verbs used in the exercises in the text. The phrasal verbs marked with an asterisk (*) are nonseparable.

A	ask out	ask someone to go on a date
B	bring about, bring on	
	bring up	(1) rear children; (2) mention or introduce a topic
С	call back	return a telephone call
U	call in	ask to come to an official place for a specific purpose
	call off	
	*call on	
	call up	
	*catch up (with)	reach the same position or level
	*check in, check into	register at a hotel
	*check into	investigate
	*check out	(1) take a book from the library; (2) investigate
	*check out (of)	
	cheer up	
	clean up	make clean and orderly
	*come across	
	cross out	
	cut out	

D	do over	
	drop off	· ·
F	figure out fill out find out	write the answers to a questionnaire or complete an official form
G	*get on	<ul> <li>(1) return from a place; (2) receive again</li> <li>(1) enter a car; (2) arrive</li> <li>leave an airplane, a bus, a train, a subway, a bicycle</li> <li>enter an airplane, a bus, a train, a subway, a bicycle</li> <li>(1) leave a car; (2) avoid work or an unpleasant activity</li> <li>recover from an illness</li> <li>finish</li> <li>arise from a bed, a chair</li> <li>return an item to someone</li> <li>stop trying</li> <li>review or check carefully</li> </ul>
H	hand in	(1) conclude a telephone conversation; (2) put clothes on a hanger or a hook
K	keep out (of)	stay at the same position or level
L	*look after	investigate be careful review or check carefully
М	make up	(1) invent; (2) do past due work
Ν	name after, name for	give a baby the name of someone else
Ρ	<pre>*pass away, *pass on pass out</pre>	distribute lose consciousness select (1) go to get someone (e.g., in a car); (2) take in one's hand call attention to remove to a proper place return to original place postpone put clothes on one's body extinguish a cigarette, cigar, or fire
R	*run into, *run across	-
S	*show up	

Т	*take after	resemble
	take off	(1) remove clothing; (2) leave on a trip
	take out	
	take over	
	take up	begin a new activity or topic
	tear down	demolish, reduce to nothing
	tear up	tear into many little pieces
	think over	consider carefully
	throw away, throw out	discard, get rid of
	throw up	vomit, regurgitate food
	try on	
	turn down	
	turn in	(1) submit an assignment; (2) go to bed
	turn off	stop a machine, light, faucet
	turn on	start a machine, light, faucet
	turn out	
	turn up	

### ◇ PRACTICE 1. Phrasal verbs.

- 1. A: Where did you grow <u>up</u>?
  - B: In Seattle, Washington.
- 2. A: I'm trying to find yesterday's newspaper. Have you seen it?
  - B: I'm afraid I threw it _____. I thought you had finished reading it.
- 3. A: Don't forget to turn the lights _____ before you go to bed.
  - B: I won't.
- 4. A: I have a car, so I can drive us to the festival.
  - B: Good.
  - A: What time should I pick you _____?
  - B: Any time after five would be fine.
- 5. A: We couldn't see the show at the outdoor theater last night.
  - B: Why not?
  - A: It was called ______ on account of rain.
  - B: Did you get a raincheck?
- 6. A: Thomas looks sad.
  - B: I think he misses his girlfriend. Let's try to cheer him _____.
- 7. A: I would like to check this book ______. What should I do?
  - B: Take the book to the circulation desk and give the librarian your student I.D.
- 8. A: What brought ______ your decision to quit your present job?
  - B: I was offered a better job.
- 9. A: How many people showed _____ for the meeting yesterday?
  - B: About twenty.

- 10. A: How was your vacation?
  - B: I had a great time.
  - A: When did you get _____ home?
  - B: A couple of days ago. I had planned to stay a little longer, but I ran _____

_____ money.

# ◇ PRACTICE 2. Phrasal verbs.

- 1. A: When do we have to turn _____ our assignments?
  - B: They're due next Tuesday.
- 2. A: How does this tape recorder work?
  - B: Push this button to turn it _____, and push that button to shut it _____
- 3. A: May I borrow your dictionary?
  - B: Sure. But please be sure to put it _____ on the shelf when you're finished.
- 4. A: I'm going to be in your neighborhood tomorrow.
  - B: Oh? If you have time, why don't you drop ______ to see us?
- 5. A: Look _____! A car is coming!
- 6. A: I got very irritated at one of my dinner guests last night.
  - B: Why?
  - A: There was an ashtray on the table, but she put her cigarette ______ on one of my good plates!
- 7. A: I need to talk to Karen.
  - B: Why don't you call her ____? She's probably at home now.
- 8. A: Oh-oh. I made a mistake on the check I just wrote.
  - B: Don't try to correct the mistake. Just tear _____ the check and throw it
- 9. A: Are you here to apply for a job?
  - B: Yes.
  - A: Here is an application form. Fill it _____ and then give it _____ harodri me when you are finished.
- 10. A: Look, There's Mike.
  - B: Where?
  - A: At the other end of the block, walking toward the administration building. If we run, we WWW.91-8HR can catch _____ with him.

- 11. A: Is your roommate here?
  - B: Yes. She decided to come to the party after all. Have you ever met her?
  - A: No, but I'd like to.
  - B: She's the one standing over there by the far window. She has a blue dress ____. Come on. I'll introduce you.
- 12. A: Do you have a date for Saturday night?
  - B: Yes. Jim Brock asked me _____. We're going bowling.

# 

- 1. A: I think we should increase the membership dues from one dollar to two.
  - B: That might solve some of our financial problems. Why don't you bring that _____ at the next meeting?
- 2. A: Did you hand _____ your composition?
  - B: No. I didn't like it, so I decided to do it ______.
- 3. A: What time did you get _____ this morning?
  - B: I slept late. I didn't drag myself out of bed until after nine.
- 4. A: What's the baby's name?
  - B: Helen. She was named _____ her paternal grandmother.
- 5. A: I need to get more exercise.
  - B: Why don't you take _____ tennis?
- 6. A: You can't go in there.
  - B: Why not?
  - A: Look at that sign. It says, "Keep _____. No trespassing."
- 7. A: I can't reach Fred. There's a busy signal. B: Then hang _____ and try again later.
- WWW. GL. OHUISH. MARON. NU 8. A: The radio is too loud. Would you mind if I turned it ______ a little? B: No.
- 9. A: I can't hear the radio. Could you turn it ______ a little? B: Sure.
- 10. A: What are you doing Saturday night, Bob? B: I'm taking Virginia _____ for dinner and a show.

### ◇ PRACTICE 4. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word and three-word verbs.

- A: Omar, would you please pass these papers ______ to the rest of the class?
   B: I'd be happy to.
- 2. A: When are we expected to be at the hotel?
  - B: According to our reservation, we are supposed to check ______ the hotel before 6 P.M. Monday and check ______ before noon Tuesday.
- 3. A: How do you get _____ with your roommate?
  - B: Fine. He's a nice guy.
- 4. A: Thanks for the ride. I appreciate it.
  - B: Where should I drop you _____?
  - A: The next corner would be fine.
- 5. A: I'm going to be out of town for a couple of days. Would you mind looking ______ my cat?
  - B: Not at all. I'd be happy to. Just tell me what I'm supposed to do.
- 6. A: I think I'm going to turn _____ now. Good night.
  - B: 'Night. See you in the morning. Sleep well.
- 7. A: Don't you think it's hot in here?B: Not especially. If you're hot, why don't you take your sweater _____?
- 8: A: How do you spell "occasionally"?B: I'm not sure. You'd better look it ______ in your dictionary.
- 9. A: How much lettuce should we get?B: I think we could use two heads. Pick ______ two that feel fresh and firm.
- 10. A: Why are you sniffling?
  - B: I had a cold last week, and I can't seem to get _____ it.

### ◇ PRACTICE 5. Phrasal verbs.

- 1. A: Are you ready to leave?
  - B: Almost. I'll be ready to go just as soon as I get _____ putting the clean dishes away.
- 2. A: I'm going crazy! I've been trying to solve this math problem for the last hour, and I still can't get it.
  - B: Why don't you give _____ for a while? Take a break and then go back to it.

- 3. A: I hear you had a frightening experience yesterday. What happened?
  - B: Ed suddenly got dizzy and then passed ______. I tried to revive him, but he was out cold. Luckily there was a doctor in the building.
- 4. A: What happened when the pilot of the plane passed out during the flight?
  - B: The co-pilot took _____.
- 5. A: Cindy is only three. She likes to play with the older kids, but when they're running and playing, she can't keep ______ with them.
  - B: Does she mind?
  - A: She doesn't seem to.
- 6. A: I made a mistake in my composition. What should I do?
  - B: Since it's an in-class composition, just cross it _____.
- 7. A: I need my dictionary, but I lent it to Jose.
  - B: Why don't you get it _____ from him?
- 8. A: I wish the teacher wouldn't call _____ me in class.
  - B: Why not?
  - A: I get nervous.
  - B: Why?
  - A: I don't know.

9. I took a plane from Atlanta to Miami. I got ______ the plane in Atlanta. I got ______ the plane in Miami.

- 10. It was a snowy winter day, but I still had to drive to work. First I got ______ the car to start the engine. Then I got ______ of the car to scrape the snow and ice from the windows.
- 11. Last year I took a train trip. I got ______ the train in Chicago. I got ______ the train in Des Moines.
- Phyllis takes the bus to work. She gets ______ the bus at Lindbergh Boulevard and gets ______ the bus about two blocks from her office on Tower Street.

### $\diamond$ PRACTICE 6. Phrasal verbs.

- A: Why don't we try to call ______ the O'Briens sometime this weekend? We haven't seen them for a long time.
  - B: Good idea. I'd like to see them again.

- 2. A: Did you go ______ your paper carefully before you handed it ____?
  - B: Yes. I looked it _____ carefully.
- 3. A: Do you believe his story about being late because he had a flat tire?
  - B: No. I think he made it _____.
- 4. A: Could you pick ______ a newspaper on your way home from work tonight?
   B: Sure.
  - ana sunna
- 5. A: Did you hear the bad news?
  - B: About what?
  - A: Gary's grandmother passed ______. Gary went home to be with his family and attend the funeral.
- 6. A: I like your new shoes.
  - B: Thanks. I had to try _____ almost a dozen pairs before I decided to get these.
- 7. A: Have you decided to accept that new job?
  - B: Not yet. I'm still thinking it _____.
- 8. A: I'm tired. I wish I could get ______ of going to the meeting tonight.
  - B: Do you have to go?
- 9. A: Why hasn't Mary been in class for the last two weeks?
  - B: She dropped ______ school.
- 10. A: What time does your plane take _____?
  - **B**: 10:40.
  - A: How long does the flight take?
  - B: I think we get _____ around 12:30.
- 11. A: Do you like living in the dorm?
  - B: It's okay. I've learned to put _____ with all the noise.
- 12. A: What brought _____ your decision to quit your job?
  - B: I couldn't get _____ my boss.

### ♦ PRACTICE 7. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for each of these two-word verbs.

- 1. A: Guess who I ran _____ today as I was walking across campus.
  - B: Who?
  - A: Ann Keefe.
  - B: You're kidding!
- 2. A: There will be a test on Chapters Eight and Nine next Friday.
  - B: (Groan.) Couldn't you put it _____ until Monday?

- 3. A: You'd better put _____ your coat before you leave. It's chilly out.
  - B: What's the temperature?
- 4. A: I smell something burning in the kitchen. Can I call you _____ in a minute?
  - B: Sure. I hope your dinner hasn't burned.
  - A: So do I! Bye.
  - B: Good-bye.



- 5. A: I think that if I learn enough vocabulary I won't have any trouble using English.
  - B: That's not necessarily so. I'd like to point _____ that language consists of much more than just vocabulary.
- 6. A: One billion seconds ago, World War II was being fought. One billion minutes ago, Jesus Christ was living. One billion hours ago, the human race had not yet discovered agriculture.
  - B: How did you figure that _____?
  - A: I didn't. I came ______ that information while I was reading the newspaper.
- 7. A: Your children certainly love the outdoors.
  - B: Yes, they do. We brought them _____ to appreciate nature.
- 8. A: What forms do I have to fill out to change my tourist visa to a student visa?
  - B: I don't know, but I'll look ______ it first thing tomorrow and try to find ______.
    I'll let you know.
- 9. A: How long were you in the hospital?
  - B: About a week. But I've missed almost two weeks of classes.
  - A: It's going to be hard for you to make _____ all the work you've missed, isn't it?
  - B: Very.
- 10. A: Would you mind turning _____ the light?B: Not at all.

### ♦ PRACTICE 8. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word verbs.

- 1. A: Who do you take ______ the most, your father or your mother?
  - B: My mother, I think. I can see many similarities between the two of us.
- 2. A: Hey, cut it ______, you guys! I'm trying to sleep.
  - B: What's the matter? Are we making too much noise?
- 3. A: Could I help you clean _____?
  - B: Sure. Would you mind taking _____ the garbage?
- 4. A: Miss Ward, what seems to be the problem?
  - B: Well, Doctor, for the last two days I haven't been able to keep any food down. Every time I try to eat something, I throw ______ soon afterward.
- 5. A: Where's my jacket?
  - B: I hung it _____ the closet.
- 6. A: Why are you going to see Professor Kelly?
  - B: He called me _____ to talk about my research project.
- 7. A: Is that man's story true?
  - B: Yes. A newspaper reporter checked _____ his story and found that it was true.
- 8. A: The city government is planning to redevelop a large section of the inner city.

B: What's going to happen to the buildings that are there now?

- A: They are going to be torn _____.
- 9. A: Some people tried to crash our party last night.
  - B: What did you do?
  - A: We kicked them _____.
- 10. The test is about to begin. Please put ______ all of your books and notebooks.

Antista Antion Supplementary Grammar Unlt A29

### A

A/an, 53 Able to, 84 Accustomed to, 152fn. Active verbs, 92, 94, 109 Adjective(s), defined, A2-A3 following being (e.g., being foolish), 6 followed by infinitive (e.g., happy to meet), 165 with linking verbs (e.g., taste good), A4-A5 with get (e.g., get hungry), A4-A5 nouns used as (e.g., vegetable soup), 49-50 participial (e.g., amusing/amused), 107-108 passive verbs (stative), used as, 101-102 possessive (my, your, etc.), 59 preposition combinations with, A15-A19 Adjective clauses: expressions of quantity in, 143 object pronouns (whom, which, that), 135-139 punctuation of, 140-143 reduction to adjective phrases, 143-145 subject pronouns (who, which, that), 135-140 with when, 139 with where, 139 with whose, 138 Adjective phrases, 143-145 Adverb(s), A2-A3 conjunctive (e.g., therefore), 208 midsentence, A3 Adverb clauses, 191 cause and effect (because, etc.), 193, 212 condition (if, unless, etc.), 196 contrast (although, etc.), 213 direct contrast (whereas, while), 194 punctuation of, 191 purpose (so that), 211 reduction to modifying phrases, 199-201 summary (cause and effect, contrast, condition), 197 time (after, before, etc.), 31-32 A few, 56 After, 31-32

ndex

Agreement: pronoun with noun, 60 subject-verb, 42-44 verb with paired conjunctions, 187-188 A little, 56 All (of), 57 A lot of, 51 Although, 213, 215-216 Am, is, are being + adjective, 6-7 And, but, or, nor, 185-187 Any, 57, A15 Apostrophe: in contractions with not, A14 in contractions with pronouns and nouns, 48-49 with possessive nouns, 49 Appositives (SEE Adjective phrases) Articles, 53 As, 32 As if/as though, 230 As soon as, 32 Auxiliary verbs (SEE Be; Contractions of verbs; Do/does/did; Have/has/had; Modal auxiliaries; Questions)

# В

Be. A4 auxiliary, 1-3, 88-91 Be able to, 84-86 Be going to, 26 Be supposed to, 74 Be used to, 152 Because, 193, 208, 216 Because of, 208, 216 Before, 32 Being + adjective, 6 Both ... and, 187-188 Both (of), 56 But, 185-187, 213 By: with passive (the by-phrase), 92-93 with reflexive pronouns, 60

### С

Can, 84-86 ability/possibility, 81 degree of certainty, 79-80 in polite requests, 70 Causative verbs (make, have, get), 173 Clauses (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) Collective nouns, 60 Commands (SEE Imperative sentences) Commas: with adjective clauses, 140-143 with adjective phrases, 143-145 with adverb clauses, 191 in combining independent clauses, 189-190 in parallel structure, 185 with transitions, 209 Complex sentences (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) Compound sentences, 189-190 Conjunctions: combining independent clauses with, 189-190 coordinating, 185, 189-190 paired (correlative), 187-188 punctuation with, 189-190, 209 Conjunctive adverbs, 208-209 (SEE ALSO Transitions) Consequently, 209 Contractions of verbs: auxiliaries with not, A13 auxiliaries with pronouns and nouns, A13 Contrary-to-fact (SEE Conditional sentences) Coordinating conjunctions, 185, 189–190 Could, 84-86 degree of certainty, 78-80 past ability, 81 in polite requests, 70 in reported speech, 126-127 for suggestions, 76 after wish, 231-232 Count/noncount nouns, 51

# D

Dangling modifiers (SEE Modifying phrases, reduction of adverb clauses) Dependent clauses (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) Definite nouns, article use, 53 **Despite**, 213, 215–216 Direct object, 94

use of expressions of quantity with, 55

**Do/does/did**, in negatives, 71, A15 Double negatives, A15 **Due to**, 209, 216

# E

Each/every, 58 Each of, 43 -Ed forms, 4 pronunciation, 8 spelling, 4 Either . . . or, 187–188 Enough, 166 Even if, 194, 218 -Ever words, 130 Every one of, 58 Even though, 193, 213, 215–216 Expressions: of place, 15 of quantity, 43, 55–56, 143 (SEE ALSO Past participle; Verb tenses, simple past)

# $\mathbf{F}$

(A) Few/(a)little, 56
For: meaning because, 189 vs. since, 19
Forget/remember, 156
Frequency adverbs, A3
Future time, 26 using present tenses to express, 29 expressing in time clauses, 27 (SEE ALSO Be going to; Verb tenses; Will)

# G

Generic noun, 53 Gerunds: vs. infinitives, 153, 156-162 as objects of prepositions, 151 passive/past, 167, 169 possessive modifier with, 170 preposition combinations followed by, 152 as subjects, 163 verbs followed by, 152 Get: causative (e.g., get them to do it), 173 linking (e.g., get hungry), A4 passive (e.g., get worried), 105-106 Go + gerund (e.g., go shopping), 152 Going to, 26-27

### Η

Had better, 73 Had to, 72 Have/has/had: auxiliary, 1, 3 causative, 173, 175, 178 contracted, A13fn. as main verb, use of do with: in negative, A12 in questions, A8, A11 in tag questions, A13 Have to: lack of necessity, 72 necessity, 72 *Help* + simple form, 173 How, A10-A11 However: -ever word, 130 transition, 213, 216 Hyphen, 49, A14fn.

# I

If, 120 (SEE ALSO Adverb clauses, conditions; Conditional sentences; Noun clauses) If-clauses, 194, 227 Imperative sentences, 126 Impersonal pronouns, 62 In case, 195 Indefinite nouns, articles with, 53 Indefinite pronouns, 60 Independent clauses, combining with conjunctions, 189-190 Indirect object, as passive subject, 94 Infinitives: following adjectives, 165 following be, 74 with causative get, 173 with *it*, 163 with modal auxiliaries, 69 past, passive, 166, 169 purpose (in order to), 164 with question words, 122 as subjects, 163 with too/enough, 166 verbs followed by, 153-156 Information questions, A7-A11 -Ing forms: go + -ing, 152special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 153 spelling, 4 upon + -ing, 202

verbs of perception + -ing (e.g., see her walking), 172 (SEE ALSO Gerunds; Present participles) In order to, 164 In spite of, 213, 215-216 In the event that, 195 Intransitive verbs, A1 Inverted word order: after negative, A15 after only if, 196 Irregular plural nouns, 47 Irregular verbs, 9, 11-14 It: with infinitives, 163 its vs. it's, 59 with noun clauses, 123 personal pronouns, 59

# L

Lay, lie, 14 Let + simple form, 173 Let's, 75 Linking verbs, A4-A5 (A) Little/(a) few, 56 -Ly, adverb form, A2-A3

### M

Main clauses (SEE Independent clauses) Many/much, 55 May: degree of certainty, 78 permission, 70 in polite requests, 70 Midsentence adverbs, A3 Might: degree of certainty, 78 in polite requests, 70 in reported speech, 126 Modal auxiliaries, 69, 79 passive, 97-99 progressive, 80 in reported speech, 126-127 Modifying phrases: reduction of adjective clauses, 143-145 reduction of adverb clauses, 199-202 Most (of), 42, 56 Much/many, 55 Must: degree of certainty, 78, 80 necessity, 71 lack of, 71 prohibition, 71

### Ν

Negative(s): beginning a sentence, A15 in contractions, A14 double, A15 questions, A12 Neither ... nor, 187–188 Nevertheless/nonetheless, 213, 216 *No*, A14 Noncount nouns, 48fn., 51 None (of), 43Nor, 187 Not, A14 Not only ... but also, 186-188 Noun(s): used as adjectives (e.g., vegetable soup), 49-50 collective, 60 count and noncount, 48fn., 51 definite/indefinite/generic, 53 possessive, 48 pronoun agreement with, 64 regular and irregular plurals, 47 Noun clauses: with the fact that, 123 with it, 123 with question words, 116-119 reported speech, sequence of tenses, 126-127 subjunctive in, 129 with that, 123 with whether/if, 120 after wish, 231-232 Now that, 193, 216

# 0

Objects: of a preposition, 152 of a verb, direct/indirect, 94 Of, in expressions of quantity, 56 Once, 32 One, impersonal pronoun, 62 One of (+ plural noun), 58 Only if, 197, 218 On the other hand, 216 Or, 187 Other, forms of, 62 Otherwise, 217 Ought to, 73

# Р

Paired conjunctions (e.g., both . . . and), 186–188 Parallel structure, 185–187 Participial adjectives (e.g., confusing vs. confused), 107-108 Participial phrases (SEE Modifying phrases) Participles (SEE Modifying phrases; Past participle; Present participle) Passive, form, 88-91, 94, 109 by-phrase, 93 with causative verbs (e.g., have it done), 173, 175, 178 gerunds, (e.g., being done), 167, 169 with get (e.g., get worried), 105-106 infinitives (e.g., to be done), 166-167, 169 modal auxiliaries, 97-99 participial adjective (e.g., amused children), 107-108 stative (e.g., the door is locked), 101-103 Past participle, 9 as adjective (e.g., amused children), 107-108 irregular, 9 in passive, 97-99, 104 in verb tenses, 1 (SEE ALSO -Ed forms) Past time (SEE Verb tenses) Perfect/perfect progressive verbs, 3, 5 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses) Periods, 189-190, 209 Personal pronouns, 59 agreement with nouns, 60, 62 Phrasal modals, 69 Phrasal verbs, A20-A29 Phrases: prepositional, A2 reduction of adjective clauses, 143-145 reduction of adverb clauses, 199-201 Place expressions with progressive verbs, 15-17 Polite requests, 70 Possessive: in adjective clauses (whose), 138 with gerunds, 170 nouns (e.g., John's book), 48 pronouns/adjectives (mine, my, etc.), 59-60 in questions (which), A7-A8 Preposition(s), A2 combinations with adjectives and verbs, 15-19 combinations followed by gerunds, 152 following stative passive verbs, 103 Prepositional phrases, A2 Present participle: as adjective (e.g., amusing story), 107-108 vs. past participle, 96, 104 in reduction of adjective clauses, 143-145 in reduction of adverb clauses, 199-201 special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 153

spelling of -ing forms, 4 with verbs of perception (e.g., watch someone doing), 172 in verb tenses, 1-3 Present time (SEE Verb tenses) Progressive verbs, 2, 225–226 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses) vs. stative, 6 Pronouns: impersonal, 62 indefinite, 60 object, 59 personal, 59 agreement with nouns, 60, 62, 64 possessive, 59 reflexive, 60 relative (SEE Adjective clauses) subject, 59 Pronunciation: -ed, 8 -s/es, 42 Punctuation: adjective clauses, 140-143 adjective phrases, 144 adverb clauses, 191 independent clauses, 189-190 parallel structure, 185 quoted speech, 124 transitions, 209 (SEE ALSO Apostrophe; Commas; Hyphens; Periods; Quotation marks; Semicolon)

# Q

Quantity (SEE Expressions of quantity) Questions: information, A7-A11 negative, A12 tag, A13 word order in, A6 yes/no, A7-A8 Question words: with infinitives, 122 in noun clauses, 116-119 in questions, A7-A11 Quotation marks, 124 Quoted speech, 124

# R

Raise/rise, 14 Reduction: of adjective clauses, 143-145 of adverb clauses, 199-201 Reflexive pronouns, 60 Regular plural nouns, 47 *Remember/forget*, 156 Repeated action in the past (would), 82 Reported speech, 126–127

# S

-S/-es, 42-43, 46-47, 51 -Self/selves, 60 Semicolon, 209fn. Sentences: complex (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) compound (SEE Conjunctions, combining independent clauses with) conditional, 223-226, 228-229, 233 inverted word order in, 227 interrogative (SEE Questions) negative, A14-A15 simple (SEE Subjects, verbs, objects) Sequence of tenses in noun clauses, 126-127 Set, sit, 14 Shall, for suggestions, 75 Should: advisability, 73 in conditional sentences, 223-225 degree of certainty, 79 past form, 73 in reported speech, 126 for suggestions, 76 Simple form of a verb: with causative verbs, 173 in imperative sentences, 126 following let and help, 173 with modal auxiliaries, 69, 79 subjunctive, 129 with verbs of perception, 172 Simple tenses, 2, 5, 7, 11–17 (SEE ALSO Verb tenses) Since: meaning because, 209, 216 duration of time, 31-32 Since vs. for, 19 Singular/plural (SEE Agreement; Count/noncount nouns; Irregular plural nouns; Nouns used as adjectives; -s/-es) So, conjunction, 189 Some (of), 51 So that, 211 So ... that/such ... that, 210 Spelling: -ed/-ing, 4 -s/-es, 42, 46

Stative passive, 101–102 followed by prepositions, 103 Stative verbs, 6 Subjects, verbs, objects, A1–A2 Subject-verb agreement, 42–44 Subjunctive, 129 Subordinate clauses (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses) Such . . . that, 210–211 Supposed to, 74

# T

Tag questions, A13 in imperative sentences, 126 Tenses (SEE Verb tenses) That: in adjective clauses, 135-138 in noun clauses, 123 The, 53 There + be, 44 Therefore, 208 They, impersonal pronoun, 62 **Though**, 215 Time clauses, 199–200 future, tense use in, 27 Too, 165-166 Transitions, 216 Transitive/intransitive: in passive, 88-91 troublesome (e.g., lay/lie), 14 Try, 156

# U

Uncountable nouns (SEE Noncount nouns) Unless, 196, 218 Upon + -ing, 202 Used to, 152fn.

# V

Verbals (SEE Gerunds; Infinitives) Verb tenses: in adverb clauses of time, 32, 192 future perfect, 3, 30 future perfect progressive, 3, 30 future progressive, 2, 29 overview, 1 in passive, 88–91, 94, 109 past perfect, 3, 22 past perfect progressive, 3, 25 past progressive, 2, 15–17 present perfect, 3, 18, 20–21 present perfect progressive, 3, 20–21, 25 present progressive, 2, 5, 7, 29 review of, 33–41 sequence of in noun clauses, 126–127 simple future, 2 simple past, 2, 11–17, 20, 22–23 simple present, 2, 5, 7 *Very/too*, 165 Voiced and voiceless sounds, 8

### W

Was/were in conditional sentences, 223 What, A7-A11 What + a form of do, A8, A10–A11 What kind, A10-A11 When, 31-32, 139, A7, A9-A11 Whenever, 31 Where, 139, A7-A8, A11 Whereas, 194, 216 Whether, 120-121 Whether or not, 194 Which, 135-138, A8-A11 While, 194, 216 Why, A8-A11 Will: conditional, 223 future, 26 Who/whom, 135, A7-A11 Whose, 135-138 Why don't, 75 Wish, 231-232 Would: in conditional sentences, 223 in polite requests, 70 repeated action in the past, 82 in reported speech, 126 with wish, 231-232 Would rather, 83 Would you mind, 70

# Y

-Y, final, spelling: with -ed, -ing, 4 with -s/-es, 42
Yes/no questions, A7–A8
Yet, conjunction, 189, 213
You, impersonal pronoun, 62 Answer Key

To the student: To make it easy to correct your own answers, remove this answer key along the perforations and make a separate answer key booklet for yourself.

### **Chapter 1: OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES**

#### O PRACTICE 1, p. 1.

- 1. do you do . . . eat
- 2. did you do . . . ate . . . visited . . . wrote
- 3. are you doing . . . am talking . . . am answering
- 4. was looking
- 5. have I asked . . . have asked
- 6. have you been doing . . . have been talking
- 7. will you be (OR: are you going to be) . . . will be (OR: am going to be)
- 8. will you be doing . . . will be sitting
- 9. had you done . . . had eaten
- 10. will you have done . . . will have eaten

### O PRACTICE 2, p. 2.

- 1. eats
- 2. ate
- 3. will eat (OR: is going to eat)
- 4. am eating
- 5. was eating
- 6. will be eating
- 7. have already eaten
- 8. had already eaten
- 9. will have already eaten (OR: will already have eaten)
- 10. has been eating
- 11. had been eating
- 12. will have been eating

### PRACTICE 3, p. 4.

#### PART A.

- 1. shouting, shouted
- 2. sloping, sloped
- 3. stopping, stopped
- 4. stooping, stooped
- 5. answering, answered
- 6. referring, referred
- 7. returning, returned
- 8. enjoying, enjoyed
- 9. copying, copied
- 10. dying, died

#### PART B.

- 11. pointing
- 12. beating

- 13. betting
- 14. exciting
- 15. exiting
- 16. regretting
- 17. attempting 18. shouting
- io. shouth
- 19. flitting
- 20. interesting

#### PART C.

- 21. bothered
- 22. blurred
- 23. scared
- 24. scarred
- 25. feared
- 26. starred
- 27. stared
- 28. ordered
- 29. suffered
- 30. occurred

#### PART D.

- 31. dreaming
- 32. filing
- 33. filling
- 34. failing
- 35. annoying
- 36. denying
- 37. scrubbing
- 38. draining
- 39. fanning
- 40. interrupting

#### PART E.

- 41. combed
- 42. wrapped
- 43. groaned
- 44. occupied
- 45. sprayed
- 46. wiped
- 47. whipped
- 48. accepted
- 49. permitted
- 50. merited
- 51. whispered
- 52. inferred

### Chapter 2: PRESENT AND PAST, SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE

### PRACTICE 1, p. 5.

1.	isn't	shining
~		

- 2. own
- 3. am trying
- 4. belongs
- 5. is sleeping 6. is bleeding
- 7. am failing
- 8. shrinks
- 9. is biting
- 10. isn't blowing
- 11. are always fighting
- 12. is he screaming
- 13. means
- 14. are you whispering
- 15. is taping

### O PRACTICE 2, p. 6.

1.	has
2.	is having
3.	weighs
4.	is weighing needs
5.	am doing consists
6.	am thinking think

- 7. is looking ... look
- 8. is currently appearing
- 9. appears
- 10. are seeing
- 11. doesn't see
- 12. am imagining
- 13. imagine
- 14. Aren't you forgetting
- 15. forget
- 16. is costing/costs
- 17. costs
- 18. am smelling . . . smells
- 19. Are you being
- 20. is
- 21. am being . . . am not

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 7.

- 1. usually drinks . . . is drinking 2. takes . . . usually waits 3. is raining . . . is standing . . . is holding . . . is waiting
- 4. is taking ... studies ... has ... is also taking ... likes . . . has
- 5. are you doing . . . am tasting . . . tastes
- 6. are you writing ... am making ... Do you always prepare . . . always try
- 7. are the children being . . . are cleaning . . . (are) picking
- 8. am preparing ... don't need

### O PRACTICE 4, p. 8.

1. /əd/	7. /əd/	13. /t/
2. /t/	8. /t/	14. /d/
3. /d/	9. /d/	15. /t/
4. /t/	10. /əd/	16. /d/
5. /əd/	11. /əd/	
6. /d/	12. /t/	

2 ANSWER KEY Chapter 2

glish.narod.ru						
◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 9.						
GROUP 1A:						
begin	began	begun				
drink	drank	drunk				
ring	rang	rung				
shrink	shrank	shrunk				
sing	sang	sung				
sink	sank	sunk				
spring	sprang	sprung				
stink	stank	stunk				
swim	swam	swum				
GROUP 1B:	<b>U</b>	<i></i>				
blow	blew	blown				
draw	drew	drawn				
grow	grew	grown				
know	knew	known				
throw	threw	thrown				
fly	flew	flown				
break	broke	broken				
choose	chose	chosen				
drive	drove	driven				
freeze	froze	frozen				
ride	rode	ridden				
rise	rose	risen				
speak	spoke	spoken				
steal	stole	stolen				
swear	swore	sworn				
tear	tore	torn				
wear	wore	worn				
weave	wore	woven				
write	wrote	written				
get	got	got/gotten				
forget	forgot	forgot/forgotten				
mistake	mistook	mistaken				
shake	shook	shaken				
take	took	taken				
bite	bit	bitten				
hide	hid	hidden				
be	was, were	been				
eat	ate	eaten				
fall	fell	fallen				
forgive	forgave	forgiven				
give	gave	given				
lie	lay	lain				
see	saw	seen				
do	did	done				
go	went	gone				
GROUP 2A:						
sell	sold	sold				
tell	told	told				
flee	fled	fled				
bleed	bled	bled				
breed	bred	bred				
feed	fed	fed				
lead	led	led				
read	read	read				
speed	ened	sned				

speed

lay

pay

say

find

grind

wind

sped

laid

paid

said

found

ground

wound

sped

laid

paid

said

found

ground

wound

have hear	had heard	had heard	split spread	split spread	split spread
			upset	upset	upset
GROUP 2B:	a				
creep	crept	crept	$\bigcirc$ practice (	5, p. 11.	
deal	dealt	dealt	1. swore	5. hid	9. spread
feel	felt	felt	2. shook	6. stuck	10. won
keep	kept	kept		7. slit	
kneel	knelt	knelt	<ol> <li>drew</li> <li>burst</li> </ol>		11. dug
leave	left	left	4. burst	8. slid	12. bought
mean	meant	meant			
meet	mer	met		7 n 10	
sleep	slept	slept		, μ. i <b>ε</b> .	
sweep	swept	swept	1. bit	5. quit	9. paid
weep	wept	wept	2. clung	6. felt	10. caught
1	1	1	3. meant	7. stung	11. shed
lose	lost	lost	4. blew	8. swam	12. wove
bring	brought	brought			
buy	bought	bought	∧ ВВ1 АНІАРІ		
catch	caught	caught	O PRACTICE {	5, p. 13.	
fight	fought	fought	1. spent	5. upset	9. spun
seek	sought	sought	2. led	6. split	10. rang
teach	taught	taught	3. bet	7. sank	11. chose
think		0	4. wept	8. flew	12. froze
unnk	thought	thought	-1. WOPC	0. 110 11	12. 11020
bend	bent	bent			
build	built	built		2. p. 14.	
lend	lent	lent		-	
send	sent	sent	1. fell	5. lost	9. cost
			2. struck	6. dealt	10. swept
spend	spent	spent	<ol><li>Broadcast</li></ol>	7. held	11. stole
GROUP 2C:			4. sought	8. sho <b>t</b>	12. fled
cling	clung	clung			
dig	dug	dug		0 - 14	
. =				ιο, μ. τ4.	
hang	hung	hung	1. raises	6. lying	
spin	spun	spun	2. rose	7. lay	
stick	stuck	stuck	3. set	8. laid	
sting	stung	stung	4. sat	9. hung	
strike	struck	struck/stricken	5. lays	10. lies	
swing	swung	swung	,		
hold	held	held			
shoot	shot	shot		11, p. 15.	
sit	sat	sat	1. had		
stand	stood	stood	2. were at hon	having	
understand	understood	understood			exploded caused
			lit/lighte		
win	won	won			were you thinking
GROUP 2D:				was uniting	
become	became	become		was in her i	
come	came	come			toom insteming
				fell spilled	na in lann na ann dhuinn
run	ran	run			as in her room drying
GROUP 3:			9. served v		<b>1</b>
bet	bet	bet		was sleeping	. was dreaming was
bid	bid	bid	smiling		
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast			
burst	burst	burst		12. p. 16.	
				g turned	hir
cost	cost	cost	2. was was		· III
Cut	Cut	Cut Lie			ching went went
hit	hit burb	hit			
hurt	hurt	hurt		urned listen	
let	let	let			were more clever]
put	put	put		was still in	
quit	guit	guit			l playing was pulling
shed	shed	shed	. ran		
				Did you fi	
shut	shut	shut		terrupting i	
slit	slit	slit	<ol><li>was trying .</li></ol>	interrupted	asked refused

ANSWER KEY Chapter 2 3

### PRACTICE 13, p. 17.

### Possible answers:

- 1. was cleaning . . . found/came upon/discovered
- took/withdrew ... bought/purchased ... was driving ... collided with/hit ... demolished/destroyed/ wrecked
- woke/got . . . heard . . . was walking/running/ crawling
- visited/called on . . . were doing/were washing . . . came/knocked/arrived . . . finished . . . sat . . . talked/chatted/ reminisced
- got to/arrived at . . . was waiting/was watching . . . saw . . . waved/raised . . . said/shouted . . . were making
- was . . . watering/sprinkling/tending . . . began/ started . . . shut/turned

### Chapter 3: PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

### PRACTICE 1, p. 18.

- 1. have already eaten
- 2. have won
- 3. haven't written
- 4. has improved
- 5. hasn't started
- 6. have already swept
- 7. have you known
- 8. have made
- 9. have never ridden
- 10. Have you ever swum
- 11. has grown
- 12. have driven
- 13. has forgotten
- 14. has cost . . . have saved

### PRACTICE 2, p. 19.

1. for since	7. for
2. since	8. since
3. for	9. for for
4. for since	10. since
5. for	11. since since
<i></i>	

6. since 12. since

### PRACTICE 3, p. 20.

- 1. knew ... have known
- 2. agreed . . . have agreed
- 3. took . . . has taken
- 4. has played . . . played
- 5. wrote . . . has written
- 6. sent . . . have sent
- 7. has flown . . . flew
- 8. overslept . . . has overslept

# PRACTICE 4, p. 20.

- 1. have been playing
- 2. has played
- 3. has been sleeping
- 4. has slept
- 5. haven't flown
- 6. have been flying
- 7. have been searching

- 8. has raised
- 9. has been lecturing
- 10. has never missed
- 11. have finally made . . . have chosen

### PRACTICE 5, p. 21.

- 1. have never understood
- 2. have met
- 3. has been standing
- 4. have always wanted
- 5. has been painting
- have been travel(l)ing
- 7. has grown
- 8. have already spent
- 9. has been cooking
- 10. have never heard
- 11. have been waiting
- 12. has been digging

### PRACTICE 6, p. 22.

- 1. had already finished
- 2. turned on
  - 3. had already invented
- 4. had burned
- 5. had never spent
- 6. stung
- 7. had never designed
- 8. helped
- 9. had never been
- 10. had flown
- 11. had never taught
- 12. had already left

### PRACTICE 7, p. 23.

- 1. went . . . had never been . . . didn't take . . . was
- 2. ate . . . had never eaten
- 3. saw . . . did . . . Had you ever acted . . . started
- 4. went . . . moved . . . took . . . had arrived . . . laughed . . . invited . . . was
- 5. was...studied...had never had ...spoke ... enjoyed
- traveled . . . had never lived . . . had . . . became . . . . had never lived

### PRACTICE 8, p. 25.

- 1. had been listening to . . . have been dancing . . . singing
- 2. have been waiting
- 3. had been waiting
- 4. has been training
- 5. had been running
- 6. had been trying ... has been teaching
- 7. has been performing
- 8. have been working . . . had been building

### **Chapter 4: FUTURE TIME**

#### PRACTICE 1, p. 26.

- 1. will
- 2. are going to
- 3. will
- 4. Are you going to . . . are going to
- 5. am going to

- 6. will
- 7. will/am going to
- 8. am going to
- 9. will
- 10. am going to
- 11. is going to ... is he going to/will he
- 12. will
- 13. am going to . . . will
- 14. am going to

### O PRACTICE 2, p. 27.

- 1. will not/are not going to return . . . get
- 2. hear . . . will let
- 3. will lend . . . finish
- 4. gets . . . will be/is going to be
- 5. isn't going to be/won't be ... learns ... comes ... asks
- 6. returns . . . will start/is going to start
- 7. is going to build/will build . . . will be/is going to be . . . complete
- 8. will be/is going to be . . . is

### PRACTICE 3, p. 29.

- 1. I'm sending
- 2. (no change)
- 3. I'm having
- 4. are you doing . . . am studying
- 5. (no change) [I'm getting it would have a present, not future, meaning.]
- 6. are . . . getting
- 7. (no change)
- 8. are moving
- 9. Is . . . teaching
- 10. am not sending . . . are coming

### O PRACTICE 4, p. 29.

- 1. heals . . . will be playing
- 2. clear . . . will be standing
- 3. start . . . will be attending
- 4. have . . . will be shopping
- 5. will be attending . . . return

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 30.

- 1. will already have risen (OR: will have already risen)
- 2. will have been riding
- 3. will already have arrived (OR: will have already arrived)
- 4. will have been listening
- 5. will have smoked
- 6. will have been flying
- 7. will have saved
- 8. will have taught

### Chapter 5: ADVERB CLAUSES OF TIME AND SUMMARY OF VERB TENSES

- ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 31.
  - 1. When I reached my 21st birthday, I didn't feel any older.
  - 2. I had a cup of tea <u>before I left for work</u>. Before I left for work, I had a cup of tea.

- <u>After I get home from work</u>, I like to read the evening newspaper.
   I like to read the evening newspaper <u>after I get</u> home from work.
- 4. Since my watch broke, I have been late to work three times.
   I have been late to work three times since my watch
- broke.
  5. My cat hides under the house whenever it rains.
  Whenever it rains, my cat hides under the house.
- 6. I'm going to get a job <u>once I finish school</u>. <u>Once I finish school</u>, I'm going to get a job.
- 7. While I was waiting for my bus, I heard a gunshot. I heard a gunshot while I was waiting for my bus.
- The village will have no electric power <u>until a new</u> <u>generator is installed</u>. <u>Until a new generator is installed</u>, the village will have no electric power.
- 9. <u>The last time I was in Taipei</u>, I saw Mr. Wu. I saw Mr. Wu the last time I was in Taipei.
- 10. As soon as we saw the tornado heading toward our town, we ran to the basement of the town hall.
   We ran to the basement of the town hall as soon as we saw the tornado heading toward our town.

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 32.

- 1. As soon as our taxi gets here, we can leave.
- 2. I turned off the TV before I left the room.
- 3. <u>The first time I parachuted from a plane</u>, I was both terrified and exhilarated.
- 4. My boss stormed into my office while I was talking on the phone to an important client.
- 5. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, its name was changed to Sri Lanka.
- 6. <u>Since Jack fell off his bicycle</u>, he's had to use crutches to walk.
- 7. Ms. Johnson will return your call as soon as she has some free time.
- 8. <u>Once John learns how to use a computer</u>, he'll be able to work more efficiently.
- 9. I won't return this book to the library <u>until I finish</u> my research project.
- 10. Sue dropped a carton of eggs as she was leaving the store.
- 11. <u>The next time Anna goes to class</u>, she'll remember to take her grammar book.
- 12. When the flooding river raced down the valley, it destroyed everything in its path.
- 13. Just as soon as the rice is done, we can eat.
- 14. When I go to bed at night, I like to read <u>until I get</u> sleepy.

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 32.

6. D	11. A
7. B	12. A
8. B	13. A
9. C	14. C
10. A	15. B
	7. B 8. B 9. C

### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 33.

- 1. has never flown
- 2. have been waiting . . . hasn't arrived
- 3. are . . . reach
- 4. will have already left (OR: will already have left) . . . get
- 5. are having . . . has been
- 6. went . . . got . . . were dancing . . . were talking . . . was standing . . . had never met . . . introduced
- 7. was lying . . . heard . . . got . . . looked . . . had just backed
- 8. am planning ... am going/am going to go/will go ... leave ... am going/am going to go/will go ... is studying ... has been living/has lived ... knows ... promised/has promised ... have never been ... am looking
- 9. was sitting ... got ... was sitting ... tried ... was lecturing ... had been hiccupping *(also possible:* had hiccupped) ... raised ... excused
- has been raining ... has dropped ... is ... was shining ... was ... changes ... wake ... will be snowing

### ♦ PRACTICE 5, p. 34.

- 1. had been
- 2. met
- 3. had missed
- 4. was
- 5. got
- 6. took
- 7. was
- 8. had grown
- 9. was

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 35.

- 1. will have been
- 2. will meet
- 3. will have missed
- 4. will be
- 5. get
- 6. will take
- 7. will no longer be
- 8. will have grown
- 9. will be
- 10. will probably be wearing
- 11. will have changed 12. will still be
- 12. will ask
- 14. will probably have gained
- 15. will have turned
- 16. will look
- 17. will be

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 35.

#### PART I.

- 1. seems
- 2. sent
- 3. haven't received
- 4. is not functioning
- 5. are working
- 6. will start

- PART II. 1. haven't seen
  - 2. is at home recuperating/is recuperating at home
  - 3. is she recuperating
  - 4. hurt
  - 5. was playing
  - 6. did she hurt
  - 7 was trying
  - 8. collided
  - 9. fell
- 10. landed
- 11. twisted
- 12. has been wearing
- 13. hasn't been
- 14. will not/won't be
- 15. Will her doctor allow/Is her doctor going to allow
- 16. will have had

#### PART III.

- 1. Did you enjoy
- 2. I've never gone
- 3. had never gone
- 4. didn't know
- 5. were still trying
- 6. appeared
- 7. started
- 8. was singing
- 9. was

### PART IV.

- 1. grew up
- 2. greatly admired/had greatly admired
- 3. had become
- 4. became
- 5. contained
- 6. died
- 7. had been working
- 8. never finished
- 9. has become

### ◇ PRACTICE 8. Test A, p. 38.

1. C	11. D
2. C	12. A
3. A	13. D
4. A	14. A
5. B	15. B
6. C	16. B
7. C	17 D
8. C	18. B
9. B	19. D
10. C	20. C

### ◇ PRACTICE 9. Test B, p. 40.

1. A	11. D
2. A	12. A
3. B	13. A
4. C	14. A
5. C	15. D
6. A	16. D
7. B	17. C
8. B	18. B
9. C	19. A
10. B	20. D

was still
 asked
 had gained
 had turned

10. was wearing

11. had changed

16. looked 17. were

### Chapter 6: SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

#### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 42.

- 1. My mother wears glasses.
- 2. <u>Elephants are</u> large animals. OR: <u>An</u> elephant is <u>a</u> large <u>animal</u>.
- 3. Your heart beats faster when you exercise.
- 4. Healthy hearts need regular exercise.
- 5. Every child in the class knows the alphabet.
- 6. Some of the <u>magazines</u> at the dentist's office are two <u>years</u> old.
- 7. A number of the students in my class <u>are</u> from Mexico.
- 8. One of my favorite subjects in school is algebra.
- 9. There are many different kinds of insects in the world.
- 10. Writing compositions is difficult for me.
- 11. The United States has a population of more than 250 million.
- Most of the people in my factory division <u>like</u> and <u>get</u> along with one another, but a few of the <u>workers</u> <u>don't</u> fit in with the rest of us very well.

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 42.

1.	s	/z/	9.	s	/s/
2.	es	/əz/	10.	es	/əz/
3.	s	/s/	11.	s	/z/
4.	S	/z/	12.	ies	/z/
5.	s	/s/	13.	s	/z/
6.	es	/əz/	14.	S	/s/
7.	s	/s/	15.	S	/s/
8.	s	/z/	16.	s	/z/

#### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 43.

1. is	6. are	11. is
2. are	7. is	12. is
<ol><li>barks</li></ol>	8. are	13. are
4. bark	9. is	14. is
5. is	10. are	15. is

#### OPRACTICE 4, p. 43.

1.	is	10.	is
2.	are	11.	is
3.	is	12.	has
4.	are	13.	has
5.	has	14.	has/have
6.	have	15.	is
7.	were	16.	is/are
8.	was	17.	is
9.	was	18.	are

#### OPRACTICE 5, p. 44.

1. is		9.	is is is
2. are	:	10.	isn't
3. are	n't	11.	isn't
4. isn	't	12.	is
5. are	:	13.	are
6. is		14.	is
7. is		15.	are
8. is		16.	are

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 44.

- 1. vote
- 2. have
- 3. was
   4. knows
- 5. Isn't
- 6. speak and understand
- 7. are
- 8. do
- 9. are
- 10. have
- 11. has . . . have
- 12. confirms
- 13. is . . . is
- 14. are
- 15. is
- 16. Aren't
- 17. Is
- 18. begin [Answer: 4 (Alabama, Alaska, Arizona, Arkansas)]
- 19. consists
- 20. have
- 21. is
- 22. Was

### Chapter 7: NOUNS

#### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 46.

- 1. cares . . . feathers
- 2. occupations . . . Doctors . . . Pilots . . . airplanes . . . Farmers . . . crops . . . Shepherds
- 3. designs . . . buildings . . . digs . . . objects
- 4. computers . . . Computers
- 5. factories . . . employs
- 6. Kangaroos . . . animals . . . continents . . . zoos
- 7. Mosquitos/Mosquitoes
- 8. tomatoes
- 9. Birds . . . insects . . . mammals . . . forms . . . characteristics
- 10. creatures . . . five senses . . . these senses . . . Birds . . . Animals . . . dogs . . . human beings

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 47.

- 1. feet
- 2. heroes
- 3. knives
- 4 qualities
- 5. doorways
- 6. gentlemen
- 7. wolves
- 8. quizzes
- 9. customs 10. videos
- 11. potatoes
- 12. deer
- 12. deel 13. oxen
- 15. Oxen
- 14. donkeys
- 15. mysteries 16. chiefs
- 17. thieves
- 18. flashes
- 18. flashe
- 19. memos
- 20. memoranda
- 21. crises
- 22. mouths

#### O PRACTICE 3, p. 47.

- 1 theses
- 2. phenomena
- 3. hypotheses
- 4. crises
- 5. memoranda
- 6. media
- 7. criteria
- 8. curricula
- 9. stimuli
- 10. bacteria
- 11. oases
- 12. data

### O PRACTICE 4, p. 48.

- 1. secretary's
- 2. secretaryies'
- 3. cats'
- 4. cat's
- 5. child's
- 6. children's
- 7. supervisors'
- 8. supervisor's
- 9. people's
- 10. month's
- 11. actors'
- 12. actor's

### O PRACTICE 5, p. 49.

- 1. Mary's father ... He's a dentist.
- 2. Jack's parents live ... His parents' home ....
- 3. Our teacher's last name . . . She's one of the best teachers . . .
- 4. Our teachers' last names . . . They're all good teachers.
- 5. Ms Wells' (OR: Wells's) husband . . . Ms. Hunt's husband . . .
- 6. It's well known that a bear likes ....
- 7. Ann's telephone number . . . . [Note: No apostrophes are used with possessive pronouns, e.g., hers, ours). See Chart 8-1.]
- 8. Although it's found . . . our children's and grandchildren's lives . . .

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 49.

#### PART I.

- 1. toys . . . toy
- 2. tomato . . . tomatoes
- 3. vegetable . . . vegetables
- 4. drugs . . . drug
- 5. two lanes . . . two-lane
- 6. five-minute . . . five minutes
- 7. sixty-year-old . . . sixty years old

### PART II.

- 8. student handbook.
- 9. ten-month-old baby.
- 10. three-day trip.
- 11. child psychologist.
- 12. fifty-dollar check.
- 13. three-credit course.
- 14. nine-room house.
- 15. dog food.
- guest room.
- 17. five-page paper.

8 ANSWER KEY Chapter 7

18. ten-year-old sister and a twelve-year-old brother.

### PRACTICE 7, p. 50.

- 1. a bank robber
- 2. a bullfighter
- 3. a stamp collector
- 4. an animal trainer
- 5. a storyteller
- 6. a tax collector
- 7. a can opener 8. a windshield wiper
- 9. a wage earner
- 10. an office manager
- 11. a computer programmer
- 12. a bookkeeper
- 13. a spot remover
- 14. a pot holder
- 15. a troublemaker
- 16. a mind reader
- 17. a hair dryer (OR: hair drier)
- 18. a potato peeler
- 19. a tennis player
- 20. a firefighter
- 21. a mail carrier

### O PRACTICE 8, p. 51.

- 1. (no change) . . . eyes
- 2. (no change)
- 3. (no change)
- 4. sandwiches
- 5. (no change)
- 6. (no change)
- 7. photographs 8. (no change)
- 9. ideas
- 10. (no change)
- 11. (no change)
- 12. (no change)
- 13. words
- 14. (no change)
- 15. (no change) 16. gloves

... (no change)

OPRACTICE 9, p. 53.

4. A . . . a . . . the . . . the

1. Ø...a...Ø

2. a . . . the

3. Ø...Ø

8. the

10. an

5. The . . . the

6. Ø . . . Ø . . . Ø

7. Ø...Ø...Ø

9. The . . . the . . . the

- 17. cars . . . minutes . . . (no change)
- 18. (no change) . . . rings . . . bracelets . . . (no change)
- 19. (no change) ... (no change) ... vegetables ... (no change)
- 20. Butterflies . . . caterpillars . . . insects . . . wings
- 21. (no change) ... customs 22. (no change) ... (no change)

23. (no change) ... products ... vegetables ... (no change)

... sardines ... vitamins ... (no change) ... pills

24. (no change) ... (no change) ... (no change) ... facts

25. (no change) ... (no change) ... (no change)

www.ez-english.narod.ru

11. a a an an a	9. Ø
12. the a the an/a The Ø	10. of
13. a The the a a the a	11. Ø
14. the a a	12. Ø
15. Øaan	13. of
16. Ø a a	14. Ø
17. Ø a a the	15. of
18. the A Ø	16. Ø
19. a the the the the the a the	17. Ø
20. a the the	18. Ø
21. a Ø Ø The The	19. Ø
22. a a Ø Ø Ø an a the a	20. Ø
aØØa	21. of
23. a a The a the The the	22. Ø
The $\ldots \phi$	23. Ø
24. the the	24. of
	25. Ø
PRACTICE 10, p. 55.	26. Ø
1. many watches	27. of
2. much Ø	28. Ø
3. many teeth	29. Ø
4. much Ø is	30. of
5. much Ø	
6. much Ø	🔷 PR/
7. many videos	1. sm
8. is much Ø	2. st
9. many witnesses	3. то
10. much Ø	4. ro
11. many villages	5. wi
12. much Ø	6. wi
13. much Ø	7. ite
14. many <b>míce</b>	8. ite
15. isn't much Ø	9. co
<ol><li>16. many adventures</li></ol>	10. cc
17. wasmuchØ	11. pe
18. much Ø many textbooks	12. qu
<ol><li>are many thieves, muggers pickpockets</li></ol>	13. ch
20. isn't much $\ldots \emptyset \ldots$ much	14. pr
21. many volcanoes are	15. ap
22. many speeches	
	Chapt
O PRACTICE 11, p. 56.	F

- 1. a little
- 2. (very) few
- 3. a little
- 4. a few
- 5. (Very) Few
- 6. (very) few
- 7 a few
- 8 (very) little
- 9. a few
- 10. a little
- 11. A few
- 12. a little ... a little
- 13. (very) little
- 14. (very) few

### PRACTICE 12, p. 56.

- 1. Ø
- 2. of
- 3. Ø
- 4. of
- 5. Ø
- 6. of
- 7. of
- 8. Ø

- OR: of OR: of ...Ø
- ACTICE 13, p. 58.
  - udent
  - udents
  - oms
  - om
  - indow
  - indows
  - em
  - ems
  - ountries
  - ountry
  - erson
  - uestion
  - nildren . . . child
  - roblems
  - oplicants

#### ter 8: PRONOUNS

O PRACTICE 1, p. 59.

- 1. them
- 2. me
- 3. I
- 4. me . . . his
- 5. his . . . her
- 6. its . . . them
- 7. They . . . it
- 8. your . . . them
- 9. I.... him ... me
- 10. My . . . I . . . She . . . her . . . mine
- 11. its
- 12. it . . . it
- 13. them
- 14. me . . . them . . . us . . . our
- 15. she . . . me . . . us . . . his

### PRACTICE 2, p. 60.

- 1. his/her; his or her; his; her
- 2. their
- 3. their
- 4. his/her; his or her; his; her
- 5. his/her; his or her; his; her

SHIRAROUTU

- 6. their
- 7. them; him or her; him; her
- 8. their; his/her; his or her; his; her
- 9. Their
- 10. They have . . . they
- 11. They
- 12. It was

#### PRACTICE 3, p. 60.

- 1. himself
- 2. myself
- 3. himself
- 4. yourself
- 5. yourselves
- 6. themselves
- 7. myself
- 8. themselves 9. myself
- 10. herself
- 11. himself
- 12. yourself
- 13. ourselves
- 14. myself
- 15. himself
- 16. yourself
- 17. herself
- 18. myself
- 19. ourselves
- 20. themselves
- 21. yourself
- 22. yourselves
- 23. himself . . . himself

#### PRACTICE 4, p. 62.

- 1. ourselves . . . we are . . . our
- 2. yourself . . . you are . . . your
- 3. yourselves . . . you are . . . your
- 4. themselves . . . they are . . . their
- 5. and 6. INFORMAL: themselves . . . they are . . . their
- FORMAL: himself . . . he is . . . his OR: herself . . . she is
- ... her (also possible: him/herself ... s/he is ... his/her)

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 62.

- 1. another
- 2. Others
- 3. The other
- 4. another
- 5. the others
- 6. the other (Answer: The other states are Oregon, California, Hawaii, and Alaska.)
- 7. other
- 8. others . . . others . . . Other
- 9. another
- 10. another
- 11. the others
- 12. other
- 13. The others
- 14. the other
- 15. The others . . . another
- 16. Others . . . other . . . others
- 17. other . . . the other 18. Another . . . Others
- 19. The others

- 20. other 21. other
- 22. another
- 22. another 23. another
- 23. alloule 24. others
- 24. Outers

### O PRACTICE 6, p. 64.

Potatoes are grown in most countries. They are one of the most widely grown vegetables in the world. They are very versatile; they can be prepared in many different ways. French fries are popular almost everywhere. Besides frying <u>them</u>, potatoes can be baked or boiled. Another way people use potatoes is to make potato flour for making bread and other kinds of dishes. <u>It's</u> also possible to make alcoholic beverages from potatoes. There are still other ways potatoes are used by commercial food processers to make products such as potato chips and freeze-dried potatoes.

Potatoes originated in South America, where <u>they</u> were cultivated by the Incas as early as 5000 years ago. It is believed that potatoes were the world's first freeze-dried food. Over 4000 years ago the Incas carried <u>their</u> harvested **potatoes** up into the mountains and spread them on the ground to freeze overnight. After the sun came up and heated the potatoes the next day, the Incas squeezed the water out of the potatoes by stepping on <u>them</u>. This process <u>was</u> repeated for four or five days until almost all the moisture was gone from the potatoes. The Incas then dried the potatoes and stored <u>them</u> in **pots**. Some Indians of South America still <u>do</u> this today.

### PRACTICE 7. Test A, p. 65.

1. C	11. A
2. D	12. A
3. A	13. D
4. C	14. A
5. C	15. A
6. B	16. B
7. B	17. C
8. C	18. D
9. <b>A</b>	19. D
10. C	20. B

#### ◇ PRACTICE 8. Test B, p. 67.

1. C	11. C
2. B	12. D
3. A	13. B
4. C	14. B
5. B	15. C
6. C	16. D
7. D	17. A
8. A	18. C
9. D	19. B
0. B	20. B

1

#### Chapter 9: MODALS, PART 1

#### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 69.

1. C	7. C
2. C	8. C
3. C	9. C
4. B	10. C
5. C	11. C
6. C	12. C

#### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 70.

- 1. Would you (please) hand me that book?
- 2. Could you (please) give me some advice about buying a computer?
- 3. Could I (please) borrow your wheelbarrow?
- 4. May I (please) have a cup of coffee?
- 5. Can I (please) use your bicycle tomorrow?
- 6. Would you (please) read over my composition for spelling errors?
- 7. Would you mind opening the door for me?
- 8. Would you mind if I left early?

#### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 70.

- 1. closing
- 2. if I closed
- 3. taking
- 4. if I showed
- 5. drying
- 6. finishing
- 7. if I used
- 8. waiting
- 9. if I borrowed
- 10. if I gave

#### PRACTICE 4, p. 71.

1. B	6. C
2. A	7. B
3. A	8. C
4. B	9. A
5. A	10. B

#### PRACTICE 5, p. 72.

- 1. Do you have to . . . have to
- 2. had to . . . Did you have to
- 3. doesn't have to
- 4. don't have to / won't have to
- 5. have had to
- 6. did Tom have to
- 7. don't have to / won't have to
- 8. Did John have to
- 9. has had to
- 10. will have had to
- 11. Don't you have to
- 12. will have to / is going to have to . . . Does she have to / Will she have to
- 13. didn't have to
- 14. haven't had to

### PRACTICE 6, p. 73.

#### Expected completions:

- 1. I think she should/ought to join some clubs to meet people with similar interests.
- 2. She'd better find a chemistry major to tutor her.
- 3. You should have stopped for gas.
- 4. They'd better clean it up right away.
- 5. I should have taken it back sooner.
- 6. He'd better change clothes before he goes.
- 7. She should/ought to make her own decision about her career and go to architecture school.
- 8. Richard should/ought to get his roommate a pair of earphones.
- 9. He should/ought to call home and talk to his family.
- 10. I shouldn't have eaten so much.
- 11. He should have listened to Tom before he fired him.
- 12. He shouldn't have left the room. He should have apologized immediately and signaled to a waiter for help.

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 74.

- 1. The students are <u>supposed</u> to write a composition.
- 2. The <u>are</u> supposed <u>to</u> write it about a person they admire.
- 3. They're supposed to write it in ink.
- 4. They aren't supposed to write it in pencil.
- 5. When are they supposed to hand it in?

### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 74.

- 1. You are not supposed to smoke.
- 2. You are supposed to keep off the grass.
- 3. You are not supposed to eat or drink in this room.
- 4. You are supposed to move to the rear of the bus.
- 5. You are not supposed to joke with airport personnel while your hand luggage is being inspected.
- 6. You are supposed to use the stairs in case of fire. You are not supposed to use the elevator.
- 7. You are not supposed to litter.
- 8. Slower traffic is supposed to keep right.

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 75.

1.	A:	we	3. A:	you
	B:	Ø	B:	Ø
	A:	we	A:	we/you
	B:	I	B:	I
2.	B:	Ø	4. B:	we
	A:	I/you/we	A:	we
	B:	you	A:	I/we
		•	A:	I/we
			A:	you

### PRACTICE 10, p. 76.

Possible completions:

- 1. He could hide under his bed.
  - He could pick up his baseball bat and go looking for the intruder.

He should leave the house and go to his neighbor's to call the police.

2. He could jump from the moving train.He could stay on the train, but hide from the conductor.He should buy a ticket from the conductor to the

next stop, get off, then take the next train back home.

 She could take a warm bath to relax her before she goes to bed.
 She could take sleeping pills.

She should see a doctor and find out if there is a physical reason for her insomnia.

4. I could have called the police and asked for help in getting gas.

I could have continued driving to see if I could make it to the next town without running out of gas.

I should have found a place to stay overnight and waited until the gas station opened in the morning.

#### Chapter 10: MODALS, PART 2

#### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 78.

1. A	5. B	9. C
2. B	6. A	10. A
3. B	7. B	11. B
4. A	8. B	12. C

#### OPRACTICE 2, p. 79.

- 1. could be visiting
- 2. should watch
- 3. must have thrown
- 4. should be working . . . shouldn't be wasting
- 5. must be playing
- might be taking
- 7. should have bought . . , shouldn't have waited
- 8. must have been driving
- 9. must not have planned
- 10. may have borrowed . . . couldn't have borrowed
- 11. could not have been listening
- 12. couldn't have told
- 13. must not have ... must have been sleeping
- 14. must be making

#### PRACTICE 3, p. 80.

Possible logical conclusions:

- 1. They must not be at home.
- 2. He must have studied for the test.
- 3. He must have seen the movie before.
- 4. She must be asleep.
- 5. She must not have heard them.
- 6. He must like to listen to classical music when he's in the car.
- 7. She must not like classical music.
- 8. She must not have paid her phone bill.
- 9. The mushrooms must have been poisonous.
- 10. The cat must have knocked it over.

#### O PRACTICE 4, p. 81.

- 1. can't
- 2. could
- 3. can't
- 4. could . . . can't
- 5. couldn't
- 6. can
- 7. couldn't
- couldn't

### OPRACTICE 5, p. 82.

- 1. would always yell . . . would come
- 2. would fall ... would throw
- 3. would never call . . . wouldn't even knock
- 4. would always bring
- 5. would take
- 6. would always wipe
- 7. would tell . . . would listen
- 8. would drive

### PRACTICE 6, p. 83.

- 1. have gone to an opera
- 2. have studied Chinese
- 3. be an environmental lawyer
- not tell you
- 5. go out with their friends . . . stay home with their parents
- 6. not have gone out . . . have stayed home

#### PRACTICE 7. Test A, p. 84.

1. B	11. D
2. D	12. C
3. D	13. C
4. A	14. D
5. B	15. C
6. C	16. A
7. D	17. D
8. C	18. C
9. D	19. D
0.4	20. 1

10. A 20. A

#### PRACTICE 8. Test B, p. 86.

1. A	11. D
2. B	12. C
3. A	13. A
4. C	14. B
5. D	15. C
6. C	16. A
7. D	17. B
8. B	18. D
9. C	19. C
10. C	20. A

#### Chapter 11: THE PASSIVE

#### PRACTICE 1, p. 88.

- 1. are
- 2. is being
- 3. has been
- 4. was
- 5. was being
- 6. had been 7. will be
- 8. is going to be
- 9. will have been
- 10. has been
- 11. was
- 12. are being
- 13. will be
- 14. had been
- 15. will have been
- 16. are
  - 17. is going to be
  - 18. were being

### PRACTICE 2, p. 89.

- 1. a. Was that report written by Tom?
  - b. No, it wasn't written by him.
  - c. It was written by Alice.
- 2. a. Is your house being painted by Mr. Brown?b. No, it isn't being painted by him.
  - c. It's being painted by my uncle.
- 3. a. Will the dishes be washed by Steve?b. No, they won't be washed by him.
  - c. They'll be washed by the children.
- 4. a. Has the meeting been planned by Sue?
- b. No, it hasn't been planned by her.c. It has been planned by the committee.
- 5. a. Is that violin played by Mr. Parr?
  - b. No, it isn't played by him.
  - c. It is played by his son.
- 6. a. Are the books going to be returned to the library by Jack?
  - b. No, they aren't going to be returned by him.
  - c. They're going to be returned by his sister.
- 7. a. Was the ancient skeleton discovered by the archeologists?
  - b. No, it wasn't discovered by them.
  - c. It was discovered by a farmer.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 91.

- 8. a. Was the food being prepared by Sally?b. No, it wasn't being prepared by her.
- c. It was being prepared by her mother.
- 9. a. Will the letters have been typed by Ms. Anderson?
  - b. No, they won't have been typed by her.
  - c. They will have been typed by the secretary.

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 89.

- 1. was . . . discovered
- 2. was written
- 3. won't be paid
- 4. was refilled
- 5. Was . . . knocked
- 6. wasn't broken
- 7. am not impressed
- 8. is being taped
- 9. Is . . . being flown
- 10. will be won
- 11. won't be influenced
- 12. is going to be decided
- 13. has been discovered
- 14. hasn't been taught
- 15. Had . . . been delivered
- 16. was being affected

	Verb	Object of Verb	Passive Sentence
1.	will pay	the bill	The bill will be paid by Al.
2.	will come	Ø	Ø
3.	supplies	towels	Towels are supplied by the hotel.
4.	happen	Ø	Ø
5.	noticed	my mistake	My mistake was noticed by everyone
6.	arrived	ø	Ø
7.	didn't	me	I wasn't surprised by the news.
8.	Didsurprise	you	Were you surprised by the news?
9.	wasn't shining	Ø	Ø
10.	interrupted	my story	My story was interrupted by Ann.
11.	Do exist	Ø	Ø
12.	fly	Ø	Ø
13.	Will come	Ø	Ø
14.	died	Ø	Ø
15.	Did throw	the ball	Was the ball thrown by Bob?
16.	laughed	Ø	Ø
17.	told	the story	The story was told by an old man.
18.	rained	· Ø	Ø

#### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 91.

- 1. You will be met at the airport by my uncle.
- 2. (no change)
- 3. (no change)
- 4. (no change)
- 5. The food will be prepared by the chef.
- 6. (no change)
- 7. (no change)
- 8. The subway is ridden by thousands of people every day.
- 9. (no change)
- 10. (no change)
- 11. (no change)
- 12. The phone was answered by the office manager.

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 92.

- 1. will be notified
- 2. didn't remember
- 3. is being restored
- 4. was built
- 5. was ruled . . . walked . . . stood
- 6. is visited
- 7. do not use
- 8. do not agree
- 9. will be invaded / are going to be invaded
- 10. live . . . lives
- 11. Had you already been accepted
- 12. was being followed . . . felt
- 13. was felt
- 14. died
- 15. is influenced
- 16. was stolen . . . was caught

### **OPRACTICE 7, p. 93.**

- 1. Rice is grown in India.
- 2. This rug was made by my aunt.
- 3. My car is being fixed today.
- 4. French is spoken in Quebec.
- 5. That bridge was designed by Mr. Eads in the 1870s.
- 6. The wheel was invented thousands of years ago.
- 7. Was the telephone invented by Thomas Edison?
- 8. A new hospital is going to be built just outside of town.
- 9. How are candles made?
- 10. That TV show is watched by very few people.
- 11. Look! The seals are being fed.
- 12. That pie was made by Sally.
- 13. Jack is being considered for that job.
- 14. The Mediterranean Sea is surrounded by three continents.
- 15. I got upset when I was interrupted in the middle of my story.
- 16. Rome wasn't built in a day.
- 17. Are those tractors made in this country, or are they imported?
- 18. While I was walking down the street, I was approached by a nice young man in a military uniform.

### O PRACTICE 8, p. 94.

- (I.O. = Jack) Jack is going to be served breakfast in bed on his birthday.
- 2. (1.0. = Mike) Mike had been offered the opportunity to study abroad.
- (i.o. = babysitters) Babysitters aren't paid a lot of money.
- 4. (I.O. = me) When I was living in Kuwait, I was taught Arabic by my neighbor.
- 5. (1.0. = Jason) Jason was awarded a medal for distinguished service in the military.
- 6. (1.0. = you) You will be sent a copy of the sales contract by the real estate office.
- 7. (I.O. = me) I was handed a telegram when I answered the door.
- (1.0. = the schoolchildren) The schoolchildren are going to be given a special tour of the modern art exhibit by the director of the museum, Ms. Cynthia Hall.
- 9. (I.O. = Mr. French) Mr. French was given a gold watch upon his retirement from the company.

### O PRACTICE 9, p. 94.

- 1, will be told
- 2. completed
- 3. was assisted
- 4. applied . . . was hired
- 5. lie . . . are fed
- 6. will probably be eroded OR: is probably going to be eroded
- 7. were introduced ... were eaten ... are exported ... are enjoyed
- 8. is going to be interviewed (OR: will be interviewed) . . . has collected
- have complained . . . has been done [to date = until now]
- 10. went . . . had piled . . . had been shoved
- 11. are intimidated ... buy

- 12. put . . . sold . . . was bought . . . was/had been looking . . . had already been sold
- 13. was invented . . . has assisted
- 14. occurred ... were crossing ... were swept ... left ... were found ... were/had been seriously injured ... took

### O PRACTICE 10, p. 96.

- 1. redecorated
- 2. threading
- 3. smuggled
- 4. dragged
- 5. exposed
- 6. scrubbing
- 12. mined
- 13. stretched
- 7. wound
- 14. bred

### PRACTICE 11, p. 97.

- 1. memorized
- 2. photographing
- 3. equipped
- 4. destroyed
- 5. rubbing
- 6. whispering
- 7. erased
- 8. performed
- 9. predicting
- 10. vaccinated
- 11. rehearsing
- 12. billed [ = The dentist will send him a bill.]

### O PRACTICE 12, p. 97.

- 1. Pandas should be saved from extinction.
- 2. All traffic laws must be obeyed.
- 3. This broken window ought to be repaired.
- 4. The hotel guests should have been supplied with clean towels.
- 5. This garbage had better be taken to the dump soon.
- 6. Tomatoes can be picked before they are completely ripe.
- 7. The profits are supposed to be divided among the shareholders.
- 8. Bob's feelings must have been hurt.
- 9. This work has to be finished today.
- The accident ought to have been reported to the police.
- 11. Fresh bananas shouldn't be put in the freezer.

### PRACTICE 13, p. 98.

- 1. be told
- 2. repeated
- 3. be wrapped
- forgotten
- 5. been discovered
- 6. sew
- 7. been replaced
- 8. cost
- 9. whisper
- 10. be polluted
- 11. be considered
- be worn
   be signed
- . J. De sign
- 14. read

- broadcast
   shoved
- 10. financed 11. leaning

#### PRACTICE 14, p. 99.

- 1. be obtained
- 2. been won
- 3. scrub
- 4. be taught
- 5. been vaccinated
- 6. replied
- 7. been stopped
- 8. be revised
- 9. trade
- 10. participate
- 11. be established
- 12. eat
- 13. be distinguished
- 14. be killed

### PRACTICE 15, p. 101.

- 1. are excited
- 2. are covered
- 3. is cracked
- 4. are exhausted
- 5. Are . . . finished
- 6. was insured
- 7. is polluted
- 8. is closed
- 9. is stuck
- 10. is dressed
- 11. am . . . confused
- 12. are buried

#### ◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 102.

- 1. is located
- 2. are summarized
- 3. isn't listed
- 4. is forbidden
- 5. am . . . acquainted
- 6. is scheduled
- 7. is overdrawn
- 8. is cancel(l)ed [canceled; = American; cancelled = British]
- 9. is wrinkled [iron = press]
- 10. are equipped [automobile = American; motor car = British]
- 11. is made
- 12. is clogged

#### ◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 103.

with	11. for
for	12. to
in	13. at/with
with	14. with
to	15. of
with	16. to
against	17. with about
of	18. to
with	19. from
in/with with	20. of
	with for in with to with against of with in/with with

### PRACTICE 18, p. 104.

- 1. concerned about
- 2. explaining
- 3. known for
- provided with

- 5. laughing
- 6. satisfied with 7. connected to
- 8. crossing
- 9. involved in 10. composed of
- 11. accompanying 12. blessed with
- 13. limited to
- 14. annoyed at/with
- 15. blowing

### PRACTICE 19, p. 105.

- 1. got torn
- 2. get broken
- 3. got lost
- 4. get hired
- 5. get hurt
- 6. was getting worried
- 7. got . . . soaked
- 8. get started
- 9. got buried
- 10. got stuck

#### O PRACTICE 20, p. 106.

- 1. got hit
- 2. get accepted
- 3. got cheated
- 4. got fired
- 5. got mugged [to mug = to rob; scruffy = unkempt, dirty]
- 6. get invited
- 7. get dressed
- 8. got caught
- 9. got elected
- 10. get electrocuted
- 11. got ruined
- 12. got embarrassed

### PRACTICE 21, p. 107.

- 1. (a) interesting (b) interested
- 2. (a) irritating (b) irritated
- 3. (a) tired (b) tiring
- 4. (a) boiling (b) boiled
- 5. (a) upset (b) upsetting
- 6. (a) confusing (b) confused
- 7. (a) disappointing (b) disappointed
- 8. (a) reassuring (b) reassured
- 9. (a) frustrating (b) frustrated
- 10. (a) disturbing (b) disturbed 11. (a) convincing (b) convinced
- 12. (a) moving (b) moved
- 13. (a) shocking (b) shocked
- 14. (a) depressed (b) depressing 15. (a) humiliated (b) humiliating

ANSWER KEY Chapter 11 15

16. (a) intriguing (b) intrigued

PRACTICE 22, p. 108.

1. running 2. invited

3. suggested

5. exhausting

6. stimulating

4. written

7. spoken

- 8. falling
- 9. Frozen
- 10. invading
- 11. thrilling
- 12. intended
- 13. amusing
- 14. manufactured
- 15. relaxing
- 16. expected
- 17. approaching
- 18. inquiring
- 19. visiting . . . winning . . . disappointed
- 20. encouraging
- 21. invigorating
- 22. contaminated

### PRACTICE 23, p. 109.

- 1. were served
- 2. has been training
- 3. are lost
- 4. received
- 5. are given
- 6. are discriminated . . . have been enacted
- 7. had been offered
- 8. finish [time clause]
- 9. are returned [time clause] . . . will be given
- 10. were allowed
- was not fooled
- 12. established . . . be followed
- 13. irritating . . . will be replaced
- 14. vending ... kicked ... fell ... was seriously injured ... ended ... is still wearing/still wears ... vending [In fact, in the decade of the 1980s, eight people in the United States were reported to have died from a vending machine falling on them.]
- proposed . . . is not being offered (also possible: is not / will not be / is not going to be offered)
- 16. jogged/has been jogging . . . plans/is planning
- 17. is conducted . . . are sent . . . are asked . . . is collected . . . is published . . . use

#### ◇ PRACTICE 24. Test A, p. 112.

1. A	11. A
2. C	12. C
3. A	13. B
4. C	14. D
5. D	15. B
6. D	16. C
7. C	17. A
8. D	18. B
7. C 8. D 9. C 10. B	

#### ◇ PRACTICE 25. Test B, p. 114.

1. C	11. D
2. B	12. A
3. A	13. C
4. B	14. A
5. B	15. C
6. A	16. A
7. B	17. C
8. A	18. C
9. C	19. A
10. C	20. D

16 ANSWER KEY Chapter 12

### Chapter 12: NOUN CLAUSES

### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 116.

- 1. Q (?) 2. N.Cl. (.)
- 3. Q (?)
- 4. N.Cl. (.)
- 5. Q (?)
- 6. N.Cl. (.)
- 7. N.Cl. (.)
- 8. Q (?) 9. Q (?)
- 10. N.Cl. (?) [Note: who she is is a noun clause; the whole sentence is a question.]
- 11. Q (?)
- 12. N.Cl. (.)

#### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 116.

- 1. Where (?)
- 2. I don't know (.)
- 3. I don't know (.)
- 4. What (?)
- 5. How (?)
- 6. I don't know (.)
- 7. Where (?)
- 8. I don't know (.)
- 9. I don't know (.)
- 10. Why (?)
- 11. I don't know (.)
- 12. Who (?)
- 13. When (?)
- 14. I don't know (.)
- 15. Who (?)
- 16. I don't know (.)

#### PRACTICE 3, p. 117.

- 1. Who is that man? ... who that man is.
- 2. Where does George live? ... where George lives.
- 3. What did Ann buy? ... what Ann bought.
- 4. How far is it to Denver from here? . . . how far it is to Denver from here.
- Why was Jack late to class? . . . why Jack was late to class.
- 6. Whose pen is that? . . . whose pen that is.
- Who(m) did Alex see at the meeting? . . . who(m) Alex saw at the meeting.
- 8. Who saw Ms. Frost at the meeting? . . . who saw Ms. Frost at the meeting.
- 9. Which book does Alice like best? . . . which book Alice likes best.
- 10. When/What time is the plane supposed to land? ... when/what time the plane is supposed to land.

#### O PRACTICE 4, p. 118.

- 1. A: Where does Fred live?
  - B: (...) wants to know where Fred lives.
- 2. A: What time is it?
- B: (...) wants to know what time it is.
- 3. A: What does Tom want for his birthday?
  - B: ( . . . ) wants to know what Tom wants for his birthday.
  - C. He wants a watch.
- 4. A: How does Jane get to school?
  - B: (...) wants to know how Jane gets to school. C: By bus.

- 5. A: When does vacation start?
  - B: ... wants to know when vacation starts.
- C: On June 3rd [ = third].6. A: Why did Sue leave class early?
- B: ... why did Sue leave class early?
  B: ... wants to know why Sue left class early.
  C: Because she didn't feel well.
- 7. A: How long is the movie going to last?
- B: ... wants to know how long the movie is going to last.
- C: Two hours and ten minutes
- 8. A: Who(m) did Mary call?
  - B: ... wants to know who(m) Mary called. C: Iim
- 9. A: Who called Jim?
  - B: ... wants to know who called Jim.
- C: Mary.
- 10. A: What did Alice talk to the teacher about?
  B: ... wants to know what Alice talked to the teacher about.
  - C: The test.
- 11. A: Who(m) did Alice talk to about the test? (Formal: To whom did Alice talk about the test?)
  - B: (...) wants to know who(m) Alice talked to about the test. (Formal: (...) wants to know to whom Alice talked about the test.)
    C: The teacher
  - C: The teacher.
- 12. A: Who talked to the teacher about the test?B: (...) wants to know who talked to the teacher
  - about the test. C: Alice.
  - C: Alice.
- 13. A: When/At what time will Sue's plane arrive?
  B: (...) wants to know when/at what time Sue's plane will arrive.
  - C: At 8:05.
- 14. A: *How many* students will be absent from class tomorrow?
  - B: (...) wants to know how many students will be absent from class tomorrow.
  - C: Two.
- 15. A: How many lakes are there in Minnesota?
  - B: (...) wants to know how many lakes there are in Minnesota.
    - C: 10,000.
- 16. A: *How far/How many miles* is it to Springfield from here?
  - B: ( . . . ) wants to know how far/how many miles it is to Springfield from here.
  - C: 25.
- 17. A: What did Jane do last night?
  - B: (...) wants to know what Jane did last night. C: Studied.
- 18. A: Which book are we supposed to buy?
  - B: ( . . . ) wants to know which book we're supposed to buy.
  - C: This book.
- 19. A: What kind of ice cream does Ann like the best?
  B: (...) wants to know what kind of ice cream Ann likes the best.
  - C: Chocolate.
- 20. A: What color is a robin's egg?
  - B: (...) wants to know what color a robin's egg is.
     C: Turquoise blue. [TURQUOISE is pronounced /tərkwɔiz/]
- 21. A: Who is that woman?
  - B: (...) wants to know who that woman is.
  - C: Mrs. Anderson.

- 22. A: Who is talking on the telephone?
  - B: (...) wants to know who is talking on the telephone.
  - C: Mr. Anderson.
- 23. A: Whose notebook is that?
  - B: (...) wants to know whose notebook that is. C: Sam's.
- 24. A: Whose car was stolen?
  - B: (...) wants to know whose car was stolen.
  - C: Jessica's.

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 119.

- 1. A: he's looking for
- B: are you looking for
- 2. A: did he decide
- B: he decided
- 3. A: is this
- B: it is
- 4. A: did he buy B: he bought
- 5. A: John's tutor is
- B: is John's tutor
- 6. A: didn't you study
- B: I didn't study

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 120.

- 1. if/whether it will rain
- 2. when it will rain
- 3. if/whether Sam is
- 4. where Sam is
- 5. if/whether Jane called
- 6. what time she called
- 7. why the earth is called
- 8. how far it is
- 9. if/whether Susan has ever been
- 10. if/whether she speaks
- 11. who Ann played
- 12. who won
- 13. if/whether Ann won
- 14. if/whether all creatures, including fish and insects, feel
- 15. if/whether birds can communicate
- 16. how birds communicate
- 17. where the nearest post office is
- 18. if/whether there is a post office

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 122.

- 1. where to buy
- 2. whether to stay . . . go
- 3. how to fix
- 4. whether (or not) to look
- 5. where to get
- 6. whether (or not) to go
- 7. what time to pick
- 8. who to talk
- 9. whether to take . . . to do
- 10. how to solve
- where to tell
- 12. how long to cook
- 13. what to wear
- 14. how much coffee to make
- 15. which essay to use
- 16. whether to take ... travel ... (to) keep ... save

ANSWER KEY Chapter 12 17

### O PRACTICE 8, p. 123.

- It is surprising that no one stopped to help Sam when he had car trouble.
   That no one stopped to help Sam when he had car trouble is surprising.
- It is unfortunate that people in modern cities are distrustful of each other. That people in modern cities are distrustful of each other is unfortunate.
- 3. It is still true that people in my village always help each other.

That people in my village always help each other is still true.

- 4. It is undeniably true that people need each other and need to help each other. That people need each other and need to help each other is undeniably true.
- It seems obvious to me that people have a moral duty to help others in need.

That people have a moral duty to help others in need seems obvious to me.

6. It is a pity that people today are afraid to help strangers.

That people today are afraid to help strangers is a pity.

 It seems strange to me that people in cities live in densely populated areas but don't know their neighbors.

That people in cities live in densely populated areas but don't know their neighbors seems strange to me.

### 

- 1. Regardless of the fact that I studied for three months for the examination, I barely passed.
- 2. There's nothing we can do about the fact that Jim lost our tickets to the concert.
- 3. The fact that we are going to miss one of the best concerts of the year because of Jim's carelessness makes me a little angry.
- 4. In view of the fact that we can't go to the concert, let's plan to go to a movie.
- 5. Except for the fact that I couldn't speak a word of Italian and understood very little, I had a wonderful time visiting my Italian cousins in Rome.
- When I first visited Florida, I was surprised by the fact that many people living in Miami speak only Spanish.
- 7. The fact that Bobby broke my grandmother's antique flower vase isn't important.
- 8. The fact that he lied about it is what bothers me.
- 9. At first, some of us objected to the fact that Prof. Brown, who had almost no teaching experience, was hired to teach the advanced physics course, but she has proven herself to be one of the best.
- 10. I am impressed by *the fact that that automobile has the best safety record of any car manufactured this year* and would definitely recommend that you buy that make.

### ◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 124.

- 1. The athlete said, "Where is my uniform?"
- 2. "I can't remember," Margaret said, "where I put my purse."
- 3. Sandy asked her sister, "How can I help you get through this difficulty?"

- 4. "I'll answers your question later," he whispered. "I'm trying to hear what the speaker is saying."
- 5. As the students entered the room, the teacher said, "Please take your seats quickly."
- 6. "Why did I ever take this job?" Barry wondered aloud.
- 7. After crashing into me and knocking all of my packages to the ground, the man stopped abruptly, turned to me, and said softly, "Excuse me."
- "Do we want four more years of corruption and debt?" the candidate shouted into the microphone. "No!" the crowd screamed.
- 9. The woman behind the fast-food counter shouted, "Who's next?"
  - "I am," three people replied at the same time. "Which one of you is really next?" she asked impatiently.

"I was here first," said a young woman elbowing her way up to the counter. "I want a hamburger."

"You were not!" hollered an older man standing next to her. "I was here before you were. Give me a chicken sandwich and a cup of coffee."

"Wait a minute! I was in line first," said a young

man. "Give me a cheeseburger and a chocolate shake."

The woman behind the restaurant counter spotted a little boy politely waiting his turn. She turned to him and said, "Hi, Sonny. What can I get for you?"

### ◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 126.

- l. was
- 2. needed
- 3. was having
- 4. had finished
- 5. had finished
- 6. would arrive
- 7. was going to be/would be
- 8. could solve
- 9. might come
- 10. might come 11. had to leave
- 11. Dad to leave
- 12. had to leave 13. should go
- 13. should go 14. ought to go
- 14. ought to go 15. to stay
- 16. not to move
- 17. was
- 18. had arrived

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 126.

- 1. if/whether she was planning
- 2. what time the movie begins
- 3. if/whether we could still get
- 4. how he can help
- 5. if/whether he could help
- 6. when the final decision would be made
- 7. where she had been
- 8. what Kim's native language is
- 9. what the problem was
- 10. if/whether I was doing
- 11. when this terrible drought is going
- 12. what time he had
- 13. who(m) she should give the message to
- 14. (that) we would be leaving
- 15. why we hadn't called

### ◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 127.

- 1. knew . . . had known . . . wanted
- 2. still smoked . . . had tried . . . didn't seem
- 3. what the capital of Australia was/is . . . wasn't . . . thought it was
- 4. would be . . . would . . . left
- 5. was pouring . . . had better take . . . would stop . . . didn't need
- 6. was going . . . was . . . asked/invited . . . would like . . . had . . . had . . . was . . . could . . . were
- 7. The passenger sitting next to me on the plane asked me where I was from. I told her I was from Chicago. She said that she was from Mapleton, a small town in northern Michigan. She wondered if I had heard of it, and I told her that I had. [British: had done] I went on to say that I thought Michigan was a beautiful state and explained that I had been there on vacation many times. She asked me if I had been in Michigan on vacation this year. I replied that I hadn't (been) and told her that I had gone far away, to India. Then she asked me if it was a long drive ....

#### ◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 129.

- 1. organize 6. take
- 2. be divided 7. be
- 3. call 8. be mailed
- 4. be told 9. obey
- 5. open 10. be given

#### ◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 130.

<ol> <li>whenever</li> </ol>	6. who(m)ever
2. wherever	7. whichever
3. whatever	8. Whoever
4. whichever	9. whatever
5. whatever	10. wherever

#### ◇ PRACTICE 16. Test A, p. 131.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 17. Test B, p. 133.

1. A	11. D
2. C	12. D
3. D	13. B
4. D	14. D
5. C	15. A
6. B	16. D
7. B	17. B
8. C	18. C
9. C	19. A
10. A	20. C

#### **Chapter 13: ADJECTIVE CLAUSES**

### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 135.

- 1. a. that are marked with a small red dot b. which are marked with a small red dot
- 2. a. who sits at the first desk on the right
- b. that sits at the first desk on the right
- 3. a. that I bought b. which I bought
  - c. I bought
- 4. a. that I met at the meeting
- b. who(m) I met at the meeting c. I met at the meeting
- 5. a. we listened to last nightb. that we listened to last nightc. which we listened to last night
  - d. to which we listened last night
- 6. a. I told you about
  b. who(m) I told you about
  c. that I told you about
  - d. about whom I told you
- 7. whose parents you just met
- 8. who played at the concert last night
- 9. a waiter has to serve
- 10. Bob recommended
- 11. whose book on time and space has been translated into dozens of languages
- 12. who lives next door to us

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 136.

- 1. who(m)/that/Ø
- 2. who/that
- 3. which/that/Ø
- 4. which
- 5. who(m)/that/Ø
- 6. who/that
- 7. whose
- 8. whom
- 9. which/that

#### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 137.

- 1. which/that
- 2. who/that
- 3. which/that
- 4. which/that
- 5. who/that
- 6. which/that/Ø
- 7. who(m)/that/Ø
- 8. which/that/Ø
- 9. which
   10. which/that/Ø
- 11. whom
- 12. who(m)/that/Ø
- ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 138.
  - 1. Louis knows the woman who/that is meeting us at the airport.
  - 2. The chair which/that/Ø Sally inherited from her grandmother is an antique.
  - The bench which/that/Ø I sat on was wet. OR: The bench on which I sat was wet.
  - 4. The man who(m)/that/O I hired to paint my house finished the job in four days.

- 5. I miss seeing the old woman who/that used to sell flowers on that street corner.
- The architect who(m)/that/Ø Mario works with is brilliant. OR: The architect with whom Mario works is brilliant.
- Mary tutors students who/that need extra help in geometry.
- 8. I took a picture of the rainbow which/that appeared in the sky after the shower.

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 138.

- 1. Do you know the man whose car is parked over there?
- 2. I know a woman whose name is May Day.
- 3. The people whose home we visited were very hospitable.
- 4. The school principal walked down the hallway to find the boy whose parents had been injured in an automobile accident.
- 5. Mrs. Lake is the teacher whose class I enjoy the most.
- 6. Any company whose employees are in constant fear of losing their jobs is stifling the creativity of its workforce.

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 139.

- 1. That is the room where we have class.
- 2. That is the restaurant where we ate dinner.
- 3. That is the building where Anna works.
- 4. That is the year when I was born.
- 5. That is the cafeteria where you eat lunch.
- 6. That is the month when the monsoons arrive.
- 7. That is the street where Alex lives.
- 8. That is the island where you spent your vacation.
- 9. That is the lake where you went swimming.
- 10. That is the town where you grew up.
- 11. That is the day when the space flight to Mars is scheduled to leave.
- 12. That is the country where the earthquake occurred.
- 13. That is the room where the examination will be given.
- 14. That is the city where you lived until you were ten years old.
- 15. That is the time when you felt the happiest.

### PRACTICE 7, p. 139.

1. A, D	5. D	9. B, C, D
2. B, C, D	6. B, C	10. B
3. C, D	7. A	11: A
4. B	8. C, D	12. A

### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 140.

1.	speak	8.	have
2.	speaks	9.	are

- 3. are ... don't 10. state ... wish
- 4. offers are
- 5. measures . . . walks
- 6. suffer
- 7. have

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 140.

1. NO

- 2. YES ... I made an appointment with Dr. Raven, who is considered an expert on eye disorders.
- 3. NO

- 4. NO
- 5. YES ... Bogota, which is the capital of Colombia, is a cosmopolitan city.
- 6. YES... They climbed Mount Rainier, which is in the state of Washington, twice last year.
- 7. YES . . . Emeralds, which are valuable gemstones, are mined in Colombia.
- 8. YES... The company offered the position to John, whose department performed best this year.
- 9. YES . . . On our trip to Africa we visited Nairobi, which is near several fascinating game reserves, and then traveled to Egypt to see the pyramids.
- 10. NO
- 11. NO
- 12. YES ... Larry was very close to his only brother, who was a famous social historian.
- 13. NO
- 14. NO
- 15. YES ... A typhoon, which is a violent tropical
- storm, can cause great destruction.
- 16. NO

### PRACTICE 10, p. 141.

	•	
1. A	6. B	11. A, D
2. A, D	7. A	12. A
3. C	8. C	13. C, D, E
4. A	9. A, D	
5. A, B, D, E	10. A	

### PRACTICE 11, p. 142.

1. a	5. b
2. b	б. а
3. a	7. b
4. b	8. a

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 143.

- 1. YES ... Thirty people, two of whom were members of the crew, were killed in the ferry accident.
- 2. NO
- 3. YES... Over 500 students took the entrance examination, the results of which will be posted in the administration building at the end of the month.
- 4. NO
- 5. NO
- 6. YES... The new supervisor was not happy with his work crew, none of whom seemed interested in doing quality work.
- 7. YES ... My oldest brother, in whose house I lived for six months when I was ten, has been a father to me in many ways.
- 8. YES . . . Tom is always interrupting me, which makes me mad.
- 9. YES... To express the uselessness of worrying, Mark Twain once said, "I've had a lot of problems in my life, most of which never happened."

### ◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 143.

- 1. . . . offers, neither of which I accepted.
- 2. . . . three brothers, two of whom are professional athletes.
- 3. . . . business ventures, only one of which is profitable.

- 4. ... fifty states, the majority of which are located ....
- 5. The two women, **both of whom** are changing careers, have already dissolved ....
- ... success, much of which has been due to hard work, but some of which has been due to good luck.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 143.

- 1. Only a few of the movies *shown at the Gray Theater* are suitable for children.
- 2. We visited Madrid, the capital of Spain.
- 3. The couple *living in the house next door* are both college professors.
- 4. Astronomy, *the study of planets and stars*, is one of the world's oldest sciences.
- 5. Only a small fraction of the eggs *laid by a fish* actually hatch and survive to adulthood.
- 6. Jasmine, a viny plant with fragrant flowers, grows only in warm places.
- Arizona, once thought to be a useless desert, is today a rapidly growing industrial and agricultural state.
- 8. Simon Bolivar, a great South American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.
- 9. In hot weather, many people enjoy lemonade, a drink made from lemon juice, water, and sugar.
- 10. I was awakened by the sound of laughter coming from the room next to mine at the motel.
- 11. Few tourists ever see a jaguar, a spotted cat native to tropical America.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 144.

- 1. A national holiday has been established in memory of Martin Luther King, Jr., the leader of the civil rights movement in the United States in the 1950s and 1960s.
- 2. Neil Armstrong, the first person to set foot on the moon, reported that the surface was fine and powdery.
- 3. Mark Twain is an author known far and wide as one of the greatest American humorists. (no commas)
- 4. Susan B. Anthony, one of the first leaders of the campaign for women's rights, worked tirelessly during her lifetime to gain the right to vote for women.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 144.

- 1. Louisville, the largest city in Kentucky, was founded in 1778.
- 2. John Quincy Adams, the sixth president of the United States, was born on July 11, 1767.
- 3. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are used in Helsinki, the capital of Finland.
- 4. The Washington National Monument, a towering obelisk made of white marble, is a famous landmark in the nation's capital.
- 5. Honolulu, best known to the traveler for Waikiki Beach, has consistently pleasant weather.
- 6. Libya, a country in North Africa, is a leading producer of oil.

#### PRACTICE 17, p. 145.

1. None of the pedestrians walking up and down the busy street stopped to help or even inquire about the elderly man slumped in the doorway of an apparently unoccupied building.

- 2. Food passing from the mouth to the stomach goes through a tube called the esophagus.
- 3. Animals born in a zoo generally adjust to captivity better than those captured in the wild.
- 4. The children attended a special movie program consisting of cartoons featuring Donald Duck and Mickey Mouse.
- 5. One of the most important foodstuffs in the world is flour, a fine powder made by grinding wheat or other grains.
- 6. Nero, *Emperor of Rome from A.D. 54 to 68*, is believed to have murdered both his mother and his wife.
- 7. The conclusion presented in that book states that most of the automobiles produced by American industry in the 1960s and '70s had some defect.
- 8. Pictures *showing the brutality of war* entered the living rooms of millions of TV watchers on the nightly news.
- 9. The Indians living in Peru before the discovery of the New World by Europeans belonged to the Incan culture.
- 10. My uncle Elias, a restaurant owner, often buys fish and shellfish from boats docked at the local pier. Customers come from miles around to dine on a seafood feast considered to be the best in all of the northeastern United States.
- 11. Hundreds of volunteers went to a northern village yesterday to reinforce firefighters *trying to save a settlement threatened by a forest fire.* The fire started when a cigarette ignited oil *leaking from a machine used to cut timber.*
- 12. Researchers have developed a way to mark genes so that they glow in the dark, a technique that scientists can use to follow specific genetic activity of cells within plants and animals. This development, announced by the National Science Foundation, the sponsor of the research, should prove useful to scientists studying the basic functions of organisms.

### ◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 146.

- 1. ... a lot of people waiting in a long line ...
- 2. Students who live on campus ... OR: Students (omit who) living on campus ....
- 3. ... the librarian who/that sits at ... OR: the librarian sitting at ....
- 4. ... sister is Anna, who is 21 years old. OR: sister, Anna, is 21 years old.
- 5. . . . in Sapporo, which is a city . . . OR: . . . in Sapporo, (omit *that is*) a city . . . .
- 6. Patrick, who is my oldest brother, is married and ... OR: Patrick, my oldest brother, is married and ....
- The person who sits/sitting next to me is someone who(m)/that/Ø I've never met (omit him).
- Last Saturday, I attended a party given by one of my friends. My friend, whose apartment is in another town, was very glad that I could come.
- Dr. Darnell was the only person who(m)/that/Ø I wanted to see.
- 11. There are eighty students from all over the world studying English at this school. OR: ... students from all over the world who study ... (no commas)
- The people who(m)/that/Ø we met on our trip last May are going to visit us in October.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 153.

1. B	11. B
2. B	12. A
3. A	13. A
4. A	14. A
5. B	15. B
6. B	16. B
7. A	17. B
8. B	18. B
9. B	19. A
10. A	20. A

#### PRACTICE 6, p. 154.

- 1. asked Jim to give
- 2. were warned not to park
- 3. reminded him to brush
- 4. are required to wear
- 5. advised me to consult
- 6. was ordered to leave
- 7. were expected to complete
- 8. reminded my husband to buy
- 9. advised me to get
- 10. were warned not to be
- 11. is permitted to use
- 12. asked her father to buy
- 13. encouraged our grandfather to write
- 14. was ordered not to shout

### PRACTICE 7, p. 155.

- 1. During the water shortage, the public *was asked to curtail* its use of water as much as possible.
- 2. Laura reminded her roommate not to forget to set her alarm clock for 6:00.
- 3. Mrs. Jones allowed each of the children to have one piece of candy.
- 4. The doctor *advised my father to limit* his sugar consumption.
- 5. My parents often encouraged me to be independent.
- 6. The children were warned not to swim in the lake without an adult present.
- The police officer ordered the reckless driver to pull over.
   Rose invited Jerry to come to her house Sunday night
- to meet her parents.

#### PRACTICE 8, p. 156.

1. B	14. A, B
2. A, B	15. B
3. A, B	16. A
4. A, B	17. B
5. A, B	18. A
6. B	19. B
7. A, B	20. A
8. B	21. A
9. A, B	22. B
10. A, B	23. A
11. A	24. B
11. A	24. B
12. B	25. A, B
13. A, B	26. B

#### PRACTICE 9, p. 157.

(The answers are included in the Practice.)

### PRACTICE 10, p. 158.

1. to refund	14. singing
2. to be	15. avoiding
<ol><li>to buy</li></ol>	16. to count
4. throwing	17. painting
5. to get	18. to get
6. to wear	19. paying
7. to visit	20. to keep
8. to be	21. taking
9. thinking	22. to know
10. to attend	23. moving
<ol> <li>to leave</li> </ol>	24. to watch
12. to cut	25. to keep
13. to ignore	

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 160.

1.	to operate	14.	to see
2.	to shoot	15.	to go
3.	having	16.	taking
4.	to go	17.	to speak
5.	getting	18.	receiving
6.	to attend	19.	to meet
7.	to come	20.	getting
8.	to turn	21.	staying
9.	to tell	22.	to apologize
10.	practicing	23.	to obey
11.	to clean	24.	seeing
12.	reading	25.	to take
13.	sending		

### PRACTICE 12, p. 161.

1. A	6. A	11. B
2. B	7. B	12. B
3. A	8. B	13. A
4. A	9. A	14. B
5. B	10. A	15. B

### ◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 162.

- 1. playing
- 2. (someone) to save
- 3. telling
- 4. to get
- 5. someone to take
- 6. staying
- 7. (someone) not to buy
- 8. giving
- 9. going
- 10. travel(l)ing
- 11. taking
- 12. (someone) to go swimming
- 13. being
- 14. hearing
- 15. to tell
- 16. being
- 17. eating
- 18. to know
- 19. to get
- 20. saying
- 21. seeing
- 21. seeing
- 22. (someone) to give
- 23. to hire someone to work

- to tell someone to be/telling someone to be [with different meanings]
- 25. (someone) to practice speaking
- 26. (someone) to keep trying to call

### PRACTICE 14, p. 163.

- 1. It is cruel to tease animals.
- 2. Finding their house wasn't difficult.
- 3. It is important to vote in every election.
- 4. Meeting the king and queen was exciting.
- 5. It would be interesting to hear the other side of the story.
- 6. Seeing Joan awake early in the morning is unusual.
- 7. If you know how, floating in the water for a long time is easy.
- 8. It takes time and patience to master a second language.
- 9. It will take us ten hours to drive to Atlanta.
- 10. Diving into the sea from a high cliff takes courage.

### Chapter 15: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2

### PRACTICE 1, p. 164.

1.	Ø
-5082	1000

- 2. in order
- 3. in order
- 4. in order 5. Ø
- 5.0
- 6. Ø
- in order
   in order
- 8. m 0 9. Ø
- 9.0
- 10. in order 11. in order
- 12. Ø . . . Ø

### PRACTICE 2, p. 165.

Possible completions:

- 1. to get
- 2. to find out
- 3. to be
- to fight
   to go
- 6. to stay . . . (to) read
- 7. to help
- 8. to learn
- 9. to slip
- 10. to walk
- 11. to walk
- 12. to be
- 13. to see 14. to hear

## PRACTICE 3, p. 165.

- 1. very
- 2. too
- 3. too
- 4. very 5. too
- 5, 100 6. too
- 7. very
- 8. too
- 9. very
- 10. very

- 11. very . . . too 12. too
- 12. 100 13. very
- 14. too
- 15. too

### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 166.

- 1. I didn't have enough time to finish my work yesterday.
- 2. Linda isn't well enough to go back to work.
- 3. Scissors are too sharp for very young children to use.
- 4. The streets in the old part of the city are too narrow for two-way traffic.
- 5. Jimmy isn't old enough to ride on the bus by himself.
- 6. Jules had to rewrite his composition because he made too many careless mistakes in grammar and spelling in the first one.
- 7. There aren't enough seats in the classroom for everyone assigned to this class.
- 8. We couldn't go to the musical because we waited too long to call the box office for tickets.

### PRACTICE 5, p. 166.

1. B	5. B
2. A	6. A
3. B	7. B
4. B	

### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 167.

1. B	5. A
2. A	6. B
3. B	7. B
4. B	8. A

### O PRACTICE 7, p. 167.

1. B	6. A	11. A
2. D	7. B	12. A
3. A	8. C	13. B
4. C	9. B	14. B
5. B	10. D	15. D

### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 169.

1. B	5. B
2. D	6. A
3. D	7. A
4. C	

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 169.

- 1. to be told
- 2. having written (also possible: writing)
- 3. being asked/having been asked
- 4. to have been given
- 5. being photographed
- 6. to have had
- 7. to be sent
- 8. to be told
- 9. to have recovered . . . to be
- 10. having had

#### ◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 170.

- 1. My mother was angry about **my losing** (OR: **having lost**) my new watch.
- 2. We look forward to **their spending** their vacation with us.
- No one can understand Tony's failing (OR: having failed) the economics test even though . . .
- 4. I am upset about the **students being required** to pay an extra fee to use the laboratory.
- 5. The supervisor appreciated **Mary's working** (OR: **having worked**) late to finish the project.

### ◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 170.

1. D	6. D	11. D
2. A	7. B	12. C
3. C	8. C	13. B
4. A	9. D	14. C
5. A	10. B	15. A

#### PRACTICE 12, p. 172.

- 1. practice
- 2. prevent
- 3. win
- 4. arrive
- 5. emerge (also possible: emerging)
- 6. perform (also possible: performing)
- 7. climb (also possible: climbing)
- 8. chirp (also possible: chirping)
- 9. explain
- 10. melt

#### PRACTICE 13, p. 173.

1. C	6. B
2. A, B	7. A
3. A	8. A, B
4. A	9. A
5. C	10. A

#### O PRACTICE 14, p. 173.

1. B	11. B
2. A	12. A
3. B	13. A
4. C	14. C
5. C	15. D
6. D	16. D
7. D	17. D
8. B	18. B
9. B	19. D
10. C	20. C

### PRACTICE 15, p. 175.

- 1. to buy
- 2. opening
- 3. being asked
- 4. having
- 5. to wear . . . dressing
- 6. jumping . . . falling
- 7. being taken

- 8. to stop delivering . . . to fill
- 9. gazing . . . (in order) to cheer
- 10. having
- 11. being
- 12. to move
- 13. to help . . . resolve/to resolve . . . not to interfere
- 14. to apply
- 15. to learn . . . to discover . . . promoting
- 16. reminding . . . to lock . . . trying to remember
- 17. asking . . . forgetting
- 18. not to sign
- 19. notifying . . . to call
- 20. play
- 21. burning . . . coming
- 22. to be . . . (to) listen
- 23. thinking
- 24. tear
- 25. doing
- 26. going
- 27. to be admitted
- 28. take
- 29. translate
- 30. to say . . . understand
- 31. to begin
- 32. to be done
- 33. to discover
- 34. put
- 35. feel . . . to be intimidated
- 36. failing
- 37. twiddling
- 38. draw
- 39. laugh
- 40. open
- 41. sleeping
- 42. to pay
- 43. being . . . to expect
- 44. lying

### PRACTICE 16, p. 178.

- 1. to have . . . built . . . to do
- 2. watch . . . practice . . . finding
- 3. hearing ... play ... forgetting ... making ... to relax ... enjoy
- 4. wasting . . . to fail . . . doing
- 5. Attending . . . embarrassing . . . to hide . . . get [parallel infinitives] . . . leave
- 6. recalling . . . being chosen . . . looking . . . laughing . . . acting . . . playing . . . being . . . achieving
- cleaning/to be cleaned ... sweeping/to be swept ... washing/to be washed ... dusting/to be dusted ... Reading ... doing
- 8. having been given . . . forming . . . to accept . . . going . . . being . . . having been exposed
- 9. Finding ... to be ... being exposed ... staying ... to avoid ... to minimize ... getting ... to get ... eat [parallel infinitives] ... taking ... to prevent catching
- 10. being inconvenienced or hurt [parallel passive gerunds] ... to remind ... to remove ... to turn ... to buckle ["buckle up" = connect one's seat belt] ... to shut ... to fill ... to forget to do ... driving ... (to) avoid making ... being instructed ... to perform ... being reminded to carry

#### PRACTICE 17. Test A, p. 181.

1. A	11. B
2. B	12. D
3. D	13. B
4. A	14. B
5. B	15. C
6. D	16. C
7. C	17. D
8. D	18. C
9. D	19. A
10. A	20. B

### ◇ PRACTICE 18. Test B, p. 183.

1. D	11. D
2. D	12. A
3. A	13. C
4. B	14. D
5. B	15. A
6. C	16. C
7. C	17. D
8. C	18. C
9. B	19. A
10. A	20. D

#### Chapter 16: COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

#### PRACTICE 1, p. 185.

- 1. fresh and sweet
- 2. apples and pears
- 3. washed and dried
- 4. am washing and drying
- 5. happily and quickly
- 6. biting and tasting
- 7. to bite and (to) taste
- 8. delicious but expensive
- 9. apples, pears, and bananas
- 10. red, ripe, and juicy

### PRACTICE 2, p. 185.

- 1. (no commas)
- 2. Jack was calm, quiet,* and serene.
- 3. (no commas)
- 4. The children sang, danced,* and played games.
- 5. (no commas)
- Tom, Tariq,* and Francisco joined in the soccer game.
- 7. I told the children to sit down, be quiet,* and open their reading books.
- 8. (no commas)
- 9. (no commas)
- 10. Our waitress's tray held two cups of coffee, three glasses of water,* and one glass of orange juice.
- 11. (no commas)
- 12. (no commas) [Answer to question: larger]

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 186.

- 1. I: for his intelligence, cheerful disposition, and honesty
- 2. C: was a lawyer and a politician
- 3. I: smoothly and guietly

- 4. C: Barb studies . . . and works
- 5. C: is plentiful and relatively inexpensive
- 6. I: enjoy <u>visiting</u> Disneyland and <u>touring</u> movie studios
- 7. C: are usually interested in but a little frightened by
- Fainting can result from either a lack of oxygen or a loss of blood.
- 9. I: how to write ..., organize ..., and summarize
- 10. C: not coffee but chocolate
- 11. I: Not only <u>universities</u> but also many
- **government** <u>agencies</u> support medical research. 12. C: explains why water freezes and how the sun
- produces heat 13. C: need light, a suitable climate, and an ample
- supply (also possible: of water and minerals)
- C: With their keen sight, fine hearing, and refined sense of smell (also possible: hunt day or night) (also possible: of elk, deer, moose, or caribou)
- 15. I: by telling jokes and making funny faces
- 16. C: is always <u>understanding</u>, <u>patient</u>, and <u>sensitive</u>
- 17. C: Not only the post office but also all banks close
- 18. I: Walking briskly for 30 minutes or running for 15 minutes

#### OPRACTICE 4, p. 187.

1. D	5. F
2. A	6. E
3. B	7. H
4. G	8. C

### PRACTICE 5, p. 187.

1,	knows	5. know	9.	agrees
2.	know	6. wants	10.	are
3.	knows	7. like	11.	realizes
4.	know	8. has	12.	think

#### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 188.

- 1. Many people drink neither coffee nor alcohol.
- Barbara is fluent in not only Chinese but also Japanese. OR: ... not only in Chinese but also in Japanese.
- I'm sorry to say that Paul has neither patience nor sensitivity to others.
- 4. She can both sing and dance.
- 5. ... you should talk to either your teacher or your academic counselor. OR: ... talk either to your teacher or to your academic counselor.
- 6. Diana is both intelligent and very creative.
- 7. You may begin working either tomorrow or next week.
- 8. Michael told neither his mother nor his father ....
- 9. ... requires not only balance and skill but also concentration and mental alertness.

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 189.

- 1. . . . cooking. My wife . . . .
- 2. ... cooking, (optional comma) but my wife ....
- 3. . . . that book. It's very good.
- 4. ... that book, but I didn't like it.

^{*} The comma before and in a series is optional.

- 5. (Add no punctuation.)
- 6. . . . the door. My sister answered . . . .
- 7. . . . the door, *(optional comma)*
- 8. ... materials. They are found in rocks and soil.
- 9. ... are minerals. They are found in rocks, soil, and water.
- 10. . . . by plane, (optional comma) or you can go . . . .
- 11. (Add no punctuation.)
- 12. . . . all night, so he declined . . . .
- 13. . . . invitation to dinner. He needed to . . . .
- 14. . . . howling outside, yet it was warm . . . .
- 15. . . . answer the phone, for I didn't want . . .
- 16. . . . went camping. It rained the entire time.
- 17. . . . under construction, so we had to take . . . .
- 18. . . . win the championship, yet our team won . . . .
- 19. . . . at the theatre late, but the play had not yet begun. We were quite surprised.
- 20. . . . from one central place. Most central heating systems service only one building, but some systems heat a group of buildings, such as those at a military base, a campus, or an apartment complex.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 189.

I spent yesterday with my brother. We had a really good time. He's visiting me for a couple of days, so I decided not to go to work yesterday. We spent the day in the city. First I took him to the waterfront. We went to the aquarium, where we saw fearsome sharks, some wonderfully funny marine mammals, *(optional comma)* and all kinds of tropical fish. After the aquarium, we went downtown to a big mall and went shopping. My brother doesn't like to shop as much as I do, so we didn't stay there long.

I had trouble thinking of a place to take him for lunch, for he's a strict vegetarian. Luckily I finally remembered a restaurant that has vegan food, so we went there and had a wonderful lunch of fresh vegetables and whole grains. I'm not a vegetarian, yet I must say that I really enjoyed the meal.

In the afternoon, *(optional comma)* it started raining, so we went to a movie. It was pretty good but had too much violence for me. I felt tense when we left the theater. I prefer comedies or dramas. My brother loved the movie.

We ended the day with a good homecooked meal and some good talk in my living room. It was a good day. I like spending time with my brother.

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 190.

Some of the most interesting working women of the American West in the nineteenth century were African-American women. Mary Fields was one of them. She had been born a slave in the mid-1800s in the South but moved west to the Rocky Mountains as a free woman in 1884. Her first job was hauling freight. She drove a wagon and delivered freight in the valleys and mountains of Montana. She was tall, strong, *(optional comma)* and fast on the draw. She didn't hesitate to protect her wagon of goods with her gun.

She drove a freight wagon for many years. Then in her late fifties, (optional comma) she opened a restaurant, but her business failed. In her sixties, (optional comma) she became a stagecoach driver carrying the U.S. mail. Because of outlaws, driving a mailcoach was dangerous, yet her mailcoach always arrived safely. In her seventies, (optional comma) she opened her own laundry business. She continued successfully in that business until her death in 1914.

Mary Fields deserves our respect and can be seen as a role model for young women, for she rose above unfortunate circumstances and became a determined, hardworking, *(optional comma)* and successful businesswoman.

#### Chapter 17: ADVERB CLAUSES

#### PRACTICE 1, p. 191.

- We'll all take a walk in the park <u>after Dad finishes</u> working on the car.
   After Dad finishes working on the car, we'll all take a walk in the park.
- Since Douglas fell off his bicycle last week, he has had to use crutches to walk.
   Douglas has had to use crutches to walk since he fell off his bicycle last week.
- Because I already had my boarding pass, I didn't have to stand in line at the airline counter. I didn't have to stand in line at the airline counter because I already had my boarding pass.
- Productivity in a factory increases <u>if the workplace</u> is <u>made pleasant</u>.
   <u>If the workplace is made pleasant</u>, productivity in a factory increases.
- 5. <u>After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years</u>, the country's name was changed to Sri Lanka. Ceylon's name was changed to Sri Lanka <u>after the</u> country had been independent for 24 years.
- 6. Ms. Johnson regularly returns her e-mail messages as soon as she has some free time from her principal duties.

As soon as Ms. Johnson has some free time from her principal duties, she regularly returns her e-mail messages.

- Tariq will be able to work more efficiently <u>once he</u> becomes familiar with the new computer program. Once Tariq becomes familiar with the new <u>computer program</u>, he will be able to work more efficiently.
- When the flooding river raced down the valley, it destroyed everything in its path. The flooding river destroyed everything in its path when it raced down the valley.

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 191.

- 1. The lake was calm. Tom went fishing.
- 2. Because the lake was calm, Tom went fishing.
- 3. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm. He caught two fish.
- 4. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm and caught two fish.
- 5. When Tom went fishing, the lake was calm. He caught two fish.
- 6. The lake was calm, so Tom went fishing. He caught two fish.
- 7. Because the lake was calm and quiet, Tom went fishing.
- 8. The lake was calm, quiet, and clear when Tom went fishing.
- 9. Mr. Hood is admired because he dedicated his life to helping the poor. He is well known for his work on behalf of homeless people.
- 10. Microscopes, automobile dashboards, and cameras are awkward for left-handed people to use. They are designed for right-handed people. When "lefties" use these items, they have to use their right hand to do the things that they would normally do with their left hand.

### PRACTICE 3, p. 192.

1. C	5. C	9. C
2. C	6. D	10. A
3. D	7. B	11. D
4. C	8. B	12. A

### PRACTICE 4, p. 193.

- My registration was canceled <u>because I didn't pay</u> <u>my fees on time</u>. <u>Because I didn't pay my fees on time</u>, my registration was canceled.
- Now that Erica has qualified for the Olympics in speedskating, she must train even more vigorously. Erica must train even more vigorously now that she has qualified for the Olympics in speedskating.
- We decided not to buy the house on Fourth Street since it's directly below flight patterns from the nearby international airport.
   Since the house on Fourth Street is directly below flight patterns from the nearby international airport, we decided not to buy it.

### PRACTICE 5, p. 193.

- 1. even though
- 2. because
- 3. Because
- 4. Even though
- 5. Even though
- 6. Because
- 7. even though
- 8. because
- 9. even though
- 10. because
- 11. Even though
- 12. because
- 13. Even though . . . because
- 14. even though . . . because

### PRACTICE 6, p. 194.

1. C	4. C	7. C
2. C	5. C	8. C
3. C	6. C	9. I

### PRACTICE 7, p. 194.

- Let's not go to the park if it will rain rains tomorrow.
- 2. (no change)
- 3. (no change)
- I'll send you an e-mail <u>if I-will have have some free</u> time tomorrow.
- 5. If we don't leave within the next ten minutes, we are will be late to the theater.
- 6. <u>If we will leave leave within the next two minutes</u>, we will make it to the theater on time.

### PRACTICE 8, p. 194.

- 1. doesn't approve . . . approves
- 2. can afford . . . can't afford
- 3. is raining . . . isn't raining
- 4. don't understand . . . understand

#### PRACTICE 9, p. 195.

- 1. In case . . . with me, I'll . . . .
- 2. We'll . . . in case you need to call us.
- 3. In case you find that you need help with it, she'll be
- 4. My boss ... in case the company ....
- 5. In case I'm not back . . . dinner, I put the . . . .
- 6. In the event that Janet . . . tomorrow she will . . . .
- 7. You'd better . . . in the event that you run out of cash.
- 8. My family . . . the country in the event that there is civil war.
- 9. ... safe side, I always ... carry-on bag in the event that the airline loses my luggage.
- 10. She has already . . . speech in the event that she wins it tonight.

#### PRACTICE 10, p. 196.

- 1. B
- 2. A
- 3. B
- 4. B
- 5. A 6. B

### PRACTICE 11, p. 196.

- 1. pass
- 2. not going to go
- 3. rains
- 4. only if
- 5. always eat
- 6. even if
- 7. won't
- 8. don't wake
- 9. if
- 10. Don't borrow

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 197.

- 1. Only if you help me **can I finish** this work on time.
- 2. If you help me, I can finish this work on time.
- 3. Only if I am invited will I go.
- 4. If I am invited, I will go.
- 5. Only if I am hungry do I eat.
- 6. If I am hungry during the morning, I usually eat some fruit.
- 7. Only if you know both Arabic and Spanish will you be considered for that job.
- 8. Only if the refrigerator is empty **does John go** to the market.
- 9. Only if you promise not to get angry **will I tell** you the truth about what happened.
- If you can't learn to communicate your feelings, I won't marry you.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 197.

1. B	7. D
2. Č	8. B
3. D	9. Ĉ
4. A	10. Č
5. B	11. D
6. C	12. A

#### Chapter 18: REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

#### PRACTICE 1, p. 199.

- 1. Since opening . . .
- 2. . . . before leaving the room.
- 3. While herding his goats . . .
- 4. Before marching into battle, ....
- 5. After meeting/having met the movie star . . . .
- 6. . . . keys after searching through . . . .
- 7. When first brought . . .
- 8. Since (being) imported into Australia many years ago, the rabbit . . . .

#### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 199.

- 1. While <u>Sam</u> was driving to work in the rain, <u>his car</u> got a flat tire.
  - $\rightarrow$  (no change)
- While <u>Sam</u> was driving to work, <u>he</u> had a flat tire.
   → While driving to work, Sam had a flat tire.
- Before Nick left on his trip, his son gave him a big hug and a kiss.
   → (no change)
- Before <u>Nick</u> left on his trip, <u>he</u> gave his itinerary to his secretary.

 $\rightarrow$  Before leaving on his trip, Nick gave . . . .

- After <u>Tom</u> had worked hard in the garden all afternoon, <u>he</u> took a shower and then went to the movies with his friends.
  - → After having worked hard in the garden all afternoon, Tom took ....
- After <u>Sunita</u> had made a delicious chicken curry for her friends, <u>they</u> wanted the recipe.

 $\rightarrow$  (no change)

- Before <u>a friend</u> tries to do something hard, <u>an</u> <u>American</u> may say "Break a leg!" to wish him or her good luck.
  - $\rightarrow$  (no change)
- 8. <u>Emily</u> always straightens her desk before she leaves the office at the end of the day.
  - $\rightarrow$  Emily always straightens her desk before leaving the office at the end of the day.

#### PRACTICE 3, p. 200.

- 1. a. leaving . . . b. left
- 2. a. invented/had invented . . . b. inventing/having invented
- 3. a. working . . . b. was working
- 4. a. flies . . . b. flying
- 5. a. studied/had studied . . . b. studying/having studied
- 6. a. learning . . . b. learned
- 7. a. is taken . . . b. taken
- 8. a. taking ... b. take
- 9. a. was driving . . . b. driving

#### PRACTICE 4, p. 201.

- 1. Not wanting to disturb his sleeping wife, Larry tiptoed out of the room.
- 2. (no change)
- 3. Misunderstanding the directions to the hotel, I arrived one hour late for the dinner party.
- 4. (no change)
- 5. Misunderstanding my directions to the hotel, the taxi driver took me to the wrong place.
- 6. Remembering that she hadn't turned off the oven, Ann went directly home.
- 7. (no change)
- 8. Living in the Pacific Northwest, where it rains a great deal, my family and I are accustomed to cool, damp weather.

#### OPRACTICE 5, p. 201.

1. E	7. I
2. J	8. H
3. A	9. C
4. G	10. K
5. B	11. F
6. L	12. D

### PRACTICE 6, p. 202.

- 1. arriving at the airport
- 2. reaching the other side of the lake
- 3. investigating the cause
- 4. learning the problem was not at all serious
- 5. being told she got it

#### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 202.

1. I	6. I
2. C	7. I
3. I	8. I
4. C	9. I
5. I	10. C

#### ◇ PRACTICE 8. Test A, p. 204.

11. A
12. D
13. C
14. A
15. B
16. D
17. B
18. A
19. C
20. C

#### PRACTICE 9. Test B, p. 206.

1. I	2	11.	В
2. I	3	12.	С
3. A	<b>}</b>	13.	В
4. I	5	14.	D
5. (	5	15.	A
6. (	0	16.	D
7. I	)	17.	A
8. E	3	18.	С
9. £	3	19.	D
10. /	ł	20	A

#### Chapter 19: CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST, AND CONDITION

#### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 208.

- 1. because of
- 2. because
- 3. because of
- 4. because
- 5. because of
- because
   because
- 8. because of
- o. Occause or

#### PRACTICE 2, p. 208.

- 1. because
- 2. Therefore
- 3. Therefore
- 4. because
- 5. Because
- 6. therefore

### OPRACTICE 3, p. 209.

#### PART I.

- 1. Because
- 2. ... rained. Therefore, we ...
- 3. because of
- 4. ... town. Therefore, all ...
- 5. because of
- 6. Because the hurricane ... town, all ....
- 7. because of

#### PART II.

- 8. Due to his poor eyesight, John . . .
- 9. Since John has poor eyesight, he . . .
- 10. ... eyesight. Consequently, he ....
- 11. ... heights. Consequently, she ....

- 12. due to
- 13. ... overweight. Consequently, his doctor ....
- 14. Since a diamond . . . hard, it can . . . .

#### PRACTICE 4, p. 209.

- 1. Edward missed the final exam. Therefore, he failed the course. (also possible: ... exam; therefore, he failed ....)
- 2. (no change)
- 3. Edward missed the final exam. He simply forgot to go to it. (also possible: ... exam; he simply ....)
- Because we forgot to make a reservation, we couldn't get a table at our favorite restaurant last night.
- 5. The waitress kept dropping trays full of dishes. Therefore, she was fired. *(also possible: ... dishes; therefore, she was ....)*
- 6. The waiter kept forgetting customers' orders, so he was fired.
- 7. (no change)
- The needle has been around since prehistoric times. The button was invented about 2000 years ago. The zipper wasn't invented until 1890.
- 9. It is possible for wildlife observers to identify individual zebras because the patterns of stripes on each zebra are unique. No two zebras are alike. (also possible: ... are unique; no two zebras ....)
- 10. (no change)

#### O PRACTICE 5, p. 210.

- such
- 2. so
- 3. so
- 4. such
- 5. such
- 6. so
- 7. so
- 8. such
- 9. so 10. so
- 10. 50

#### PRACTICE 6, p. 210.

- 1. It was such a nice day that we took a walk.
- 2. The weather was *so* hot *that* you could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
- 3. She talked so fast that I couldn't understand her.
- 4. It was *such* an expensive car *that* we couldn't afford to buy it.
- 5. We're having *such* beautiful weather *that* I don't feel like going to class.
- 6. Grandpa held me *so* tightly when he hugged me *that* I couldn't breathe for a moment.
- 7. There were so few people at the meeting that it was canceled.
- 8. The classroom has *such* comfortable chairs *that* the students find it easy to fall asleep.
- 9. Ted was so worried about the exam that he couldn't get to sleep last night.
- 10. Jerry got so angry that he put his fist through the wall.
- 11. I have so many problems that I can use all the help you can give me.

- 12. The tornado struck with *such* great force *that* it lifted automobiles off the ground.
- 13. His handwriting is so illegible that I can't figure out what this sentence says.
- 14. David has so many girlfriends that he can't remember all of their names.
- 15. So many people came to the meeting *that* there were not enough seats for everyone.

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 211.

- 1. Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.
- 2. Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment so that he wouldn't forget to go.
- 3. Nancy is carrying extra courses every semester so that she can graduate early.
- 4. Jason is tired of work and school and is planning to take a semester off so that he can travel in Europe.
- 5. Suzanne lowered the volume on the TV set so that she wouldn't disturb her roommate.
- 6. Whenever we are planning a vacation, we call a travel agent *so that we can get* expert advice on our itinerary.
- 7. It's a good idea for you to learn how to type *so that you can type* your own papers when you go to the university.
- 8. Lynn tied a string around her finger so that *she* wouldn't forget to take her book back to the library.
- 9. Ed took some change from his pocket so that he could buy a newspaper.
- 10. I turned on the TV so that I could listen to the news while I was making dinner.
- 11. I unplugged the phone so that I wouldn't be interrupted while I was working.
- 12. Yesterday Linda was driving on the highway when her car started making strange noises. After she pulled over to the side of the road, she raised the hood of her car so that other drivers would know that she had car trouble.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 212.

1. D	6. C	11. A
2. A	7. A	12. B
3. C	8. C	13. B
4. D	9. B	14. C
5. D	10. C	15. D

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 213.

- 1. Annie told the truth, but no one believed her.
- 2. Annie told the truth. However, no one believed her. (also possible: . . . the truth; however, no one . . . . )
- 3. Even though Annie told the truth, no one believed her.
- 4. (no change)
- 5. Annie told the truth, yet no one believed her.
- Annie told the truth. Nevertheless, no one believed her. (also possible: . . . the truth; nevertheless, no one . . . .)
- 7. In spite of the fact that Annie told the truth, no one believed her.
- 8. (no change)

- 9. Even though all of my family friends have advised me not to travel abroad during this time of political turmoil, I'm leaving next week to begin a trip around the world.
- 10. Some people think great strides have been made in cleaning up the environment in much of the world. However, others think the situation is much worse than it was twenty years ago. (also possible: of the world; however, others think ....)

#### ◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 213.

- 1. a. Even though
  - b. Despite
  - c. Despite
  - d. Despite
- e. Even though
- 2. a. In spite of
  - b. Although
  - c. Although
  - d. In spite of
  - e. In spite of
- 3. a. Despite
  - b. Although c. Despite
  - d. Although
  - e. Despite
- 4. a. In spite of
- b. Even though
  - c. in spite of
  - d. even though
  - e. in spite of
  - f. even though
  - g. even though
  - h. in spite of

#### ◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 215.

1. B	6. H
2. E	7. A
3. J	8. G
4. F	9. I
5. C	10. D

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 216.

- 1. Red is bright and lively, while gray is a dull color. OR
  - While red is bright and lively, gray is a dull color.
- 2. Jane is insecure and unsure of herself. Her sister, on the other hand, is full of self-confidence. (also possible: ... of herself; her sister, on the other hand, is ....) OR

Jane is insecure and unsure of herself. On the other hand, her sister is full of self-confidence. OR Jane is insecure and unsure of herself. Her sister is full of self-confidence, on the other hand.

- 3. A rock is heavy, while a feather is light. OR While a rock is heavy, a feather is light.
- 4. Some children are unruly, *whereas* others are quiet and obedient. OR *Whereas* some children are unruly, others are quiet and obedient.

- 5. Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex. Math and science courses, on the other hand, are difficult for him. (also possible: ... for Alex; math and science courses, on the other hand, are difficult ....) OR Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex. On the other hand, math and science courses are difficult for him. OR Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex. Math and science courses are difficult for him, on the other hand.
- 6. Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. However, strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy. (also possible: ... conditions; however, strikes can ...) OR Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also, however, cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy. OR Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy. OR Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy, however. OR Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also, however, cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy.

### PRACTICE 13, p. 216.

- 1. even though/although
- 2. due to/because of
- 3. even though/although
- 4. Nevertheless/However
- 5. Even though/Although
- 6. In spite of/Despite
- 7. Therefore
- 8. on the other hand/however
- 9. because of/due to
- 10. Although/Even though
- 11. because/since
- 12. Even though/Although
- 13. because of/due to
- 14. Therefore
- 15. Although/Even though (also possible: While)
- 16. Because/Since

### ◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 217.

- 1. You should (had better/have to/must) eat less and get more exercise. Otherwise, you won't lose weight.
- 2. The children have to (had better/should/ must) finish all of their chores. Otherwise, they cannot watch TV tonight.
- 3. You have to (must/should/had better) speak up now. Otherwise, the boss will go ahead ....
- 4. You must (had better/should/have to) stop at the store on your way home from work. Otherwise, we won't have anything . . . .
- 5. You had better (have to/should/must) think it through very carefully. Otherwise, you won't come up . . . .
- 6. We have to (had better/should/must) catch fish this morning. Otherwise, we're going to have beans for dinner again.
- 7. You should (had better/have to/must) get someone to help you. Otherwise, it's going to be very ....

8. Maria had better (should/has to/must) find a way to convince the boss that the error was unavoidable. Otherwise, she'll probably lose her job.

### ◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 218.

- 1. passes
- 2. doesn't pass
- 3. passes
- 4. passes
- 5. doesn't pass
- 6. passes
- 7. doesn't pass
- 8. doesn't pass
   9. must/has to pass
- 10. had better (must/has to) pass

### ◇ PRACTICE 16. Test A, p. 219.

1. C	14. A
2. A	15. C
3. C	16. B
4. C	17. A
5. A	18. A
6. C	19. B
7. C	20. B
8. B	21. B
9. D	22. B
10. A	23. D
11. B	24. A
12. C	25. C
13. B	

### ◇ PRACTICE 17. Test B, p. 221.

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. C	<ul> <li>14. A</li> <li>15. A</li> <li>16. B</li> <li>17. D</li> <li>18. C</li> <li>19. A</li> <li>20. B</li> <li>21. A</li> <li>22. D</li> </ul>

#### Chapter 20: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES

### ◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 223.

- 1. were . . . would take
- 2. would accept . . . were
- 3. will explode/explodes . . . throw
- 4. were . . . would call . . . (would) talk
- 5. is . . . will be canceled
- 6. consisted . . . would be

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 223.

- 1. had told . . . would have given
- 2. wouldn't have gotten/got . . . had remembered
- 3. had known . . . wouldn't have voted
- 4. would have gotten/got . . . had used

#### www.ez-english.narod.ru

- 5. had written . . . wouldn't have lost
- 6. would you have taken . . . had known

### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 224.

- 1. had . . . wouldn't have to
- 2. Would people be . . . had
- 3. send . . . will arrive
- 4. had brought . . . wouldn't have had
- 5. felt . . . would drop
- 6. have ... will always rise ... flood OR: always rises ... floods
- 7. discover . . . will call
- had known . . . would have stayed up . . . (would have) finished

#### PRACTICE 4, p. 225.

- 1. If I hadn't been sick yesterday, I would have gone to class.
- 2. If Alan ate breakfast, he wouldn't overeat at lunch.
- 3. Kostas wouldn't have been late to his own wedding if his watch hadn't been slow.
- I would ride the bus to work every morning if it weren't always so crowded.
- 5. If Sara had known that highway 57 was closed, she would have taken an alternative route.
- 6. Camille could have finished unloading the truck if someone had been there to help her.

#### PRACTICE 5, p. 225.

- 1. weren't raining . . . would finish
- 2. had eaten . . . wouldn't be
- 3. hadn't left . . . would have
- 4. would have answered . . . hadn't been studying
- 5. hadn't been shining . . . wouldn't have gone
- 6. wouldn't ache . . . hadn't played
- 7. wouldn't stop . . . weren't running
- 8. had eaten . . . wouldn't have to have
- 9. hadn't been playing . . . would have heard
- 10. weren't closing . . . wouldn't have to leave

### PRACTICE 6, p. 226.

- 1. If the wind weren't blowing hard, I would take the boat out for a ride.
- 2. I wouldn't feel better now if you hadn't talked to me about my problems last night.
- If Ann hadn't carried heavy furniture when she helped her friend move, her back wouldn't hurt now.
- If Paulo weren't working on two jobs right now, he would have time to help you with your remodeling.
- 5. If I had been working at the restaurant last night, I would have waited on your table.
- If Diane hadn't asked questions every time she didn't understand a problem, she wouldn't have a good understanding of geometry now.
- 7. If a fallen tree **hadn't been blocking** the road, we **would have arrived** on time.
- 8. Rita wouldn't be exhausted today if she had gotten some sleep last night.
- 9. If Olga and Ivan had been paying attention, they would have seen the sign marking their exit from the highway.
- If the doctor really cared about his patients, he would have explained the medical procedure to me before surgery.

#### PRACTICE 7, p. 227.

- 1. Should you need
- 2. Were I you
- 3. Had I been offered
- 4. Should anyone call
- 5. Were I
- 6. had they known
- 7. were she
- 8. Had I not opened

### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 227.

- 1. Were I your age, I'd do things differently.
- 2. Should Bob show up while I'm away, please give him my message.
- 3. Had my uncle stood up to sing, I'd have been embarrassed.
- 4. Were she ever in trouble, I'd do anything I could to help her.
- 5. Should the manager question these figures, have her talk to the bookkeeper.
- 6. I wouldn't have known about your new job had I not talked to your mother. [*Had* and *not* are not contracted in the omitted-*if* pattern.]

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 227.

- 1. . . . I hadn't forgotten to tell him that she needed a ride.
- 2. . . . I hadn't had your help.
- 3. If I hadn't opened the door slowly . . .
- 4. . . . he could have gotten/got time off from work.
- 5. . . . he had told his boss about the problem.

### ◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 228.

1. D	11. C
2. B	12. A
3. D	13. B
4. D	14. D
5. C	15. C
6. A	16. B
7. C	17. B
8. B	18. B
9. C	19. A
10. D	20. C

### ◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 229.

- 1. would have . . . hadn't spent
- 2. would have been hit . . . hadn't pulled
- 3. would have been (also possible: could have been)
- 4. would think
- 5. would have done (also possible: could have done)
- 6. wouldn't say . . . meant
- 7. would have graduated (also possible: could have graduated)
- 8. had been driving fast . . . would have been
- 9. travels . . . always spends

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 230.

- 1. were
- 2. had been made
- 3. had . . . met
- 4. were
- 5. hadn't heard
- 6. didn't have/hadn't

### A PRACTICE 14 Tost &

7. didn't exist	PRACTICE 16. Test A, p. 235.
<ol> <li>8. had happened</li> <li>9. were</li> <li>10. were</li> </ol>	1. B 11. C 2. C 12. B
11. had stopped 12. had appeared	3. C 13. B 4. A 14. B 5. C 15. D
> PRACTICE 13, p. 231.	6. B 16. C 7. D 17. D
1. were shining 2. had gone	8. B 18. B 9. D 19. D 10. A 20. A

#### PRACTICE 17. Test B, p. 237.

1. D	11. D
2. D	12. B
3. A	13. D
4. C	14. C
5. B	15. B
6. A	16. A
7. D	17. B
8. B	18. D
9. A	19. C
10. C	20. A

#### Appendix: SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR UNITS

$\bigcirc$	PRACTICE	1,	p.	٨Ì	
------------	----------	----	----	----	--

S ٧ 0 1. Airplanes have wings.

- v S Ω 2. The teacher explained the problem.
- s v 0
- 3. Children enjoy games.
- S v 0 4. Jack wore a blue suit.
- S v 0 v s 5. Some animals eat plants. Some animals eat 0 other animals.

S

6. According to an experienced waitress, you s v 0 can carry full cups of coffee without spilling

them just by never looking at them.

### O PRACTICE 2, p. A1. ٧ĭ

- 1. Alice arrived at six o'clock.
  - VT
- 2. We drank some tea.
  - $\mathbf{v}$
- 3. I agree with you. w
- 4. I waited for Sam at the airport for two hours.

### $\langle$

- 3. had driven
- 4. could swim 5. would stop
- 6. had won
- 7. had gotten
- 8. hadn't quit
- 9. were
- 10. would sing
- 11. could bring
- 12. had offered

### ◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 232.

- 1. had not missed
- 2. A: would stop B: were shining
- 3. had gone . . . could paint
- 4. hadn't moved ... had taken
- 5. would stop
- 6. hadn't paid
- 7. A: would hurry B: would relax
- 8. hadn't invited
- 9. B: hadn't been elected A: hadn't voted
- 10. A: could buy B: grew
- 11. A: weren't . . . were B: were . . . were
- 12. A: would meet B: disagreed . . . could prove
- 13. had told
- 14. would go

### PRACTICE 15, p. 233.

- 1. had been run
- 2. would look
- 3. had had
- 4. hadn't been driving
- 5. wouldn't have slid
- 6. step ("step on the gas" = accelerate the car]
- 7. hadn't taken
- 8. wouldn't have lost
- 9. hadn't lost
- 10. would have had
- 11. had had
- 12. wouldn't have to pay
- 13. hadn't been driving 14. wouldn't have run into
- 15. wouldn't be
- 16. were/was
- 17. would take
- 18. stay
- 19. would stay
- 20. weren't/wasn't
- 21. could go
- 22. I'll fly
- 23. I'll take
- 24. could drive
- 25. would be

5. They're staying at a resort hotel in San Antonio, Texas.

#### vт

6. Chanchai is studying English.

٧I

- 7. The wind is blowing hard today.
- VT 8. I walked to the theater, but Janice rode her bicycle. vι
- 9. Amphibians hatch from eggs.

٧ĭ

10. Rivers flow toward the sea.

#### PRACTICE 3, p. A2.

- 1. Jim came to class without his books.
- 2. We stayed at home during the storm.
- 3. Sonya walked across the bridge over the Cedar River.
- 4. When Alex walked through the door, his little sister ran toward him and put her arms around his neck.
- 5. The two of us need to talk to Tom, too.
- 6. Animals live in all parts of the world. Animals walk or crawl on land, fly in the air, and swim in the water.
- 7. Scientists divide living things into two main groups: the animal kingdom and the plant kingdom.
- 8. Asia extends from the Pacific Ocean in the east to Africa and Europe in the west.

PP

#### ◇ PRACTICE 4, p. A2.

#### 0 s v

- 1. Jack put the letter in the mailbox.
  - PP
- 2. The children walked to school.
- PP s 0 3. Mary did her homework at the library.
  - S v
- 4. Chinese printers created the first paper

o pp money in the world.

- s v PP
- 5. Dark clouds appeared on the horizon. PP v 0
- 6. Mary filled the shelves of the cabinet pp pp
  - with boxes of old books.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. A2.

- ADV ADI 1. Jack opened the heavy door slowly.
  - ADI ADI
- 2. Chinese jewelers carved beautiful ornaments from jade.

ADI 3. The old man carves wooden figures ADV skillfully.

> ADJ ADV ADJ

4. A busy executive usually has short conversations on the telephone.

ADV ADJ

5. The young woman had a very good time at ADV

the picnic yesterday.

### PRACTICE 6, p. A3.

ADI

	quickly	9.	well
	quick	10.	good
3.	polite	11.	gentle
4.	politely	12.	gently
5.	regularly	13.	annually
6.	regular	14.	annual
7.	usual	15.	bad
8.	usually	16.	badly

### ◇ PRACTICE 7, p. A3.

- 1. Sue always takes a walk in the morning.
- 2. Tim is always a hard worker.
- 3. Beth has always worked hard.
- 4. Jack always works hard.
- 5. Do you always work hard?
- 6. Taxis are usually available . . .
- 7. Youssef rarely takes a taxi . . .
- 8. I have often thought about . . .
- 9. Yuko probably needs some help.
- 10. Have you ever attended the show ...?
- 11. Al seldom goes out . . .
- 12. The students are hardly ever late.
- 13. Do you usually finish your ...?
- 14. In India, the monsoon season generally begins in April.
- 15. ... Mr. Singh's hometown usually receives around . . .

### PRACTICE 8, p. A4.

- L.VERB + ADI
- 1.  $\emptyset$  (no linking verb in the sentence)
- 2. looked fresh
- 3. Ø
- 4. Ø 5.
- tasted good grew 6. quiet
  - Ø
- 7. 8. Ø
- 9. Ø
- 10. smells delicious
- 11. Ø
- 12. got sleepy
- 13. became rough
- 14. Ø
- 15. Ø
- 16. sounded happy
- 17. turns hot

ADI

	L.VERB	+	ADJ
18.	Ø		
19.	Ø		
20.	appears		certain
21.	seems		strange

### ◇ PRACTICE 9, p. A5.

1. clean	9. well
2. slowly	10. fair
3. safely	11. terrible
4. anxious	12. good
5. complete	13. light
6. wildly	14. confidently
7. honest	<ol><li>15. famous</li></ol>
8. thoughtfully	16. fine

#### PRACTICE 10, p. A6.

(	Question A word	uxiliary S verb	Subject	Main verb	Rest of question
la.	Ø	Can	Воб	live	there?
Lb.	Where	can	Bob	live	Ø?
lc.	Who	can	Ø	live	there?
2a.	Ø	Is	Don	living	there?
2b.	Where	is	Don	living	Ø?
2c.	Who	is	Ø	llving	there?
3a.	Ø	Does	Sue	live	there?
3b.	Where	does	Sue	live	Ø?
3c.	Who	Ø	Ø	lives	there?
4a.	Ø	WШ	Ann	live	there?
4b.	Where	will	Ann	live	Ø?
4c.	Who	will	Ø	live	there?
5a.	Ø	Did	Jack	live	there?
5b.	Where	did	Jack	live	Ø?
5c.	Who	Ø	Ø	lived	there?
6a.	Ø	Has	Mary	lived	there?
6b.	Where	has	Mary	lived	Ø?
6c.	Who	has	Ø	lived	there?

### ◇ PRACTICE 11, p. A7.

- 1. When are you going to the zoo?
- 2. Are you going downtown later today?
- 3. Do you live in an apartment?
- 4. Where does Sue live?
- 5. Who lives in that house?
- 6. Can you speak French?
- 7. Who can speak Arabic? 8. When did Olga arrive?
- 9. Who arrived late?
- 10. What is Ann opening?
- 11. What is Ann doing?
- 12. What did Mary open?

www.ez-english.narod.ru

- 13. Who opened the door?
- 14. Has the mail arrived?
- 15. Do you have a bicycle?
- 16. What does Alex have in his hand?
- 17. Do you like ice cream?
- 18. Would you like an ice cream cone?
- 19. What would Joe like?
- 20. Who would like a soft drink?

### ◇ PRACTICE 12, p. A8.

- 1. How long has Pierre been living here?
- 2. Which (city) is farther north, London or Paris?
- 3. Whose is it?
- 4. What have you been doing?
- 5. Who answered the phone?
- 6. How do they plow their fields?
- 7. How long have you had it?
- 8. What kind of bird is that?
- 9. Why were you late for work this morning? (OR: How come you were late for work this morning?)
- 10. How long did it take you?
- 11. What time/When did he finally get home?
- 12. How do you take it?
- 13. What is the population of the United States?
- 14. Which (coat/one) do you like better (, the red one or the black one)?
- 15. How did you get there?
- 16. Who(m) should I address it to? (formal: To whom should I address it?)
- 17. How far (How many miles) is it from here to Los Angeles?
- 18. Who is going to be at the meeting tonight?
- 19. How often (How many times a week) do people in your country have rice?
- 20. Where did you get that silly looking hat?
- 21. What does "apologize" mean?
- 22. How many edges are there on a cube? .... How many edges are there on a pyramid?
- 23. What does he look like?
- 24. What is she like?

#### PRACTICE 13, p. A10.

- 1. How do you take your coffee?
- 2. What kind of dictionary do you have? (have you?/have you got?)
- 3. What does he do for a living?
- 4. Who was Margaret talking to?/To whom was Margaret talking?
- 5. How many people showed up for the meeting?
- 6. Why could none of the planes take off?
- 7. What was she thinking about?/About what was she thinking?
- 8. How fast/How many miles per hour (OR: an hour) were you driving when the policeman stopped you?
- 9. What kind of food do you like best?
- 10. Which apartment is yours/Where is your apartment?
- 11. What is Oscar like? (also possible: What kind of
- person/man is Oscar?) 12. What does Oscar look like?
- 13. Whose dictionary fell to the floor?
- 14. Why isn't Abby here?
- 15. When will all of the students in the class be informed of their final grades?

- 16. How do you feel?
- 17. Which book did you prefer?
- 18. What kind of music do you like?
- 19. How late is the plane expected to be?
- 20. Why did the driver of the stalled car light a flare?
- 21. Which pen do you want?
- 22. What's the weather like in July?
- 23. How do you like your steak?
- 24. How did you do on the test?
- 25. How many seconds are there in a year?

#### ◇ PRACTICE 14, p. A11.

- 1. How much money do you need?
- 2. Where was Roberto born?/In what country/city was . . .?/What country/city was Roberto born in?
- 3. How often do you go out to eat?
- 4. Who(m) are you waiting for? (very formal and seldom used: For whom are you waiting?)
- 5. Who answered the phone?
- 6. Who(m) did you call?
- 7. Who called?
- 8. How much gas/How many gallons of gas did she buy?
- 9. What does "deceitful" mean?
- 10. What is an abyss?
- 11. Which way did he go?
- 12. Whose books and papers are these?
- 13. How many children do they have? [British or regional American: How many children have they?]
- 14. How long has he been here?
- 15. How far is it/How many miles is it to New Orleans? ["New Orleans" has at least two commonly used pronunciations. Whatever pronunciation your students are familiar with is correct.]
- 16. When/At what time can the doctor see me?
- 17. Who is her roommate?
- 18. Who are her roommates?
- 19. How long/How many years have your parents been living there?
- 20. Whose book is this?
- 21. Who's coming over for dinner?
- 22. What color is Ann's dress?
- 23. What color are Ann's eyes?
- 24. Who can't go ...?
- 25. Why can't Bob go?/How come Bob can't go?
- 26. Why didn't you/How come you didn't answer ...? (formal and rare: Why did you not answer the phone?)
- 27. What kind of music do you like?
- 28. What don't you understand?
- 29. What is Janet doing right now?
- 30. How do you spell "sitting"? [you = impersonal pronoun]
- 31. What does Tom look like?
- 32. What is Tom like?
- 33. What does Ron do (for a living)?
- 34. How far/How many miles is Mexico from here?
- 35. How do you take/like your coffee?
- 36. Which (city) is farther north, Stockholm or Moscow?/Of Stockholm and Moscow, which (city/one) is farther north?
- 37. How are you getting along?

### ◇ PRACTICE 15, p. A12.

- 1. Haven't you seen . . .? No.
- 2. Don't you feel . . .? No.
- 3. Wasn't he . . .? No.
- 4. Didn't Mary tell . . . ? No.
- 5. Don't Janet and you work . . . ? Yes.
- 6. Isn't that . . .? Yes.
- 7. Wasn't she . . .? No.
- 8. Isn't she . . .? Yes.

#### ◇ PRACTICE 16, p. A13.

- 1. don't you
- 2. have you
- 3. didn't she
- 4. aren't there
- 5. have you
- 6. don't you (also possible but less common: haven't you)
- 7. won't you
- 8. doesn't he
- 9. shouldn't we
- 10. can they
- 11. are they
- 12. isn't it
- 13. did they
- 14. aren't I/am I not
- 15. isn't it

#### ◇ PRACTICE 17, p. A13.

- 1. He's
- 2. Ø
- 3. He's
- 4. Ø
- 5. She'd
- 6. Ø
- 7. She'd
- 8. Ø 9. We'll
- 10. They're
- 11. It's
- 12. It's
- 13. Ø
- 14. Ø
- 15. We're
- 16. Ø
- 17. She's
- 18. She'd
- 19. She'd . . . we'd
- 20. Ø . . . he'd

### ◇ PRACTICE 18, p. A14.

- 1. I don't have any problems. I have no problems.
- 2. There wasn't any food on the shelf. There was no food on the shelf.
- 3. I didn't receive any letters from home. I received no letters from home.
- 4. I don't need any help. I need no help.
- 5. We don't have any time to waste. We have no time to waste.6. You shouldn't have given the beggar any money.

You should have given the beggar no money.

ANSWER KEY Appendix: Supplementary Grammar Units 37

#### www.ez-english.narod.ru

#### 7. I don't trust anyone. I trust no one/no-one.

- 8. I didn't see anyone. I saw no one/no-one.
- 9. There wasn't anyone in his room. There was no one/no-one in his room.
- 10. She can't find anybody who knows about it. She can find nobody who knows about it.

### ◇ PRACTICE 19, p. A15.

- 1. We have no time to waste. OR: We don't have any time to waste.
- 2. I didn't have any problems. OR: I had no problems.
- 3. I can't do anything about it. OR: I can do nothing about it.
- 4. You can hardly ever understand her when she speaks.
- 5. I know neither Ann nor her husband. OR: I don't know either Ann or her busband.
- 6. Don't ever drink water from .... OR: Never drink water from . . .
- 7. ... I could barely hear the speaker.

### PRACTICE 20, p. A15.

- 1. Hardly had I stepped out of bed ....
- 2. Never will I say that again.
- 3. Scarcely ever have I enjoyed myself more ....
- 4. Rarely does she make a mistake.
- 5. Never will I trust him again because ....
- 6. Hardly ever is it possible to get . . .
- 7. Seldom do I skip breakfast.
- 8. Never have I known a more ....

#### PRACTICE 21, p. A15.

1. for	6. to	11. to
2. about	7. of	12. of
3. of	8. to	13. for
4. with	9. for	14. of
5. from	10. to	15. with

#### O PRACTICE 22, p. a16.

1. in	9. to for
2. for	10. about
3. in	11. from
4. from	12. of
5. to	13. with
6. for	14. with about
7. with	15. to

8. to . . . to

#### PRACTICE 23, p. A16.

1. of	6. of	11. from
2. of	7. to	12. in
3. of	8. for	13. with
4. for	9. (up)on	14. with
5. to	10. from	15. in

#### 1. of 6. with

◇ PRACTICE 24, p. A17.

1. of	6. with	11. from
2. to	7. to	12. in
3. with	8. for	13. about
4. with	9. to	14. to
5. in	10. from	15. from

### O PRACTICE 25, p. A18.

1. for	7. with	12. from
2. at	8. (up)on	. 13. with
3. for	(up)on	about
4. to	9. for	14. with
5. in	10. about	15. from
6. of	11. with	

#### PRACTICE 26, p. A19.

1. from	6. with	11. of
2. of	7. for	12. from
3. to	8. for	13. to
4. with	9. in at	14. with
5. to for	10. to	15. with of

#### Special Workbook Section: PHRASAL VERBS

#### PRACTICE 1, p. a22.

- 1. up
- 2. away/out
- 3. out/off
- 4. UD
- 5. off [A "raincheck" is a ticket that admits you to the theater another time without additional payment.]
- 6. up
- 7. out [from a library; "I.D." is an abbreviation for identification card.]
- 8. about
- 9. UD
- 10. back . . . out of

### ◇ PRACTICE 2, p. A23.

- 1. in
- 2. on . . . off
- 3. back
- 4. in/by (also possible: over)
- 5. out
- 6. out
- 7. up
- 8. up . . . away/out
- 9. out ... back [Note: One "fills out" a large item such as an application form, but "fills in" a small space such as a blank in an exercise. Also: "fill up" (British) = "fill in" (American.]
- 10. up ["catch up with him" (American) = "catch him up" (British)]
- 11. on
- 12. out

#### ◇ PRACTICE 3, p. A24.

1. up	6.	out
2. in over	7.	up
3. up	8.	down
4. after/for	9.	up
5. up	10.	out

#### O PRACTICE 4, p. A25.

1.	out/around	6.	in
2.	in/into	7.	off
	out	8.	up
3	along	9.	out
4.	off	10.	over

5. after

### ◇ PRACTICE 5, p. A25.

- 1. through ( = finish a task)
- 2. up
- out ("got dizzy" = had a whirling sensation in the head; revive = return to normal breathing; "out cold" = unconscious, in a faint]
- over ["passed out" = fainted, became suddenly unconscious]
- 5. up
- 6. out [ = make a line through it with pen or pencil]
- 7. back
- 8. on
- 9. on . . . off
- 10. into ... out
- 11. on . . . off
- 12. on . . . off

#### ◇ PRACTICE 6, p. a26.

- 1. on/up
- over . . . in . . . over
   up
- 4. up
- 5. away/on
- 6. on
- up
   about ... along with

7. over

9. out of

10. off ... in

8. out

### O PRACTICE 7, p. A27

- 1. into
- 2. off
- 3. oa
- 4. back [They are talking on the telephone.]
- 5. out
- 6. out . . . across/upon
- 7. up
- 8. into ... out
- 9. up
- 10. on/off/out

#### ◇ PRACTICE 8, p. A29.

- 1. after
- 2. out
- 3. ap ... out
- 4. up [ = get ill or sick]
- 5. up
- 6. in [ = into his office for an appointment]
- 7. out/into
- 8. down
- out ["crash a party" = come without being invited, an impolite act]
- 10. away



# UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR – WORKBOOK Third Edition

Betty Schrampfer Azar

**Understanding and Using English Grammar** is a classic developmental skills text for students of English as a second or foreign language.

This **Workbook** consists solely of self-study exercises, providing students the opportunity to explore and practice grammar independently. It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts in both the **Student Book** and the **Chartbook**.

The components of **UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR, Third** *Edition*, are:

*Student Book*, a comprehensive reference grammar and classroom teaching text Full Edition: ISBN 0-13-958661-X Volume A: ISBN 0-13-958729-2 Volume B: ISBN 0-13-958752-7

Answer Key, with answers to the exercises in the Student Book ISBN 0-13-020552-4

*Workbook*, an independent study text, with all answers included Full Edition: ISBN 0-13-958687-3 Volume A: ISBN 0-13-958737-3 Volume B: ISBN 0-13-958760-8

*Chartbook*, a reference text consisting only of the grammar charts ISBN 0-13-958703-9

*Teacher's Guide*, with teaching suggestions, grammar notes, and answers ISBN 0-13-958679-2

Pearson Education

